279 c 16

THE HISTORY OF *TIMUR-BEC*,

Known by the Name of

Tamerlain the Great,

Emperor of the

MOGULS and TARTARS:

BEING

An hiſtorical JOURNAL of his Conqueſts in *Aſia* and *Europe*.

Written in *Perſian* by CHEREFEDDIN ALI, Native of *Yezd*, his Contemporary.

Tranſlated into *French* by the late Monſieur *Petis de la Croix*, Arabick Profeſſor in the Royal College, and Secretary and Interpreter to the King in the Oriental Languages.

With hiſtorical Notes and Maps.

Now faithfully render'd into ENGLISH.

VOL. II.

LONDON: Printed for J. DARBY in *Bartholomew-Cloſe*, R. BELL in *Cornhill*, W. TAYLOR in *Pater-noſter-row*, W. and J. INNYS at the Weſt End of St. *Paul's* Church-yard, J. OSBORNE in *Lombard-ſtreet*, and T. PAYNE in *Stationers-Court*. MDCCXXIII.

A MAP OF the Expedition of TAMERLAN in the INDIES

Vol. 2. P. 3.


110
115
120
125
130
Cashgar or Usbec Kara
Outchfirman
Couzan
Tenchemck
Geraliek
Tencnai
Belour
LIT. TIBET
G. TIBET
Caroi
Ka Kares
Cachemire
Minoii
Manfar
Lahor
Coulie
Bekeri
Some Cow Worship'd by the Guebres
Patna
Tecanac
Samana
Bando or Bonar
Coteile
Scanderbad
AGRA
Ratipor
Catampor
Pipli
Balasor
Gulf of Bengal
Dina
Cambaya
Brampour
Surat
Gumgati
D I A

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR-BEC.

BOOK IV.

HISTORY OF TIMUR-BEC.

BOOK IV.

Timur enters India, and passes over the rivers Indus and Ganges. The taking of the citys of Moultan, Lahor, and Deli capital of that kingdom. A considerable battel between Timur and the Sultan Mahmoud, grandson of Firouz, then emperor of India. The Tartars excell in conquering the elephants in skirmishes with the Indians. The destruction of the temples of the Guebres. Several battels with these adorers of fire, and other idolaters of this great empire.

CHAP. I.

The cauſe of Timur's war in India.

TIMUR had given to his grandſon prince Pir Mehemed, ſon of Gehanghir, the provinces of Condoz, Bacalan, Cabul, Gaznin, and Candahar, with their dependencys, as far as the frontiers of India, as we ſaid before; and this Mirza being eſtabliſh'd in theſe principalitys, endeavor'd to render 'em flouriſhing by his juſtice and goodneſs.

He receiv'd orders from court to aſſemble the troops of all the provinces, and to depart at their head for other conquests, and to make himſelf maſter of many towns and countrys in India. He accordingly ſet out with a great army commanded by good generals, the moſt valiant Emirs of his country.

They began with the plunder of the Ouganis, inhabitants of the mountain of Solyman Couh[a], which country they entirely ravag'd. They paſs'd the Indus, invaded Gurchah[b], and alſo laid ſiege to Moultan[c], which had then for its governor prince Sarenk, eldeſt brother of Melkou Can, who govern'd the empire of India for the young Sultan Mahmoud.

Timur reſolv'd to make war in the empire of India, becauſe ſince the death of Firouz Chah

[a] On the weſt of the Indus, between Cabul and Candahar.
[b] A town on the Indus, N. of Moultan.
[c] A town of India on the Rave, long. 107. lat. 29.

emperor

emperor of it, Mellou Can and Sarenk two brothers, who had been his generals, had uſurp'd the ſovereign power; and having plac'd on the throne Sultan Mahmoud, grandſon of Firouz Chah, they reign'd over all India, Mellou Can reſiding at Deli [1], near Sultan Mahmoud, and his brother Sarenk at Moultan. Chap. 5.

Moultan being beſieg'd by our army, was briskly attack'd and batter'd without interruption: there were two aſſaults given every day, and the regiment of Timur Coja ſon of Acbouga, fought with more heat than all the others, becauſe this Emir was not only an adviſer, but the firſt actor in this enterprize.

Timur receiv'd the news with joy; and as he had already reſolv'd to carry his arms to Catai or China, to root out the infidels, he got together all the troops of the empire. He had been before that inform'd, that the mahometan religion was then obſerv'd in many places of India, as at Deli and other citys, where the teſtimony of that faith was written upon their coins; nevertheleſs the greateſt part of the provinces diſtant from this town were inhabited by idolaters. Timur, who deſign'd to partake of the merit and glory of the Gazie [2], and had rais'd this numerous army with intention to make war on the enemys of his religion, ſoon reſolv'd on the conqueſt of India. He aſſembled his council, according to the cuſtom Ma-

[1] Capital of India, long. 100. lat. 30. It conſiſts of three Towns, Sari, Gehanpena, and old Deli, all which make but one; as Paris conſiſts of the city, univerſity, and ſuburbs of St. Germain.

[2] Gazie among the orientals ſignifys the wars the Mahometans undertake againſt thoſe who profeſs a different religion. They imagine that whoever die in theſe wars, become martyrs, and of conſequence inherit paradiſe.

Book IV. homet had introduc'd, and propos'd his undertaking to the great Emirs of the ſtate in theſe terms,

"Fortune, my dear friends, furniſhes us "with ſuch happy conjunctures, that ſhe ſeems "to offer herſelf to us, and invite us to lay hold "of the favorable opportunitys which preſent "themſelves; for as we have already ſeen the "empires of Iran and Touran, and almoſt all "Aſia under our command, ſhe ſhews us In"dia, thro the diſorders of the princes who "govern it, opening its gates to receive us. "My name has ſpread terror throughout the "univerſe; and the leaſt motion I make is ca"pable of ſhaking the whole earth. It is "therefore time to attack the kingdom of In"dia, where having overcome what oppoſes "our deſigns, we ſhall oblige this kingdom to "acknowledg no other ſovereign than me. "What think ye, my dear friends, who are the "companions of my victorys, of this great en"terprize? Speak all in general, and every "one in particular, your opinion of this pro"poſal, which appears reaſonable, ſince for"tune has not yet withdrawn its protection "from us."

Timur having thus made known his reſolution to the captains and generals of his army, they fell upon the ground, and with ſincere ſubmiſſion and perfect obedience, ſaid, The order of the emperor was a law to all men, and more indiſpenſibly ſo to them, who were his ſlaves; than wherever he ſhou'd ſet his feet, there they ſhou'd be ready to lay their heads; that it was their glory punctually to obey his orders, even when he requir'd 'em to undertake the greateſt difficultys. Timur pleas'd with this anſwer, heap'd favors on 'em, and thought of

nothing

nothing more than the means of bringing this enterprize to perfection. Chap. 2.

CHAP. II.

Timur brings his army into the field, to make war against the Guebres in India.

THE Alcoran says, the highest dignity man can attain to, is that of making war in person against the enemys of his religion. Mahomet adviseth the same thing, according to the tradition of the mussulman doctors: wherefore the great Timur always strove to exterminate the infidels, as much to acquire that glory, as to signalize himself by the greatness of his conquests.

For which reason in the year of the Leopard, that is, in the month of Regeb of the year 800 of the Hegira, having left Mirza Omar son of Mirza Miran Chah to govern the city of Samarcand, he took the road to India, having many kings of Asia for his attendence, who were come to his court as to an asylum, to render their services to this conqueror. March 1398.

He had in his army soldiers and even officers of all nations; but all the chiefs, and greatest part of the companys who were in posts of consequence, were Tartars; and he had also a great many lords of Kech.

Timur being arriv'd at Termed, there order'd to be made a bridge of boats over the Oxus, which he crossed with his army. He raised many choice soldiers and of good appearance in the fine city of Culm, from whence he took the road to Aznic and Samarcan; and after having

Book IV. pass'd the mountains of Bacalan, he went to encamp at Enderabe.

CHAP. III.

Timur marches against the inhabitants of Ketuer. He defeats the Siapouches, who were cloth'd in black.

WHILST Timur was encamp'd at Enderabe, the inhabitants came to cast themselves at his feet, to complain of the insults and troubles they receiv'd from the idolaters of Ketuer [1], and from the Siapouches [2]: they represented to him that there were a great number of Musulmans, from whom the infidels exacted every year excessive sums of money, under the name of tribute and Carage; which if they fail'd to pay punctually, they kill'd their men, and made their women and children slaves.

The emperor, touch'd with their complaints, and excited by zeal for the religion of which he was protector and defender, march'd immediately against these tyrants: he chose three soldiers out of every ten, and left the Mirza Charoc to command the rest of the army and the baggage at Gounandicour [3], where they ordinarily pass'd the summer. Timur decamp'd twice a day, and march'd with so much diligence, that he made two days journy in one.

[1] A mountain of Bedakchan inhabited by idolaters, long. 115. lat. 36.

[2] An idolatrous nation cloth'd in black, inhabiting the mountains of the province of Bedakchan.

[3] A cool place in the mountain near Enderabe.

He

He soon arriv'd at Berjan [1], whence he sent Chap. 33
Mirza Rostem, accompanied by Berlas Agien, and other Emirs, with ten thousand men towards the left, to seek the Sapeuches; and following his road, he arriv'd at Caoue [2], where he found a demolished citadel, which he caus'd to be rebuilt. Many Emirs and soldiers left some of their horses at Caoue, and ascended on foot the mountain of Kotuer, where the sun was in Gemini; the snow lay in so great abundance, that the feet of most part of the horses, which the lords would have carry'd up, fail'd 'em; yet some of 'em were sav'd on so much during the night and the frost, that they were constrain'd to get up: but day being come, and the snow turn'd into ice, they kept these horses under felts till evening, when they continu'd to ascend the mountain, so that at length they arriv'd at the top, and then sent for the rest of the horses. And as the infidels dwelt in narrow passages and precipices, and there was no road to get to them, besides what was cover'd with snow, some of the Emirs and soldiers descended by cords, while others lying on the snow, slid down to the bottom. They made a sort of raft for Timur, to which they fasten'd rings, that they might tie cords to it of one hundred and fifty cubits in length: he sat upon it, while many persons let him down from the top to the bottom of the mountain, as far as the cords would reach. Others dug with pickaxes in the snow a place where he might stand firm. They who were on the top

[1] A town in the province of Bedakchan, two days journey from Enderabe near the Sapeuches.

[2] A town at the foot of the mountain of Kotuer, long. 115. lat. 36.

having

Book IV. having gently deſcended, they let down Timur again in the machine. The place alſo was mark'd out where he ſhou'd ſtay next; and ſo on till the fifth time, when he arriv'd at the foot of the mountain. Then this monarch took a ſtaff in his hand to reſt on, and walk'd on foot a great way. Theſe fatigues did not deter him, becauſe of his confidence in the merit of the Gaïzie, which always increas'd his ardent zeal for the moſt difficult enterprizes. Thoſe who work for God may reſt aſſur'd of ſucceſs. They alſo let down ſome of the emperor's horſes, girding 'em about the belly and neck, with great precaution; but moſt of 'em thro the fault of the guides fell headlong down, ſo that there remain'd but two fit for ſervice. Then Timur took horſe, and all the army follow'd on foot.

The infidels of this country are ſtrong men, and as large as the giants of the people of Aad[a]; they go all naked; their kings are nam'd Oda and Odachouh: they have a partienlar language[b], which is neither Perſian, nor Turkiſh, nor Indian; and know no other than this; and if it was not for the inhabitants of the neighbouring places, who are found there by chance, and having learnt their language, ſerve for interpreters, no one would be able to underſtand 'em.

Theſe infidels were in a citadel, at the foot of whoſe walls paſſes a great river; and on the other ſide of this river there was a high mountain. As they had learnt the approach of Timur twenty four hours before his arrival, they abandon'd this poſt, croſs'd the river, and car-

[a] Arabians in the time of Nimrod.

[b] The language of the people of Kemer was heretofore unknown.

ry'd

ry'd their effects to the top of this mountain, Chap. 3.
imagining it inaccessible, especially with the in-
trenchments they had made there.

When the army after long fatigues arriv'd at the citadel, they found nothing there but some sheep the enemy had left, which they made themselves masters of: then having set fire to the houses, they immediately cross'd the river. The emperor order'd 'em to ascend the mountain by many narrow passages; which our soldiers did, and at the same time return'd thanks to God.

Cheik Arlan, at the head of the vanguard of of the left wing [1], attack'd the foremost of the enemys, and made himself master of a rising ground. They were also attack'd by Ali Sultan Tavachi, who came down into the place where they were encamp'd. A colonel nam'd Chamoche signaliz'd himself by many great actions; and fourteen of our bravest soldiers fell from the top of the mountain to the bottom, and were kill'd. Mobachen also behav'd himself gallantly. Mengheli Coja advanc'd at the head of his company, and gain'd the top of the mountain. Sevindgic Behader did all that cou'd be expected from the greatest valor. Cheik Ali Salbert advanc'd as far as the ridge of the mountain with all his soldiers; he attack'd the enemy, and got possession of their post. Mousa Reemal and the Emir Hussein Gourchi behav'd themselves with the utmost resolution; and at length all the Emirs of the Hezares and Couchons attack'd the infidels on all sides in the most dangerous places. The enemy defended themselves vigorously, notwithstanding the great slaughter of their men. The fight lasted three

[1] The Tartars have a vanguard to each wing, which they call Cambol.

nights

Book IV. nights with unheard-of obſtinacy; but at length theſe unfortunate men finding themſelves no longer able to make reſiſtance, beg'd quarter with tears in their eyes. Timur ſent to 'em Ac Sultan Kechi, with order to tell them that if they wou'd come to him with ſubmiſſion and obedience, abandon their errors, and take up a reſolution to acknowledg but one God, and embrace the mahometan religion with ſincerity, he wou'd not only give 'em their lives and effects, but alſo leave 'em to enjoy their principality as before. They had no ſooner learnt this from an interpreter, than the fourth day they came to caſt themſelves at the feet of the emperor, conducted by Ac Sultan Kechi: they abjur'd their idolatry, and embrac'd the mahometan religion, promiſing to ſubmit entirely to the emperor, and obey all his commands. Timur, according to his wonted generoſity, gave them clothes, and ſent them away, after having encourag'd 'em by the moſt affectionate ſpeeches.

Obſtinate fight of the men of Ketuer.

Treaſon of the men of Ketuer.

Night being come, theſe wretches, whoſe hearts were more black than their garments, fell upon the regiment of Chamelic, and put all the ſoldiers of it to the ſword, except a few, who, tho wounded and lame, eſcap'd their hands.

Their puniſhment.

As ſoon as this treaſon was diſcover'd, our men ſlew near one hundred and fifty of 'em. All the army got up upon the mountain, and following the precept of Mahomet, who orders the women to be ſpar'd, they put to the ſword all the old and young men of theſe infidels, and carry'd away their women and children. At length they built towers on the top of the mountain and the end of the bridge, with the heads of theſe traitors, who had never bow'd their head to adore the true God. Timur order'd to be engrav'd upon marble the hiſtory

of

of this action, which happen'd in the month of Ramadan in the year of the Hegira 800; and he added the particular Eposha which this people us'd, that their posterity might have some knowledg of the famous valor of the ever-victorious Timur. This pillar so inscrib'd gave the greater pleasure to Timur, in that these people had never been conquer'd by any prince in the world, not even by Alexander the great.

CHAP. IV.

Timur sends Mehemed Azad to get intelligence of Mirza Roustem and Burhan Aglen. His return to Kesh.

AS there came no news of Mirza Roustem and Burhan Aglen, Timur sent Mehemed Azad and Doleschah, but he had been misled to pretences in his court. Four or five Emirs accompany'd them with four hundred Turks, and three hundred Tadgics, commanded by Mehemed Azad, who had orders to get information of Mirza Roustem and Burhan Aglen. Mehemed after his departure, according to Timur's order, went up by great and difficult passages with extreme fatigue, high mountains covered with snow, which he afterwards slid down, having

The Turks are those who descend from the Moguls and Tartars.

The Tadgics are the inhabitants of the towns of Transoxiana, and all the country of Iran, who are neither Tartars, Moguls, nor Turks.

strongly

Book IV. strongly fasten'd his buckler to his shoulders. He then march'd to the fortress of the Siapouches, where he could not meet a single person, or hear one word; but he found the tracks of the feet of several men, who were gone to the other side of the mountain. These were the footsteps of the Siapouches, who having advice of the march of Mirza Roustem and Burhan Agleu, were gone out of their fortresses, and retir'd to the mountains, where they lay in ambuscade in a very narrow passage. Some pass'd by 'em, and others without precaution got off their horses, which they let go loose: then the Siapouches, laying hold of the opportunity, came out of their ambuscade, and fell suddenly upon them. Burhan Agleu, through too great cowardice, or rather by an unheard of treason, flung off his coat of mail, and fled without fighting, which caus'd the defeat of his troops. When a general turns his back, we may say he is the murderer of his soldiers. The infidels seeing the Mussulmans fly, became more daring, and pursuing our men close, slew many of 'em with their axes and war-clubs, and among the rest Cheik Hussein Courtchi, Dolat chah Gobigi, and Adina captain of the horse, who, after a vigorous defence, were destroy'd among the rest. Affairs were in this miserable state, when Mehemed Azad observing the print of the feet of the Siapouches, arriv'd in the passage where this tragedy happen'd: he set 'em at their return, attack'd 'em with the greatest bravery, after a sharp fight utterly defeated 'em, and retook from 'em the bucklers, arms and horses of our Mussulmans. He then went to rejoin Burhan Agleu with the horse which had fled, and every

every one knowing his own buckler, arms and horses, they were pass'd.

Mehemed Azad then told Burhan Aglen that he must stay in that place all night; but this coward would not do it: he got up to the top of the mountain, whether he was follow'd by his troops, to the great regret of Mehemed Azad; for when a commander proves a traitor or a coward, his army never fails of being conquer'd. This action of Burhan was very infamous; and since the reign of Genghiz Can there has not been one prince of the race of Cayat, who has committed the like. Burhan had himself done the same in the war of the Uzbecs, and recover'd pardon by the singular goodness of Timur, who continu'd to honor him as before, and had even sent him on this expedition, in hopes he would repair his fault, and recover his credit; which in this last affair he entirely destroy'd.

After the conquest of Kerner, and defeat of the Idolaters, Timur sent Gelaleddin and Sifamuddin with troops to seek an easy passage from the mountains, and to clear the ways; and he order'd them to turn whatever they met, belonging to the Infidels.

These two Emirs having found a passage to their mines, open'd a way in the snow: and then Timur cross'd the mountains, and went down to Cuoui[1], where he left a strong reserve. At this place he join'd the Emirs and soldiers, who for eighteen hours had constantly

[1] A Mogul horde, from whence Genghiz Can sprung; which horde were the descendents of an ancient Mogul prince, nam'd Cayat, who was descended from Turc, son of Japhet, son of Noah.

[2] A town in Ketuer rebuilt by Timur.

fought

Book IV. fought on foot; then they took horse, and accompany'd the emperor.

When Burhan Aglen and Mehemed Azad had join'd the imperial standard with their troops, Timur would not admit the first into his presence, because without making any defence he had fled from the infidels: he treated him with scorn as he met him by chance; and to reproach his infamy, cited a passage of the Alcoran, which assures us, That twenty resolute Mussulmans are able to conquer two hundred infidels, provided they trust in God: and yet, (said the emperor,) at the head of ten thousand men fled from a handful of infidels, and put the Mussulmans in danger of being torn in pieces. Then Timur declar'd him criminal, and by a mark of disgrace, banish'd him the court.

Mehemed Azad having fought on foot at the head of four hundred men only, and stood his ground against the same men, who put him to their victory; and having also put a great number of em to the sword, recovering from them all the horses they had got from us; Timur heap'd on him honors and riches, distinguishing him by great praises, and giving him the command of a regiment to reward his valour. The emperor distributed also largesses among those who had given marks of their courage in so dangerous an expedition.

CHAP.

A town in Kenan rebuilt by Timur.

Chap. 5.

CHAP. V.

Timur sends Mirza Charoc to Herat.

AT this place * Timur permitted his dear son Mirza Charoc, heir apparent to the crown, to return to Herat, capital of Corassana, of which he was governor. When he took leave of this prince, he gave him his advice, and us'd many expressions which shew'd a fatherly tenderness and affection; and after having embrac'd him, and recommended him to the divine protection, he dismiss'd him. Timur decamp'd at the same time, and march'd towards Cabul: he took the road to Tulle [1], ascended the mountain of Hendou-Kech, pass'd by Pendgehir [2], commonly call'd Pendgir, and went to encamp in a meadow of the country of Baran, about five leagues from Cabul. And as the design of this conqueror was chiefly to dispense justice to the people, and to render the countrys and towns flourishing, he gave orders for a canal to be dug, which might join the river which passes thro those quarters. He divided the land between the captains and soldiers, and in a short time there was a great canal made five leagues long, which is yet call'd the canal of Mahighir: at length there were many large villages built upon it; and the valley, which before had not

* Caoud.

[1] A little town of Bedakchan.

[2] A town and mountain, where Abulfeda the geographer says there are two silver mines; and that the town is full of ditches dug to get out the oar. It is at the foot of the mountains of Cachmir to the west, between Cabul and Enderabe.

Book IV. been cultivated, became a fine and delightful garden.

CHAP. VI.

The arrival of ambaſſadors from ſeveral places. Taizi Aglen returns from the country of the Calmacs, and Chuik Nouredin from that of Fars.

TIMUR being encamp'd in the plain of Dourin[a], there arriv'd an ambaſſador from Timur Cotluc Aglen a prince of Capchac, and another from Emir Aidecou, a prince of Capchac, as alſo a third of Gete from Keſer Coja Aglen; who were preſented before the throne by the Emirs and Nevians. After they had kiſs'd the ground and perform'd other uſual ceremonys, they began their harangue, wiſhing all proſperity to Timur, and highly extolling him: then they declar'd the ſubject of their embaſſy, which was, to aſſure the emperor that their maſters were faithful ſervants of his majeſty; that tho for ſome time paſt there had been no good intelligence or agreement between 'em, which had made 'em depart from the obedience they ow'd him, and wander as vagabonds in the deſarts; yet conſideration and prudence having now brought 'em to ſee the deformity of their actions, they ſincerely repented of 'em; and that if the emperor would be merciful and pardon their fault, they would for the future

[a] A village near Garan.

be

be moſt obedient, and never diſobey the orders of his officers. Chap. 6

Taizi Aglen, who for ſome difference which happen'd between him and the Can at Olug Yurt [a], fled from the kingdom of Calmac [b], came to this place to lay himſelf at the feet of the throne, and was receiv'd as handſomly as a prince of his rank cou'd expect. Timur embrac'd him, and preſented him with a veſt wove with gold, a belt ſet with precious ſtones, horſes of great price, ſeveral mules and camels, tents and pavilions, and whatever cou'd be expected from a great emperor. At the ſame place alſo arriv'd Emir Cheik Noureddin, ſon of Sat Bouga, who had been left by Timur in Perſia, after the five years campaign there, in order to receive the revennes of that kingdom and the neighboring countrys. He brought with him an immenſe treaſure, with abundance of jewels of ineſtimable price; likewiſe animals proper for the chaſe, and birds of prey, leopards, gold mony, belts enrich'd with precious ſtones, veſts wove with gold, ſtuffs of all colors, arms and all ſorts of utenſils for war, arabian horſes with ſaddles of gold, great camels, ſeveral carriage and riding mules, fine ſtirrups, the ſtraps embroider'd with gold and ſilver; umbrellas, canopys, pavilions, tents and curtains of ſcarlet and all colors; in ſhort, there was ſo great a quantity of curious pieces of work, that the ſecretarys and comptrollers of the Divan employ'd three days and three nights

[a] That is, the great horde, ſeat of the kings of Calmac, or rather of the Mogul Cans or emperors, near Caracorom capital of Calmac.

[b] A kingdom, formerly call'd Caratatal, in Mogolistan, north of the kingdom of Courge or Leaſtung.

Book IV. to regiſter 'em, and write copys of 'em, which were preſented to the lords of the court for their peruſal.

The day for preſenting petitions being appointed, the Emirs or generals, and the Nevians or foreign princes, preſented Emir Cheik Noureddin before the imperial throne. This prince knelt down, and the whole day was ſpent in calling over before the emperor all his preſents, than which none ever were ſeen ſo magnificent, not even in the reign of the great Feridon [a], or of Corzu Peruize [b].

Prince Taizi Aglen, the ambaſſadors of Capchac, and ſeveral princes of the race of Genghiz Can, who were preſent, were ſurpriz'd at it; not only at the ſight of the riches, but but alſo conſidering that the power of Timur muſt be very great, ſince one of his ſubjects was rich enough to make ſo magnificent a preſent.

Timur diſtributed a great many of theſe raritys, and gave a very friendly reception to Emir Cheik Noureddin, who told the emperor that all theſe preſents were too ſmall for thoſe who had reſolv'd to ſacrifice their lives to his ſervice.

Timur being willing to treat the ambaſſadors of the Uzbecs [c] and Getes handſomly, gave 'em caps of gold, belts, veſts and horſes; he granted 'em whatſoever they ask'd, and loaded 'em with preſents, as well for themſelves as their maſters, with letters in anſwer to thoſe they had brought. At length Emir Cheik Noureddin knelt down, and ask'd pardon for Burhan Aglen, and the reſt who accompany'd him at

[a] King of Perſia of the firſt race.
[b] King of Perſia of the third race.
[c] The princes of Capchac are here call'd Uzbecs.

the audience: Timur granted this with an excess of clemency and generosity. Chap. 6.

He then sent to India Sultan Mahmoud Can[1], with the troops of the left wing, and all the princes and Emirs who had before receiv'd orders.

At this time Malek Mehemed, brother to Lechker Chah an Ougani, cast himself at the feet of the emperor, and in an humble manner told him, that Mouſſa, prince of the nation of the Kerkes, had kill'd his brother, who was an officer of his majesty; that he had ruin'd the town of Irjab[2], and pillag'd his Hezares; that he had made himself master of their effects by force, and that this villain constantly robb'd in the great roads, that no one cou'd pass those quarters: "For my part, says Malek, I, who "am a poor servant of your majesty, have fled "to save my life from the hands of this barba-"rous man; I have pass'd by Gazna, and staid "here on the good news I receiv'd of the "march of your imperial standard."

This advice rais'd Timur's passion, and he resolv'd to put a stop to these disorders, by some means or other. He order'd Malek to lie conceal'd, and to keep this advice secret, telling him he wou'd call Mouſſa to court; and if he came, he wou'd oblige him to do justice, and make entire satisfaction; but if he did not come, he wou'd give him an army, with which he might revenge himself on this murderer, for the death of his brother. Timur immediately sent

[1] True emperor of Zagatai, who serves under Timur as general of the army, and has only the name of Can, Timur being sovereign.

[2] Four days journy from Dourin, in the road to India.

Book IV. a meſſenger to Mouſſa, to whom he gave orders to tell him as follows.

"The emperor having advice that you have "demoliſh'd the city of Irjab, ſituate in the "great road to India, does not think conveni-"ent that it ſhou'd remain in ruins; where-"fore he wills and commands you to come "forthwith to court, where he deſigns to in-"veſt you with the government of that country, "not doubting but you will rebuild the place, "and ſettle it in its former ſplendor."

The meſſenger having handſomly acquitted himſelf of this commiſſion, Mouſſa came immediately with a reſolution to caſt himſelf at the feet of the throne; but Timur, who had reſolv'd to put him to death, with all his accomplices, receiv'd him in a civil manner at firſt ſight, and gave him a veſt woven with gold, a belt, a ſword with a gold handle, a horſe well equip'd, with other curious things, and at laſt ſaid to him, "We will aſſign you troops, with "which it is expedient you ſhou'd go and re-"build that place; wherefore depart with thy "domeſticks and friends, and uſe all your ef-"forts, that the place may be rebuilt before "we arrive; and if there is need of any thing "towards the perfecting of it, we will order "it you; and then leaving you in the govern-"ment of it, we will depart for India." Timur then ſent him away, and order'd Mouſſa Recmal, with three thouſand brave men, to accompany him.

When Mouſſa was arriv'd at Irjab, he made diſpatch in executing the orders he had receiv'd, and employ'd all his men and domeſtics, about three hundred perſons, in the rebuilding of this place.

CHAP.

Book II. Chap. 7.

CHAP VII.

The repairing the fortress of Irjab, and the destroying of the Ouganis robbers.

TIMUR sent from the country of Dourin to Samarcand the august princess Serai Mulc Canum, and the Mirza Diuc Bei, who were at court; and then he decamp'd. In four days he arriv'd at the town of Irjab, which he found nearly repair'd: there he fix'd his imperial tent, and the army encamp'd in order of battel, every one in his proper post. Timur order'd that the rebuilding of the town shou'd be continu'd; and the Emir Chahmelik and Gelaleddin had a commission for rebuilding of mosques and other public buildings, insomuch that all was finish'd in fourteen days. Timur had before commanded the Tavachis not to suffer any of the subjects of Mousa, employ'd in repairing the town, to re-enter it after once going out: and this order was not given without cause; for on the seventeenth of Zilhadge in the morning, Timur having taken horse to view the place, with its ditches and wall, accompany'd with many princes and generals, who march'd on foot on each side him, he was perceiv'd by seven of Mousa's labourers, who were in an upper story of an house situate behind a gate of the town; and being within bow-shot of him, they let fly from a window with design to kill him. But they did not take good aim, and the rustling the arrow made only startled his horse. However Timur went into the town by another gate, and caus'd Mousa and his ac-

Sept. 16. 1398.

Book IV. complices to be seiz'd: the seven assassins who were in the house from whence the arrow was shot, took up their arms to defend themselves, and wounded some of our men; but at last Keleki Sistani broke open the house with some soldiers of his company, and put 'em to death.

At nine a-clock the same morning, Timur deliver'd to Malek Mehemed his enemy Mousa, with two hundred of his men, whom he had seiz'd. Malek, assisted by three of his servants, cut off all their heads, to revenge himself for the death of his brother whom they had slain, and made a tower of them. Then they pillag'd all his country and subjects, and put to death several leaders of those villains who were mix'd among our officers. The women and children, as also the goods and moveables of these tyrants, were given to the poor oppress'd people of Irjab, who, for being of Malek Mehemed's side, had suffer'd for several years great violence and injustice. And on this occasion we see that passage of the Alcoran fulfill'd, which threatens tyrants with confusion and ruin.

Timur gave the principality of Irjab to Malek Mehemed, and by this means deliver'd travellers from being infested by these insolent robbers. Thus as he render'd kingdoms flourishing by his goodness and equity, so he suppress'd disorders by his power and justice.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Timur marches to Chenouzan and Nagaz; and destroys the robbers of the nation of the Pervians.

TIMUR, after having settled the affairs of the country of Irjab, which requir'd as great authority as his to put it in order, the eighteenth of Zilhadge, in the year 800, march'd towards Chenouzan. After having past many forests and some mountains, he encamp'd near that place; where he staid the next day, and sent his son prince Calil Sultan to Banai[a], by the road of Captchagai[b], at the head of the baggage, accompany'd by several Emirs. Sept. 17. 1398.

Timur having march'd all night with great diligence, went with some thousands of horse towards the fortress of Nagaz, where he arriv'd early on the twenty-first of Zilhadge. Sept. 20.

It is to be remark'd, that the court having been before at Cabul, Emir Solyman Chah, and other commanders of the troops of Corassana, were come to Nagaz[b], according to Timur's order, to rebuild that place; and that they had work'd very hard there, so that it was compleatly fortify'd. Timur at his arrival there, was inform'd that the nation of the Pervians, a sort of Ouganis, to whom he had sent orders to appear before his throne with their troops, to serve in the army, had revolted, and refus'd

[a] Towns of Cabulestan near the Indus.
[b] A town of Cabulestan, between the Indus and the river of Cabul.

to

Book IV. to ſend their men: for one day when Mirza Pir Mehemed, who had been to view ſome neighbouring places in India, was return'd with his troops and plunder, bringing with him to Cabul ſeveral captives; theſe inconſiderate men were ſo bold as to ſtop up their paſſage, to plunder 'em of part of the ſpoils, paſs the river of Hir, and entrench themſelves in the high mountains and foreſts, from whence they conſtantly went to rob on the high-ways. Timur had no ſooner advice of this, than giving looſe to his paſſion, he the ſame day march'd in ſearch of theſe inſolent people, whoſe end muſt of courſe be unfortunate. He came up to 'em in three days, and order'd all his ſoldiers to diſmount, that they might march into the woods and mountains with more eaſe; and ſo ſeize and exterminate theſe rebels. They attack'd 'em with the greateſt vigor, and after a weak defence cut 'em in pieces, made their children priſoners, and pillag'd their goods, having ſet fire to their habitations; and as there were ſome who fled, Timur would ſtay ſome time in this mountain, to deliver paſſengers from the fear of theſe robbers. At this place the deputys and Kelanters * of the nation of Oubel[1] came to caſt themſelves at his feet, to beg pardon, and implore his protection. This monarch, who fought nothing more than the welfare of his people, not only forgave their crimes, but receiv'd 'em into his protection, heap'd favors on 'em, and granted 'em many privileges, becauſe of their ſincerity.

* Magiſtrates.

[1] A nation among the Ouganis.

The

The Emir Solyman Chah having reſtor'd the town of Nagaz to its former ſplendor, learnt that the Kelatians *, a ſtrong and numerous people, had refus'd to obey the orders of the emperor, and to come to the camp with their troops. This news oblig'd him to fall on 'em, which he did with ſuch bravery, that in two days and nights he defeated theſe giants, who before that time were eſteem'd the moſt valiant men in the world: he pillag'd their country, cut to pieces a great number of 'em, put the reſt in chains, made their children ſlaves, and burnt their houſes. After this he left the country of the Kelatians, and return'd in triumph to the imperial throne, where he was receiv'd with all the reſpect his actions deſerv'd. Chap. 8.

The firſt of Muharrem in the year 801, Timur leaving the country of the Pervians, went down to view the neighbourhood of the town of Nagaz: he ſent the Emir Solyman Chah to Moultan with good troops, to Mirza Pir Mehemed; and leaving Chah Ali Ferahi with five hundred foot in gariſon at Nagaz, he departed for Banou, in which he left Pir Aſi Selduz, and the Emir Huſſein Courtchi, with a ſufficient gariſon. Sept. 30. 1398.

Timur departed from Banou, and the eighth of Muharrem arriv'd at the river Indus, at the very place where Sultan Gelaleddin king of Carizme, when he fled from the wrath of Genghiz Can, ſwam groſs the river. Genghiz Can encamp'd here, but did not paſs the Indus. Timur had a bridge of boats and reeds made over this river, in which all the army were Oct. 7. See the hiſtory of Genghiz Can, Book IV. Ch. 5.

* A nation among the Onganis.

con-

Book IV. constantly employ'd; and it was finish'd in two days.

At this place he dismiss'd the Ambassadors who came to pay their respects to him, among whom were the said Mehemed Medini, ambassador from Mecca and Medina [a], and from all the princes and Cherifs of Arabia, who pray'd this conqueror to honor 'em one day with a visit, and take 'em under his protection. Timur also dismiss'd the ambassador of Eskender Chah, prince of Cachmir [b], whom he had sent to beseech his majesty to receive him upon his obedience: he order'd him to tell his master that he receiv'd his offer with pleasure, and that he desir'd he wou'd not fail to come to him at the town of Dipalpour [c], and there join the imperial camp.

CHAP. IX.

Timur passes the river Indus.

Octob. 11. 1398. THE twelfth of Muharrem in the year 801, which answers to that of the Leopard, Timur cross'd the Indus at the head of his army, and encamp'd at the entrance of the great desart of Gerou, which is call'd Tchol Gelali, because the Sultan Gelaleddin Carezem Chah, flying from the wrath of Genghiz Can, cross'd the Indus at this place, and enter'd this desart to avoid being put to death by the sword of

[a] The Cherifs of Mecca and Medina offer'd to declare Timur Calif, tho Bajazet was invested with that high dignity.

[b] A province, whose capital was Nagar.

[c] A town of India, S. of Lahor.

that

that conqueror. At Timur's arrival at this place, the Rayas, and the principal inhabitants of the mountain of Couhdgioud[a], came to make their ſubmiſſions to him: they offer'd him preſents, promis'd to remit to him conſiderable ſums, and ſerve him on all occaſions. Chap. 10.

Some months before, Rouſtem Tagi Bougai Berlas had been ſent with an army towards Moultan; and having ſtopt ſome days at Couhdgioud, theſe ſame Rayas did him ſeveral important ſervices, furniſh'd him with proviſions, and even mony to pay his ſoldiers. Timur was highly pleas'd with 'em upon theſe accounts, and reſolv'd they ſhou'd enjoy the fruits of his clemency: he prohibited every one from inſulting 'em, and order'd they ſhou'd be treated with humanity and affection. After which they return'd home joyful and contented, without either being moleſted or depriv'd of their uſual place of reſidence. Theſe are the effects and fruits of civility. The poet ſays, We ought always to be under the protection of our own actions.

CHAP. X.

Chehabeddin Mobarec Chah Temini commits hoſtilitys againſt the emperor after his ſubmiſſion.

CHEHABEDDIN Mobarec, who was prince of an iſle of the river of Jamad[b], had a great number of officers under him, and was very

[a] A mountain S. E. of Cachmir.

[b] A river near the Indus: it is the continuation of the river Dendana, which comes from Cachmir.

rich

Book IV. rich in mony and moveables. When the Mirza Pir Mehemed Gehangir march'd to the frontiers of Mouſtan, Chehabeddin came to him to kiſs his feet, and met with a handſom reception from him. He ſubmitted to the emperor, and after he had ſtaid ſome time to make his court to the Mirza, he took his leave, and return'd home; where he ſuffer'd himſelf to be overtaken with pride, and truſting in the ſtrength of his iſle, which he believ'd inacceſſible, he fortify'd it with a good ditch and high walls. Timur at his arrival at the river of Jamad, had advice of his revolt; and the fourteenth of Mu-
Octob. 13. harrem order'd the Emir Cheik Noureddin to attack this iſle at the head of his Toman, and as ſoon as he made himſelf maſter of it, to put to the ſword every one he ſhou'd find therein. When the Emir came there, he and his ſoldiers caſt themſelves into the water to croſs over. The beſieg'd prepar'd to obſtruct their paſſage; and there was as furious a battel fought as was ever heard of, which laſted till night. Chehabeddin at the head of ten thouſand men came by the windings of the river to attack our army in the rear during night, and fought with great courage and bravery. The Emir Cheik Noureddin, a man of good conduct, receiv'd the enemy with the greateſt intrepidity; and after ſeveral attacks entirely defeated 'em, conſtraining ſome to leap into the water, where they were drown'd, and killing the reſt. Manſour and Dourege Tehoura, officers of the emperor, perform'd many noble actions, and receiv'd ſeveral wounds.

Timur came with diligence to this place, and encamp'd near the iſle. Chehabeddin, who till that time had never us'd precaution in an affair, was ſo prudent as to get ready two hundred

dred flat-bottom'd boats, that he might escape if he shou'd be conquer'd. Whereupon at his return from the night-attack, in which he was vanquish'd, he fled with his domestics in these boats. With a great deal of difficulty they escap'd, rowing along the river Jamad; and at length they came to Outcha [1], a town of India. Chahabeddin

The Emir Cheik Noureddin had orders to pursue him along the banks of the river: he slew a great number of these Indians with arrows. When he return'd, the emperor rewarded those who had behav'd themselves gallantly on this occasion, and were wounded, giving 'em vests, and other things. Chehabeddin's boats arriving near the frontiers of Moultan, the troops of Mirza Pir Mehemed and Mirza Charoc, commanded by Solyman Chah, who had been sent out as scouts, hinder'd their passage, and seizing the boats on the river, cut 'em to pieces. Chehabeddin cast his wife and children into the river, and half-dead gain'd the bank. As many of this prince's subjects were retir'd into the woods, Timur order'd Chamelik to enter 'em, and if posible to exterminate all who were find there for refuge. Chamelik accordingly enter'd the forests and bogs, and having slain a great number of these miserable people, and pillag'd their effects, return'd to the camp, laden with booty, and a great number of captives.

After the success against Chehabeddin, the army march'd five or six days on the banks of the Jamad; and on the twenty-fourth of Muharrem it encamp'd on the borders of the Genave [2], at a fortress over-against which the Jamad and the Genave join in one stream, where

[1] On the Jamad above Moultan, long. 117. lat. 30.

[2] It falls into the Rave above Moultan,

Book IV. the waves dashing against one another, make it appear like the troubled ocean. Timur order'd a bridge to be built over it, which was finish'd on the twenty-seventh of Muharrem, all the troops having been employ'd in it. We don't find in history that ever any one built a bridge over it before: and even Tuhmeschin Can[a], who formerly cross'd it, was obliged to swim over.

CHAP. XI.

Timur's arrival at Toulonba.

TIMUR pass'd this great river with all his army, and encamp'd on the other side; the next day having entirely left the bridge to give free passage to the baggage and the rest of the army, he went to encamp over against the town of Toulonba, on the bank of the river, thirty-five miles * from Moultan. The princes and Rayas, accompany'd by the Cherifs and doctors, immediately came out of the place to cast themselves at Timur's feet; they kiss'd the ground on which he stood, and were handsomely treated by him.

*Gourouh.

Octob. 28. The same day Timur pass'd the river of Toulonba, and the twenty-ninth of Muharrem staid on the other bank, till all the army was cross'd over. The first of Safer he encamp'd in the neighboring plains of Toulonba.

Octob. 29.

[a] Descended from Genghiz Can; he conquer'd India Anno Dom. 1240.

* Jamad and Genave join'd.

The

The miniſters tax'd this town at two millions of crowns for the ſafety of their effects and lives. The Cheriffs, becauſe of the nobleneſs of their race, and the doctors for their learning and virtue, were exempted from this tax. They had even preſents made 'em of veſts and other things, becauſe Timur was naturally reſpectful to men of their character. Chap. II.

Some part of this tax was ſoon paid; but the inhabitants making a difficulty of paying the reſt, the troops, who were in great want of proviſions, had orders to carry away all the grain they cou'd find. During the night the ſoldiers, under pretence of making a ſearch, march'd towards the town, which they ſack'd and pillag'd, burning all the houſes, and even making the inhabitants ſlaves; the Cheriffs and doctors being the only perſons exempt from this misfortune.

Timur had advice that a number of Rayas and little princes in the neighbourhood of Toulonba, who had before ſubmitted to the Mirza Pir Mehemed, had now revolted; whereupon he ſent the Emir Chamelik, and the Cheik Mehemed Aicoutmur, with their regiments, to ravage the country of theſe Rayas, with orders to puniſh 'em ſeverely, for an example to others. The Emirs immediately departed, and enter'd the foreſts whither the enemy was retir'd. They kill'd two thouſand Indians, who became a prey to the wild beaſts and birds; and carrying away their children priſoners, they return'd to the court, laden with the ſpoils of the rebels.

The eighth of Sefer, Timur departed from Toulonba, and next day encamp'd on the borders of a deep lake, ſituate on the bank of the Biah [a], within ſight of the town of Chanavaz. Nov. 5.

[a] A river near Lahor, which falls into the Rave.

CHAP. XII.

Timur marches in search of Nusret Coukeri.

TIMUR, having advice that Nusret, brother of the Cheik Coukeri, had surrounded this deep and large lake with a wall, behind which he had retir'd with two thousand men, immediately took horse, and leaving the baggage, went to encamp with his army on the borders of this lake. He rang'd his soldiers in order of battel, and gave the command of the right wing to the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Allahdad, the two greatest men of their time. The left wing was given to the Emirs Chamelik and Cheik Mehemed Aicoutmur. The main body was commanded by Ali Sultan Tavachi, with the infantry of Corassana. And being all in order, they prepar'd to give a vigorous assault. Nusret, at the head of a thousand Indians posted himself on the borders of the lake in view of our men. Ali Sultan immediately attack'd him with his infantry: and tho the marshes and sloughs were very disadvantageous to our men, yet they gave marks of their invincible courage. Ali Sultan was wounded in the fight, as well as several others of our captains; but the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Allahdad, entering into the bogs, cut all the enemys to pieces, and fixing their heads on their lances, laid 'em at Timur's feet. It's uncertain what became of Nusret, whether he fled into the desart, or was slain. The soldiers set fire to the houses of these rebels, pillag'd their goods, and brought away a great number of cattel.

The

The tenth of Sefer the army paſs'd this great lake, and the low-lands, which were full of bogs and marſhes, notwithſtanding the extreme difficulty of the ways; and went to encamp at Chanavaz, a great and populous town. Here they found ſeveral granarys full of corn, of which the ſoldiers took as much as they had occaſion for. Vol. II. Chap. 13. Nov. 7.

Shortly after the Emirs had orders to decamp. They croſs'd the river of Biahy in purſuit of ſome ſoldiers of Nufret who had fled. They overtook 'em, and having cut 'em in pieces, brought away a great booty. Timur ſtaid two days at Chanavaz, and ſet fire to the granarys which were left, in order to reduce the infidels to extremity; and on the 13th of Sefer he de- Nov. 10. camp'd, and went down to the banks of the river Biah, over againſt the town of Dgehdgian, to which place the baggage and main body of the army was come. Here he made all his troops paſs the river. The ſame day Hermuz, a faithful domeſtic of prince Charoe, came from Herat: he acquainted the emperor with this prince's good ſtate of health, which very much pleas'd him, and excited him to read the Alcoran, and diſtribute alms in token of joy.

CHAP. XIII.

Arrival of prince Pir Mehemed Gehangir from Moultan.

WE ſaid in the chapter * which gives the reaſon of Timur's march into India, that the Mirza Pir Mehemed beſieg'd the town of Moultan, where, after a ſiege of ſix months, * Chap. 1. Siege of Moultan.

Book IV. the inhabitants were in such great want of victuals, that they were constrain'd to eat unclean things, and even dead bodys: and Sarenk the governor being at length oblig'd to fly, the town was taken by our prince, who immediately sent advice of it to the emperor. In the mean while there happen'd an inundation, which caus'd a mortality among our horses, and oblig'd us to carry the sick horses into the town, and there shut 'em up.

Upon this accident the Rayas of these countrys revolted, tho they had before submitted. They declar'd war against us by acts of hostility, massacring the governors who had been set over 'em. And as our men had no horses, these insolent people advanc'd during night to the gates of the town which extremely disturb'd our Mirza: but at length the enemy, on advice of Timur's approach, flung away their weapons, and fled.

The Mirza being deliver'd from this trouble, came out of Moultan the fourteenth of Nov. 11. Sefer, and march'd to the imperial camp on the banks of the Biah; where he had the honour to kiss the emperor's feet, who tenderly embrac'd him, and gave him a handsom reception.

Juneid Bouroulda, his brother Bayazid, and Mehemed Dervich Taican, who in the wars of Carezem had fled from the Emir Gehancha, and with great difficulty were got into India,

Pechehat is the name the Indians give to the great annual inundations which happen in India at one time of the year; for then they say to travellers, Don't go now, it is the season of Pechehat. This inundation is caus'd by the great rains and snows, which falling off the mountains, cover the flat countrys, fill the rivers, and overflow like the Nile in Egypt; and this constantly happens in the months of July, August, September and October.

having

having heard that the Mirza Pir Mehemed had made himself master of Moultan, came from the very furthest parts of India to implore his protection. The Mirza carry'd 'em to the emperor, and procur'd 'em the honor to salute him, begging pardon for 'em. Timur granted their lives, but not their liberty, before they had been bastinado'd according to the laws of Genghiz Can. The fifteenth of Sefer, Timur croſs'd the Biah, and went to encamp at Dgendgian, forty miles distant from Moultan. In three days the soldiers pass'd this river, some in barks, and others by swimming, notwithstanding its rapidity, without any damage. Chap. 14. Nov. 12.

Timur staid four days at Dgendgian, and the eighteenth of Sefer, the prince Pir Mehemed made a sumptuous banquet, and offer'd his rich presents, which consisted of crowns of gold, belts of gold, Arabian horses with gold saddles, jewels of great price, stuffs, curious vessels, bafons and pots of gold and silver; of which there was so great a number, that the secretarys and comptrollers of the Divan employ'd two days in registring 'em. Timur distributed these presents among the Emirs, Viziers and officers of his court, according to their desert: and as the Mirza's soldiers had lost their horses in this campain, and some were obliged to ride on oxen, and others to go on foot, he gave thirty thousand horses among 'em. Then Timur departed for Schonab: on the twenty first of Sefer he encamp'd at Asoman, where he staid one day, and at length came to Gehnab. Nov. 15. Nov. 18.

---

a Towns 3. of the river Biah.

b A town betwen Lahor and Dipalpour, 4. of the Biah.

The inhabitants of Dipalpour, had formerly submitted to the Mirza Pir Mehemed, who plac'd over 'em a governor nam'd Meslafer Carbuli, with a thouland men; but there being a mortality among the horses of the Mirza, which consequently diminish'd his troops, these men join'd with the Goulam, guards of Sultan Firooz Chah, and slew Meslafer with the thouland men he commanded. On the report of Timur's approach, these rebels, thinking to escape the emperor's furry, retir'd with their effects into the fortress of Batnir. Timur, at his arrival at Serhoual, left the Emir Chahmelik and Dolet Timur Tavachi, with the baggage and main-body of the army, which he order'd 'em to conduct by the way of Dipalpour, and rejoin him at Sarmane, a town near Deli. Then he departed with ten thousand horse, and got to Adioudan Nov. 21. on the twenty fourth of Seter; the inhabitants of which town having been drawn from their obedience to the nephew of the Cheik Nouroddin, by the Cheiks Munaver and Sadi, had shamefully abandon'd their country; for these Cheiks after having seduc'd 'em, took 'em into their pay, and carry'd 'em to a town call'd Batnir, except some few who fled to Deli with the Cheik Munaver.

The Cheiks and doctors, being inform'd of the respect Timur always shew'd to men of their character, were so far from being disturb'd at

A town between Lahor and Deli.

Goulams, corps de guards of the Indian kings, both of christian slaves turn Mahometans. They are educated by the king's order in the noble exercises of arms and sciences. There are also such in Persia, who in their youth are call'd Goulams, and when grown up and incorporated among the guards, Caubach.

these

these actions, that as soon as they had advice of his arrival in their quarters, they came immediately to the foot of the throne, and met with a kind reception there. Timur gave the government of their town to Moulana Khafredain Amory, and to Chamb Mehemed son of Coja Mahmoud, with orders to hinder the troops in their passage from molesting the inhabitants of that place. Thus Timur treated those civilly who rely'd on his protection, and exemplary those who refus'd to submit, pillaging their goods, and carrying away prisoners their women and children. Chap. 14.

CHAP. XIV.

The taking the town of Bend, and the fortress of Batnir: the inhabitants of which places are put to the sword.

THE citadel of Batnir was the strongest and most noted place in India; situate in a desart, and out of the common road. The inhabitants have no water, except from a great lake near the gate of the town, which is never dry but in mundations: and as no foreign army ever came into these parts before, the inhabitants of Dipalpour, Adjoudan and other towns, fled for refuge into Batnir, to escape the fury of our soldiers. So many had retir'd thither, that the place not being large enough to contain all their cattle and effects, they had left without a great number of cattel, and several chariots fill'd with moveable goods.

Book IV. The twenty fifth of Sefer, in the morning,
Nov. 22. Timur enter'd Adjendan; he visited the sepulchre of the Cheik Ferid Chekre Ganje, whose protection he implor'd near Gehil there. Then he departed for the conquest of Batnir, croſs'd the river Dena, and encamp'd in the plain of Calescutelı, ten miles distant from Adjendan, and fifty from Batnir; three miles, which they call Gouroh, making one Farsang, or Persian league. Timur read the noon prayers at Calescutelı, and there he watch'd all night by moon-light, and croſs'd the great defart in the night.

Nov. 23. The twenty fixth of Sefer, at sun-rise in the morning, he came before Batnir, and immediately caus'd the drums to be beat, and the great cry Souroun to be made: and the soldiers pillag'd whatever they could find without the place. Raoudoudgin the governor prepar'd to make resistance. He had a great many soldiers and domestics, and reign'd as a sovereign in that country. He forc'd the merchants and caravans to pay customs to him, no one being free from his insults. The strength of the place, the many officers, and the abundance of effects he had, made him so insolent and proud that he refus'd to obey Timur: for which reason the army march'd directly against the place. The right wing was commanded by the Emir Solyman Chah, the Cheik Noureddin, and Jahangir: and the left had for its leaders the Mirza Calil Sultan, and the Cheik Mohemed Aicpatour.

At the first attack our generals made themselves masters of the suburbs and fauxbourgs, where they slew a great number of Indians, and got a vast quantity of booty. They also took the counterscarp: and at the same time the Emirs, colonels and captains invested the town;

and

and arming themselves with their bucklers, gave a second assault. Baondoudgin posted himself at the gate of the town with the bravest of his Indians; but the Emirs Soyurgatmish, Said Coja and Gehan Malic, who belong'd to prince Chalil's court, march'd to attack that gate. Said Coja and Gehan Malic fell briskly upon the enemy near the person of the Indian prince, and perform'd several heroic actions. Then all the soldiers began to advance at the sound of kettle-drums, drums and trumpets, and the terrible Kerneai. They gave many assaults; and as they were on the point of gaining the place, Baondoudgin, despairing of being able to make any longer resistance, demanded quarter, and had recourse to the emperor's clemency. He sent a Cheriff to Timur, to desire a suspension of arms for one day, on condition that he came the next to cast himself at his feet. Timur granted his petition for the messenger's sake, who was of the race of Mahomet; he order'd his soldiers to retire from the gate of the town, and even from the suburbs, and to encamp in the open plain. Next day Baondoudgin not keeping his word, orders were given that every Emir should set a gate of the walls, which was over against his respective post, that they might the more easily take the town by assault. Every one obey'd, and all the fire, stones and arrows the besieg'd cast upon them, could not divert them. Baondoudgin and all his court being astonish'd at their intrepidity, got upon the top of their towers, and made signs that they implor'd the conqueror's clemency, acknowledg'd their fault, and would for the future obey the emperor, only begging he would save their lives. Timur, following the precepts of the Alcoran,

which

Book IV. which tells us that pardon is the tithe of victory, hearken'd to their prayer: whereupon in the evening Raoudoudgin sent his son Naib, with presents of animals and arabian horses, to the foot of the throne. Timur, after a handsom reception, gave him a vest of gold-brocade, a belt and sword, and then sent him back to his father. This prince took courage, and moved at Timur's civilitys, came out of the place the
Nov. 25. twenty-eighth of Sefer at nine in the morning, accompany'd by the Cheik Sadeddin Adjoudani: he kiss'd the threshold of the door, and at length approach'd the imperial carpet; he made several presents of animals and three sets of arabian horses, nine in a set, with saddles of gold to each. Timur recompens'd him with vests of gold, belts of gold, and a crown. And because the people who were in this place were very numerous, especially those of Dipalpour and Adjoudan; the Emire Seïyndi Oglan and Allahdad had orders to guard the gate of the
Nov. 26. fortress. And on the twenty-ninth of Sefer, Timur order'd the people assembled there to come before him. They were put into the custody of some faithful persons; and near three hundred Arabian horses were taken from them, which Timur gave to the Emirs and bravest warriors of the army. Five hundred of the inhabitants of Dipalpour were put to the sword, and their wives and children made slaves, for having treacherously slain Meslafer Cabuli, and a thousand horsemen belonging to the Mirza Mehemed. And as for the people of Adjoudan, who had abandon'd Timur, part of them were slain, and the rest made prisoners, after having their effects pillag'd.

Re-

Kemaleddin, brother of Raoudouldgin, having seen the punishment of those who had desery'd it, was seiz'd with a panic fear; and next day, tho Raoudouldgin was in the imperial camp, he caus'd the gate of the town to be shut. This so irritated Timur, that he caus'd Raoudgouldgin to be put in chains, and order'd the siege to begin again, and the place to be fill'd with the blood of the inhabitants. The soldiers having set themselves to sap the walls, the besieg'd soon found they shou'd not be able to defend themselves against so warlike a people, and an ever-victorious prince; they were perswaded that if the place shou'd be taken by assault, they must not expect their lives, for repentance wou'd then signify nothing: whereupon they resolv'd to beg pardon of the emperor. Accordingly Raoudouldgin's brother and son went out to beseech Timur to grant a general pardon, and deliver'd the keys of the town and castle into the hands of our officers. Chap. 14.

The first of Rabiulevel, the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Allahdad enter'd the place to receive the tribute for saving the people's lives, but the Rayes and other chiefs wou'd not accept the taxe: and as there were among the rest Guebres and idolaters, disputes arose, which cou'd not be terminated without commotions and broils. Timur was incens'd at this proceeding, and order'd that this rabble shou'd be put to the sword, and the houses of the infidels raz'd to the ground. The soldiers scal'd the walls, and enter'd the place sword in hand. The Guebres set fire to their own houses, casting their wives, children and goods into the fires; and those who call'd themselves Mussulmans cut their wives and childrens throats. And thus the men of these two sorts uniting together, Nov. 28.

put

Book IV. put themſelves in a poſture of defence, being reſolv'd to die ſword in hand. They fought in a cruel obſtinate manner: and as theſe men were exceeding ſtrong and courageous, tho ignorant, they may be compar'd to an army of ſatyrs, who fight only in deſpair.

Our men having enter'd the place, and cry'd out Allahou Ecber[1], fell upon theſe enrag'd people, who ſlew ſeveral Muſſulmans, and wounded others. The Emir Cheik Noureddin, who to partake of the honor of this expedition, had reſolv'd to dare the greateſt dangers, advanc'd into the midſt of the enemy, and ſtruck with his ſword one of the braveſt of 'em, whom he diſabled from fighting. But the Emir was immediately ſurrounded by a troop of Guebres, and was near being ſeiz'd by 'em, had not Ouzoun Mezid of Bagdad, and Firouz of Sifan made their way thro theſe infidels, and deliver'd him from danger. Victory at length declaring for our men, they ſlew ten thouſand Indians, ſet fire to the houſes which remain'd, and even ruin'd the walls of the town, ſo that it look'd like an uninhabitable place. The emperor diſtributed among the ſoldiers all the gold, ſilver, horſes and habits that were in the place. He rewarded the wounded; and gave great gifts to Ouzoun Mezid and Firouz, who had acted with ſo much reſolution in delivering the Emir Cheik Noureddin, and rais'd 'em to dignitys according to their merit.

[1] God is great. The Mahometans begin all their prayers with theſe words, which they often repeat, with their face towards the ground.

CHAP.

CHAP. XV.

Timur departs from Batnir, for Seresti, Farabad and Ahrouni.

AFTER the ruin of Batnir, the multitude of dead carcasses which infected the air, oblig'd Timur to depart thence the third of Rabiulevel. When he had march'd about fourteen or fifteen miles, he came to Kenarei Hauz*, where he encamp'd. Next day he went to the castle of Firouze; and march'd as far as the town of Seresti, the inhabitants of which being infidels, eat swines-flesh. They fled on advice of Timur's arrival, who sent out a detachment of horse in purfoit of 'em. These cavalry overtook a great number, whom they put to the sword, and brought their horses and goods back to the camp; Adel Ferach being the only person on our side who was slain. Timur staid one day at Seresti, and the next march'd eighteen miles, as far as Farabad, where he encamp'd. The inhabitants of this town were also fled. Some of our men pursu'd 'em, destroy'd several, and return'd loaden with booty, as silver, furniture and cattel.

Nov. 30.

* The bank of the bason.

The seventh of Rabiulevel, Timur pass'd by the town of Redgebuour, and went to encamp near that of Ahrouni, which was inhabited by a brutish people, unfit for making compliments to the emperor, or demanding his protection: wherefore part of 'em were destroy'd like beasts, and the rest made slaves by the soldiers, who carry'd away their corn, and set fire to their houses.

Dec. 4.

The

Book IV.

Dec. 5. The eighth of Rabiulevel, the army departed from Ahrouni, to encamp in the plains of the village of Touhene, a country inhabited by Getes, who had by force of arms made themselves masters of it a long time, and committed disorders there. They rob'd on the high-ways, insulted and pillag'd the caravans, and not having the least marks of religion, murder'd all who oppos'd their violence. On the report of the arrival of our troops, these wretches hid themselves in the midst of a wood, where almost all the trees were full of prickles.

The emperor sent against 'em a regiment commanded by Toukel Hindoui Carcara, and Moulana Nasereddin Amor. These two lords made so strict a search after these robbers, that they put to the sword near two thousand, render'd themselves masters of their cattel, and return'd to the imperial camp, dragging after 'em several of these wretches loaded with chains.

CHAP. XVI.

Timur marches against a nation of rebellious Getes.

TIMUR's intention in these wars being chiefly to exterminate robbers, tyrants and infidels, to put a stop to their disorders, and give peace and tranquility to the people;

Dec. 6. he departed from Touhene the ninth of Rabiulevel; and having sent the baggage under the conduct of Solyman Chah towards Samane, he march'd beyond the castle of Monnee, where he encamp'd. Then he enter'd the desarts and woods, whither the Getes were retir'd:

he

he exterminated two thousand of 'em, mak- Chap. 14.
ing their wives and children slaves, and pillaging their goods and cattel. Thus he deliver'd the country from the fear of their insults.

Several Cheriffs, who made their ordinary residence in a town in these quarters, came to cast themselves at Timur's feet, and kiss'd his hands. Timur receiv'd 'em with demonstrations of esteem and affection, gave 'em vests and considerable presents; and fix'd a governor over 'em, to defend 'em from the insults of our soldiers.

The tenth of Rabiulevel, the Emir Solyman Dec. 7.
Chah departed with all the train of artillery which was before Mounec; and march'd towards the town of Samane, where he staid one night. The eleventh of Rabiulevel he arriv'd Dec. 8.
at the river of Kehker, at which place Timur join'd him, after he had been against the Getes. Here he staid four days, to wait the remainder of the baggage. He departed hence the fif- Dec. 12.
teenth of Rabiulevel, and went to encamp near the bridge of Foulcouble, where he was join'd by the Emirs and soldiers of the left wing, commanded by the Sultan Mahmoud Can, and several others, whom Timur had sent from the meadow of Cabul by a particular road into India, where they had taken towns, ravag'd the country, and brought into subjection several people.

The sixteenth of Rabiulevel, the emperor, at Dec. 13.
the head of his army, cross'd the bridge of Foulcouble, and encamp'd on the other side. The baggage and remainder of the army from Dipalpour, under the conduct of the great general Chamelik, also arriv'd the same day at the imperial camp.

The

Book IV. The twentieth of Rabiulevel, the army departed from Foulcouble. They went but five
Dec. 17. miles that day, and encamp'd near the bridge Foulbeiran. The twenty first they arriv'd at the town of Kuteil, seventeen miles from Samane.

CHAP. XVII.

A review of the whole army marching in order of battel.

WHEN the several bodys of the army, which had taken different roads, had join'd the imperial camp, orders were given that every Emir shou'd repair to his respective post. The right wing was commanded by the Mirzas Pir Mehemed and Rouſtem; the left by the great Sultan Mahoud, Can of Zagatai, with the princes of the blood, and several Emirs; and the main body was compos'd of divers Tomans and regiments, which march'd six leagues and two miles by the road of Deli.

Dec. 19. The twenty-second of Rabiulevel, they arriv'd at the town of Aſſendi, seventeen miles from Kuteil. The inhabitants of Samane, Kuteil, and Aſſendi, who were moſtly idolaters, burnt their own houſes, and fled to Deli; ſo that our men cou'd meet with no one in their country.

Dec. 20. The twenty-third, after a march of six miles, they encamp'd at Toglocpour, the inhabitants of which town were of a particular religion. They believ'd that the whole univerſe was govern'd by two beings, the firſt of which they call Yezdan, that is, God; and the other Ahrimen, that is, the devil. The former they explain

explain by light, and the other by darkneſs; pretending that all good proceeds from God, and all evil from the devil. Chap. II.

Theſe idolaters, call'd Souloun, having all fled, our ſoldiers ſet fire to the town. The twenty-fourth of Rabiulevel the army arriv'd at Panipat, a town twelve miles from Toghocpour. All the inhabitants had fled like the reſt. There was found in this place a granary of wheat, in which were more than ten thouſand Mans of full weight, worth about a hundred and ſixty thouſand Mans of common weight, which was diſtributed among the ſoldiers. The twenty-fifth they march'd about ſix miles, and encamp'd on the bank of the river of Panipat. The twenty-ſixth all the Emirs girded on their cuiraſſes, that they might be ready upon occaſion, and then continu'd their march. Dec. 21. Dec. 22. Dec. 23.

The twenty-ſeventh of Rabiulevel, the Emirs of the right wing had orders to march as far as Gehanmai, a palace built by the Sultan Firouz Chah on the top of a mountain, two leagues from Deli; at the foot of which runs the great river Jaoun. According to this order, they march'd from Canigbar in as far as Gehanmai, putting to the ſword all the officers they met, and making ſlaves of the inhabitants of that country, whom they pillag'd. On monday the twenty-ninth Timur departed from the town of Pelle, croſs'd the Jaoun, and march'd to the right of the town of Louni, where was abundance of paſture: here he encamp'd the ſame day. This place is ſituate between the two rivers of Jaoun and Hiten. The latter is a great branch which the Sultan Firouz Chah Dec. 24. Dec. 26.

A Man is a pound, or thereabouts.

Book IV. had cut off from the river of Calini, which joins the Jaoun near the town of Firouzabad. The Emirs Gehan Chah, Chamelik, and Allahdad, were already come to the foot of this caſtle, the governors of which, nam'd Maimoun and Maichoum, far from coming to meet 'em with ſubmiſſion, reſolv'd to defend themſelves. At Timur's arrival there, an experienc'd old man came out to caſt himſelf with reſpect at the emperor's feet, and demand his protection: but the inhabitants, who were Guebres and the ſervants of Mellou, perſiſted in their raſh reſolution of reſiſtance.

Then Timur order'd his men to beſiege the town, and ſap the walls. Accordingly they began to do it at noon, and by evening made themſelves maſters of the place, where the Guebres had burnt their houſes, with their women and children. Timur repos'd himſelf this night without the place, and the thirtieth of Rabiulevel order'd that the inhabitants who were Mahometans, ſhou'd be ſeparated from the Guebres and ſervants of Mellou Can; which being done, the latter were put to the ſword. All the houſes were pillag'd excepting thoſe of the Cheriffs, for whom Timur always preſerv'd a filial affection, becauſe of their extraction: and then the reſt of the town was ſet on fire.

Dec. 27.

Dec. 28. The firſt of Rabiulakher, Timur departed from the town of Louni, and went to the bank of the Raoun, before the palace of Gehanumai; ſo that obſerving himſelf the paſſages in theſe places, he might the better know how to give out his orders. He return'd to the camp in the evening, and aſſembled his imperial council, conſiſting of the princes his children, the great Emirs, and generals of his army. He propos'd to 'em the method of forming the ſiege of Deli,

capital

capital of India, which was not far off: and it was reſolv'd, that a great quantity of corn and ammunition ſhou'd be got together forthwith, and kept in Gehannumai; and that this great city ſhou'd be block'd up. Chap. V.

Accordingly the Emirs Solyman Chah, Gehan Chah, and others, were order'd to pillage the granarys in the neighbourhood of Deli: whereupon they ſet out in the beginning of the month of Rabiulakher. Next day Timur was for taking the diverſion of walking in the palace of Gehannumai: he took horſe with ſeven hundred cavaliers with their cuiraſſes on, paſs'd the river Jaoun, and enter'd into this magnificent palace, to which the Sultan Firouz Chah had given the name of Gehannumai, that is, the mirror of the univerſe, becauſe of its fine proſpect; tho one wou'd think this name was rather given it, to prognoſticate that it ſhou'd fall into the hands of the monarch of the univerſe.

After Timur had conſider'd the beautys of this place, he took care to obſerve from this riſing-ground the propereſt place for the field of battel, that he might draw the enemys thither in caſe they appear'd. In the mean time Ali Sultan Tavachi and Juneid Bourouldai, who had been ſent out as ſcouts, return'd, Ali Sultan bringing with him Mehemed Selef whom he had ſeiz'd, and Juneid bringing another. Mehemed Selef was queſtion'd concerning what had been tranſacted in the city, and then put to death. When Timur had paſs'd the river, to obſerve the field of battel, four thouſand horſe, five thouſand foot, and twenty-ſeven elephants, belonging to Mellou Can, were ſeen near Gehannumai. Our ſcouts, commanded by Seid Coja and Mobacher, to the number

Book IV. of three hundred, attack'd their vanguard, and pretending to fly, led 'em as far as the bank of the river, where a furious battel enſu'd.

On advice of this, Timur ſent Sevindgic Behader and Allahdad to ſuccour Seid Coja: they croſs'd the river with their regiments, and having join'd him, let fly a ſhower of arrows on the enemy; but as they were about to fall on 'em with their drawn ſwords, the Indians, unaccuſtom'd to ſuch brave actions, gave ground at the firſt onſet, and fled towards the city, which with difficulty they enter'd. Seid Coja purſu'd 'em, and ſlew a great number. In this flight an elephant fell and was wounded; which was a prognoſtic of our further victory.

CHAP. XVIII.

Timur marches to the eaſt ſide of the town of Louni. Maſſacre of a hundred thouſand Indian ſlaves, who were in his camp.

Dec. 30. THE third of Rabiulakher, Timur departed from Gehannumai, and went to encamp on the eaſt ſide of Louni, where the emperor's ſons *, the great Emirs, the colonels of the regiments, who were gone out to make inroads, came to the imperial camp. Being all aſſembled, Timur, who would not give place to the greateſt generals of the army, nor the moſt undaunted warriors, as well in policy and wiſdom of government, as in war, believ'd it not improper to harangue the leaders, imitating in that the example of the antient emperors and the moſt illuſtrious conquerors. Thus he did

* Chah Zades.

did with all the eloquence that cou'd be expected on the like occasion. He ſpoke to 'em of the manner of breaking thro ranks, of overturning ſquadrons, and how they ſhou'd repulſe the enemy; he inſtructed 'em how to make retreats when overpower'd, and how rally the ſoldiers and return to the attack; how to ſuſtain an obſtinate fight, and how to free one's ſelf from any eminent danger. In ſhort, he explain'd to 'em, with ſo much energy and perſpicuity, all the maxims of war, that his captains admir'd the extraordinary wiſdom and experience which appear'd in his ſpeech, ſaying that the diſcourſes of great princes are the moſt beautiful; inſomuch that being excited by the lively reaſons and learned maxims which he had inculcated, they were fill'd with zeal and ardor, and prepar'd to confront the greateſt dangers in his ſervice. They anſwer'd every thing he propos'd by generous vows for his proſperity, and the continuation of his victorys; they kiſs'd the ground on which he ſtood, to teſtify their reſpect and joy at being the officers of ſo great a conqueror.

Chap. 18.

Timur harangues the army.

The ſame day the Emir Gehan Chah and the other generals remonſtrated to Timur, that ſince his croſſing the Indus, they had made above a hundred thouſand Indians ſlaves, who were moſtly Gaubres and idolaters; that they were now in the camp, and wou'd probably in any obſtinate battel, take part with the men of Deli, and falling upon our ſoldiers, make us loſe the battel. This remonſtrance was back'd by thoſe who had obſerv'd, that when the officers of Mellon Can came out of Deli with their elephants to attack us, the ſlaves ſeem'd highly pleas'd. Timur having made a ſerious reflection on all the circumſtances of this affair,

Book IV. pass'd an order, that those who had any Indian slaves shou'd put 'em to death; and he who defer'd or refus'd doing so, shou'd be put to death himself, and his wives, children and effects be given to him who shou'd inform against him.

As soon as this order was made public, they began to put it in execution; and in less than an hour were put to death a hundred thousand Indians, according to the smallest computation. Among others, Moulana Naseroddin Amor, one of the most venerable doctors of the court, who cou'd never consent so much as to kill a single sheep, was constrain'd to order fifteen slaves whom he had in his house to be slain. Timur afterwards order'd that one soldier out of every ten, shou'd keep watch over the Indian women and children, as also over the camels they had taken in the pillage.

After these precautions, Timur resolv'd to march to the siege of Deli: he set out on the Dec. 30. third of Rabiulacher at noon, to encamp on the bank of the Jaoon. The astrologers and soothsayers secretly disputed concerning the disposition of the heavens, and of the fortunate or unfortunate aspects of the planets at his departure: but Timur told 'em that neither joy nor affliction, adversity nor prosperity, depended on the stars, but on the will of the Creator of them, of men, and of the universe. "I consult, "says the emperor, in the assistance of the Al- "mighty, who has never abandon'd me. "What avail the triplicitys or conjunctions of "the planets? I'll never delay one moment the "execution of my projects, when I have taken "sufficient measures and precautions to bring "'em to perfection." Next morning our hero made the public prayer, and order'd an Alcoran

coran to be brought him, from whence he might judg of the event of his expedition. Here he found a very favorable answer, which pointed out the destruction of a people by a wonderful effect of the almighty providence. He explain'd the passage in his own favor, and having shown it to all the army, became assur'd of the victory. Our warriors being thus animated by the Alcoran, which promis'd 'em the divine protection, Timur despis'd the stars; and on the fifth of Rabiulakher 801, cross'd the river of Jaxum, and encamp'd on its banks on the other side. The soldiers thro precaution made a ditch to surround 'em, near a hill nam'd Pouchtei Behali; here they fix'd palisados of branches of trees; and for a rampart bound several great buffalos neck and heels, behind which they prepar'd their bucklers and ensigns. Chap. 19. Jan. 1.

CHAP. XIX.

Timur gives battel to Sultan Mahmoud, emperor of India.

TUESDAY-morning the seventh of Rabiulakher, Timur drew up his army in order of battel. He gave the command of the right wing to prince Pir Mehemed Gehanghir, accompany'd by several Emirs. The left wing was led by the Mirzas, Sultan Hussein, and Calil Sultan, also assisted by many great generals. The rear was given to the Mirza Roustem, in conjunction with several illustrious Emirs; and the main body was commanded by Timur himself; it being fit that this prince, who was Jan. 3.

Book IV. the very life of the ſoldiers, ſhould be fix'd in the heart of the army. Every thing being thus ſettled, they march'd in good order.

The enemy alſo advanc'd in order of battel. Their right wing was brought up by Kan Can, Mir Ali Coja, and other Indian princes. The left had for its leaders Malek Moineddin, and others; and the main body was commanded by the Sultan Mahmoud Can, grandſon of Firouz Chah, emperor of India, he having for his lieutenant general Mallou Can. This army conſiſted of ten thouſand horſe well equip'd, and forty thouſand foot, and 120 elephants, beſides ſeveral elephants of war, arm'd with cuiraſſes, having between their long tuſks very poiſon'd daggers, and on their backs wooden towers in form of baſtions, on which were mounted a great many croſs-bow men and archers, who cou'd fight under covert as in forteſſes: and on the ſide of the elephants march'd the flingers of fire and melted pitch, as alſo rockets arm'd at the ends with iron, which give ſeveral blows one after another wherever they fall.

Our ſoldiers were not much diſturb'd about this Indian army; but as they had never ſeen any elephants before, they ignorantly imagin'd that the arrow and ſabre had no effect on the bodys of theſe animals; that they were ſo very ſtrong, that they overthrew trees only by ſmelling the earth as they paſs'd along; that they could ſhove down the ſtrongeſt buildings; and that in battel they would toſs both horſe and horſeman to a vaſt height in the air. This deprived ſeveral of our lide, ſo that when the poſts were fix'd for the officers and lords of the court, Timur, who always ſhew'd reſpect to men of learning, civilly demanded of them what poſts they

they wou'd chuse. Several of these doctors, who were always near Timur's person, being frighten'd at what they had read and heard of the elephants, answer'd immediately, "If it "please your majesty, we chuse to be near the "ladys."

Chap. 18.

Timur's artifice to overcome the Indian elephants.

Timur being sensible of his soldiers fear, took all necessary precautions to arm 'em with courage. He order'd that a rampart of bucklers shou'd be made before the ranks, and a ditch dug before the rampart; then he caus'd buffalos to be tied by the neck and feet with long pieces of leather, close to each other, after which on each side of em and on their heads were fix'd brambles. Besides this were made iron-hooks, three-fork'd, and fixed to stakes, so that when the elephants shou'd come to the attack, these hooks shou'd be planted in their way, and the brambles on the buffalos set on fire to put the elephants into disorder. But victory declar'd for us before we had occasion to make use of these machines.

As soon as the two armys were in view, Timur got upon an eminence in the middle of the field of battel, near the foot of the hill of Pouchte Behali, whence he observ'd the motion of both armys. When they were on the point of coming to blows, he fell on the earth, and after several times bowing, besought God to give him the victory, which he must expect from the divine goodness, and not from his own valor, and the number of his soldiers.

While Timur was at prayers, a strange accident happened; which was that the Emirs of the rear, Cheik Nouredin, Chamelik and Allahdad, imagin'd that if the emperor shou'd send recruits from the main body to the right wing, and even to the rear, this would be a certain

token

Book IV. token of victory. Accordingly after prayer Timur order'd Ali Sultan Tavachi, and Tagi Bouga, who commanded the regiment of Sunnits of the Toman of Rouſtem, which belong'd to the main-body; as alſo Aicod Bacchi Peſeri, and Mouſſa Recnal, to go with their regiments to ſuccour the right wing: and at the ſame time he ſent another ſquadron of Emirs to re-inforce the rear. This ſo excited the courage of our warriors, that they ruſh'd impetuouſly upon the enemy, whom they attack'd with ſo much vigor, that the Indians were conſtrain'd to give ground, and the great and ſtrong elephants ſuffer'd themſelves to be drove like oxen.

This advantage augmented the valor of the other battalions, who alſo fell upon the enemy, praiſing God. So hot a battel was ne'er ſeen before; the fury of ſoldiers was ne'er carry'd to ſo great excels; and ſo frightful a noiſe was never heard: for the cymbals, the common kettledrums, the drums and trumpets, with the great braſs kettledrums which were bear on the elephants backs, the bells which the Indians ſounded, and the cries of the ſoldiers, were enough to make even the earth to ſhake; and there was not a man, how dauntleſs ſoever, who was not ſomewhat diſmay'd at the beginning of the fight. But our vanguard, compos'd of the regiments of many illuſtrious Emirs, perceiving the enemy's vanguard advancing, retir'd behind the right wing to lie in ambuſcade, till they had paſs'd by 'em; then they came out of their ambuſcade, and fell on the enemy ſword in hand like roaring lions, and in a moment few between five and ſix hundred men. The prince Pir Mehemed, who was at the head of the vanguard of the right wing, aſſiſted by the Emir Solyman Chah, attack'd the left of the enemy,

which

which confided in the valor of Tagi Can: this he did with ſo much conduct, that he drove 'em beyond the baſon of Havizcas. Then Pir Mehemed fell upon the elephants; and theſe furious animals, finding themſelves cloſely preſs'd, enter'd among the ranks of the enemy's left wing, and caus'd a further diſorder. Our left wing, conducted by the Mirza Sultan Huſſein, perform'd ſeveral great actions, thro the valor of that prince, of Gehan Chah Behader, Cayaſeddin Tercan, and others; for they made the enemy's right wing, commanded by Moineddin and Malek Hani, give ground, and thoſe who eſcap'd the edge of the ſword, were repuls'd as far as the gate of the city. While the enemy's wings were thus gall'd, their main body, ſuſtain'd by the elephants in good order, came to the attack: they had a warm reception from the Mirza Rouſtem who commanded the rear, and was poſted over againſt 'em. A bloody battel enſu'd, in which the Emir Cheik Noureddin gave marks of extraordinary valor. The Emir Chamelik alſo perform'd the moſt heroic actions, ruſhing furiouſly into the midſt of the elephants, with Dolet Timur Tavachi, and Mengheli Coja. With their lances they overthrew thoſe who were mounted on the elephants, and with their ſabres and arrows cut off the trunks of theſe terrible animals, whom they wounded in all parts of their bodys; ſo that in a ſhort time the field of battel was cover'd with the elephants trunks, and the heads and bodys of the ſlain.

Chap. 19.

The moſt valiant Indians always endeavor'd to defend themſelves; but this defence ſeem'd rather like the ſtruggling of ſheep going to the ſlaughter, than a vigorous reſiſtance. Thus theſe poor Indians were conſtrain'd to turn their

Book IV. their backs with their elephants; to which this paſſage of the Alcoran may be well apply'd: "Do you not ſee how the Lord thy God has "dealt with the men of the elephant?"[1]

The Sultan Mahmoud, and his head-general Mellou Can, fled into the city, the gate of which they ſhut.

The Mirza Calil Sultan, who commanded our left wing, brought to Timur one of the elephants bound with cords; after having very much maul'd it with the ſword, he overthrew its guards, and made it walk before him, as the husbandman does the ox in the plow. Timur and all the court were ſurpriz'd that a child of but fifteen years old, ſhou'd dare to attack and be able to conquer and bind a war-elephant, which had ſtruck terror into the whole army.

When the flight of the enemy had aſſur'd us of victory, Timur ſpur'd his horſe towards the gate of Deli, and carefully examin'd the walls and fortifications: and as it was the time of noon-prayer, he went down to the bank of the Havizeas, which is a round baſon, above an arrow's ſhot in diameter, built by the Sultan Firouz Chah; and as in any inundation it is fill'd with rain-water, it furniſhes the inhabitants of Deli with water for an intire year. On its bank is the tomb of Sultan Firouz Chah.

Timur being encamp'd here, the princes and generals came before him to kiſs the earth; they congratulated him on his victory, and gave applauſes to the princes of the blood, the Emirs, and other brave men, who had ſignaliz'd themſelves in the battel.

[1] The Arabians before the Hegira had an epocha call'd the Elephant.

Timur

Timur upon hearing theſe ſtrange adventures, burſt out into tears of joy: he bleſs'd God for having given him ſuch brave children, and ſuch faithful and valiant ſubjects. Was it not ſurprizing, that this great prince, who on ſome occaſions cou'd exerciſe extraordinary ſeverity, had at this time ſo tender a heart, that he cou'd not refrain his tears, while he return'd thanks to God for his favors? Timur had in the perſon of Calil Sultan a ſon worthy of himſelf, who in magnificence, valor and generoſity, ſurpaſs'd Menoutcher [1], Feridon and Kei Coſru *; he was as virtuous as Alexander, and as rich as Darius. He was at firſt nam'd the friend of God, Calil Allah; and the glory he afterwards acquir'd, was the reaſon of his being call'd Sultan. Chap. 20.

* Coſroes.

CHAP. XX.

Flight of Sultan Mahmoud, and his general Mellou Can, prince of Moultan. Reduction of Deli capital of India.

THE Sultan Mahmoud and Mellou Can, being vanquiſh'd, re-enter'd the city, repenting they had ever undertaken to go out: but repentance now being uſeleſs, they cou'd have recourſe only to flight. They departed at midnight, while it was very dark: the Sultan went out by the gate of Havaderani, and Mellou by that of Barake; both which are ſi-

[1] Son of Feridon, king of Perſia.

Book IV. tuated ſouth of Gehanpenah: and they retir'd into the deſarts.

Timur being inform'd of this flight, ſent ſeveral Emirs in purſuit of 'em; they ſeiz'd on ſome of their officers who fled with 'em, and return'd with a great quantity of booty, taking priſoners the prince Seif Can, ſirnam'd Malek Chereſeddin, and the prince Codadad, ſon of Mellou Can.

The ſame night the Emir Allahdad, and other colonels of our regiments, had orders to make themſelves maſters of the gates by which the princes went out; as alſo to guard the other gates of the city, that no one might eſcape.

Jan. 4. The eighth of Rabiulakher, Timur erected his ſtandard on the walls of Deli, and went in perſon to the gate of the capital, where he ſat on the Aidgiah, or throne whereon the Indian emperors ſit in their royal robes on the great feaſt-day. This gate is in the quarter of Gehanpenah, over againſt the baſon of Havizcas. In this place a tent and tribunal were prepar'd for him, where he gave audience. Then the Cherifs, Cadis, and principal perſons of the city of Deli, came to caſt themſelves at the foot of the throne, and had the honor to kiſs the imperial carpet. Fadlallah Bacchi, lieutenant of Mellou Can, at the head of the whole Divan of Deli, was the firſt who came to make his ſubmiſſion; and the Cherifs, the men of learning, and the old men, addreſs'd themſelves to the princes the emperor's ſons, and to the great Emirs, to obtain quarter: ſo the Mirza Pir Mehemed, and the Emirs Solyman Chah and Gehan Chah, at a proper time preſented their petition.

According to cuſtom they carry'd the horſe's tail and kettledrums, which were fix'd upon the

the gate: and the consorts of music were perform'd on this occasion on the tune Rihavi, us'd only on victorys. And to preserve the memory of so considerable a conquest, an ingenious poet made these verses, the letters of which form the epocha of this memorable day *.

Chap. 20.

On wednesday the eighth of the month of Rabiulakher, the ever-victorious emperor Timur made himself master of Deli, the sun being in Capricorn. Jan. 4. 1399.

All the elephants and rhinoceros's were brought to Timur. These animals, being before instructed, fell down before the emperor in an humble posture, and at the same time made a great cry as if they demanded quarter. There were an hundred and twenty of these elephants of war, which at the return from India were sent to Samarcand, and to the provinces of the empire, where Timur's sons resided. Two were carry'd chain'd to Tauris, one to Chiraz, five to Herat, one to Chirvan to the Cheik Ibrahim, and one to Arzendgian to the lord Taharten. The tenth of Rabiulakher, the doctor Nasereddin Amor was order'd to enter the city, with the other lords and Cheriffs of the court, to preach in the grand mosque, and make the public prayers and Coutbe in the august name and titles of the invincible empe- Jan. 6.

* The Orientals have an alphabet, the letters of which they make use of instead of cyphers, and by which they compose a verse to the praise of any one who has perform'd some remarkable action; and the letters of this verse us'd for cyphers, denote the day, month and year wherein this action was perform'd.

Book IV. ror Timur, and not in the name of Firouz Chah, as was done before.

The Debirs, Menehis and other secretarys sent a relation of this expedition, in their letters of conquest, into all the parts of the empire, and even to the princes in alliance with Timur, tho it were a year's journy to go round to 'em all; so that public rejoicings might be made for these great advantages with which God distinguish'd the reign of Timur.

The Bitictechis, or controllers of the Divan, also enter'd the city, where having taken an estimate of the mony due for saving the peoples lives, the receivers general took care to receive it.

In the mean while the principal lords of the court, and the emperor's favorites remonstrated to his majesty, that after having suffer'd the fatigues and difficultys of this war, victory inspired 'em with thoughts of renewing their diversions and pleasures; that Feridon and the Keis had always done the same; and that it was in justice due to 'em after they had thus fatigued themselves. The emperor willingly condescended, and gave orders for a feast, which was to continue for several days. Timur began the rejoicings by presents to the princes of the blood, the Emirs and generals of the army, in consideration of their services and great actions; and afterwards the musicians perform'd concerts of music in amorous and drinking tunes, which so charm'd the hearts of all, that they forgot the rigors of war, and the fatigues of a campaign.

Jan. 12. The fifteenth of Rahmalaher, a great number of our soldiers being assembled at the gate of Deli, insulted the inhabitants of the suburbs. The great Emirs were order'd to put a stop to these disorders; but God, who had predestin'd

the

the ruin of this place for the chaſtiſement of the inhabitants, permitted its deſtruction by ſecond cauſes. Our ſoldiers coming into the place was one cauſe; and the deſpair of the Guebres, who remain'd in great numbers in the towns of Seiri, Gehanpenah and old Deli, was another. The curioſity of the Sultaneſſes to ſee the raritys of Deli, and particularly of the famous palace, adorn'd with a thouſand columns, and built by the antient king of India, Melik Jouna, indue'd 'em to go into the city with all the court, which was very numerous: and the gate was left open to every one, ſo that above fifteen thouſand of our ſoldiers got in unperceiv'd. Beſides the Emirs and comptrollers of the Divan, who were ſet at the gate to receive the tribute for ſaving the inhabitants lives; other officers in commiſſion had the ſame liberty to enter the city: but there remain'd a far greater number of troops in a large place between Deli, Seiri, and Gehanpenah. The diſorders our men committed in the two laſt places caus'd a great buſtle among the Guebres, who in deſpair fell upon our men; and ſeveral of 'em ſet fire to their houſes, wherein their wives and children were burnt. Our men perceiving this deſolation among the Guebres, pillag'd 'em, becauſe of their evil deſigns. As other troops were let into the city to ſeize on the inhabitants of the neighbouring towns and villages who had fled for refuge thither, the confuſion very much increas'd, and the troops within the place employ'd themſelves intirely in plundering and burning the houſes of the Guebres. The Emirs, to quell this diſorder, caus'd the gates to be ſhut, that the troops without might not enter; but the ſoldiers within open'd the gates to their comrades; by Chap. 20.

Book IV. morning all the army enter'd, and the ſoldiers roſe in arms againſt their leaders, who oppos'd their enterprize. So on the ſeventeenth of Rabiulakher 801, this great and proud city was deſtroy'd.

Jan. 13. 1399.

The next day paſs'd in the ſame manner; and there were ſome ſoldiers who took a hundred and fifty ſlaves, men, women and children, whom they carry'd out of the city; and ſome ſoldiers-boys had twenty ſlaves to their own ſhare. The other ſpoils of precious ſtones, pearls, rubys, diamonds, ſtuffs, belts, gold and ſilver veſſels, mony, plate, and other curioſitys, were innumerable; for the Indian women and girls were adorn'd with precious ſtones, and had on their feet and hands, and even on their toes, bracelets and rings; of which our men had ſuch great numbers, that they refus'd to carry away a vaſt quantity of precious ointments of ineſtimable value.

Jan. 15. The nineteenth of Rabiulakher they did the ſame in old Deli, whither the reſt of the Guebres were retir'd. Theſe Indians aſſembled together in the great moſque, and prepar'd to defend themſelves; but the Emir Chamelik and Ali Sultan Tavachi came thither with five hundred men, and having forcibly enter'd the moſque, ſent to the abyſs of hell the ſouls of theſe infidels, of whoſe heads they erected towers, and gave their bodys for food to the birds and beaſts of prey. Never was ſuch a terrible ſlaughter and deſolation heard of. As old Deli was pillag'd the ſame day, they made ſome of the inhabitants ſlaves, whom they loaded with chains, tho they had promis'd 'em their lives. Several days were employ'd in making 'em quit the city; and as they went out, every Emir of a Toman or regiment took

took a number of 'em for his ſervice: and as there were ſeveral thouſands of tradeſmen and artizans, ſome were diſtributed among the princes and Emirs who ſerv'd under Timur; and others were ſent to the officers of the emperor's ſons, and to the other Emirs in their reſpective governments. The emperor likewiſe order'd that all the maſons ſhou'd be kept for his particular ſervice, as he deſign'd to build a ſpacious moſque in Samarcand of ſtone. Chap. 10.

But it may not be amiſs to give a deſcription of the three towns which compoſe the city of Deli[1]. That of Seiri is ſurrounded with a wall in form of a circle; old Deli is the ſame, but much larger: and from the walls of Seiri on the north-eaſt, to the walls of old Deli, which is on the ſouth-weſt, there are two other walls, one on each ſide; and the ground which lies betwixt 'em is call'd Gehanpenah, and is larger than old Deli. Three gates of Seiri look towards Gehanpenah, and the four others have the proſpect outwards. Gehanpenah has thirteen gates, ſix to the north-weſt, and ſeven to the ſouth-eaſt; ſo that when one ſpeaks of Deli, we comprehend the three towns together, which have in all thirty gates.

[1] Deſcription of Deli, as it was in the author's time; for at preſent what they call Deli is a new city, ſituate in a different place; built by Gelaleddin Ecber, and call'd Ecber Aba, from the name of that king, the father of Humaioun Chah.

CHAP. XXI.

Timur departs from Deli; and purſues his conqueſts in the remoter parts of India, near the Ganges.

TIMUR continu'd fifteen days at Deli, the deſtruction of which place was caus'd by the ill conduct of the inhabitants: then having reſolv'd to exterminate the idolaters of India, as well as the robbers and rebels, he march'd towards the other moſt famous places of this empire. At his departure he order'd the Cherifs, Cadis, doctors and Cheiks of the city, to aſſemble in the great moſque of Gehanpenah; where he fix'd a governor over 'em, to protect 'em from the inſults of the ſoldiers, whom victory had render'd inſolent.

Jan 18. 1399. The twenty-ſecond of Rabiulakher, at ten in the morning, the army encamp'd from Gehanpenah, and march'd down to Firouz Abad, three miles from Deli. Here Timur ſtaid an hour to view this delightful place: and after having made two Rekaets * in the moſque belonging to it, which is built of ſtone on the banks of the Jaoun, to return thanks to God for his conqueſt, he departed out of this town.

* A proſtration in prayer.

About this time the lord Chamſeddin, one of the Cherifs of Termed, with Alaiddin Naib, lieutenant of the Cheik Coukeri, who had been ſent embaſſadors to the town of Coutele, return'd from their embaſſy: they brought advice that Behader Nehar prince of theſe quarters, had willingly ſubmitted to the emperor;

and

and hop'd next friday to have the honor to kiss the ground before his majesty, and offer him his services. Timur being encamp'd on the other side of Gehanuma near Vezir Abad, the embassadors presented him two white parrots, from Behader Nehar. These birds had liv'd ever since the time of Togluc Chah, and had been kept many years in the antichambers of the emperors of India. Timur took this curious present for a good augury; and continu'd his road six miles farther to a place call'd Moudala, having before cross'd the Jaoun. Chap. 22.

The twenty-fourth of Rabiulakher, he march'd six miles and encamp'd at Kete, where Behader Nehar with his son Coultach had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet, to offer a great many rich presents, and assure the emperor of their obedience. The twenty-fifth the army march'd to Baghbout, which for its beauty is compar'd to the delicious garden of Durbehar, and to the magnificent temple of the idols of Fercar; which places are distant from each other six miles. The twenty-sixth they march'd also six miles, and encamp'd at Asar, situate between two rivers, where Timur staid to repose himself. Jan. 20. Jan. 21. Jan. 22.

CHAP. XXII.

Conquest of Myrthe. The Guebres are flea'd alive.

THE town of Myrthe being one of the most noted places of the empire of India, Timur resolv'd to make himself master of

Book IV. it: whereupon the twenty-ſixth of Rabyulakher he ſent thither from Aſar the lords Rouſtem,
Jan. 22. Tagi Bouga, Chamelik, and Allahdad. The
Jan. 24. twenty-eighth theſe lords ſent advice to the emperor, that Elias Ougani, and the ſon of Moulana Ahmed Tohaneſeri, with a Guebre nam'd Seſi, had fortify'd the town, and were back'd by a company of Guebres; that they had refus'd to ſubmit, and had not only declar'd that they reſolv'd to defend themſelves, but even dar'd to uſe ſome inſolent expreſſions, ſaying that the emperor Turmechirin Can once came to beſiege the place, but was oblig'd to raiſe the ſiege; and that they hop'd the ſame wou'd be our fate. This news diſquieted Timur; and their ſpeaking contemptuouſly of Turmechirin Can, whom they tax'd with cowardice, highly incens'd him. On Tueſday at the hour of morning-prayer he took horſe at the head of ten thouſand men; and in two days and one night, march'd twenty miles.

Jan. 25. The twenty-ninth of Rabiulakher at noon he arriv'd at the town of Myrthe, where he order'd the captains of the companys to undermine the walls. At night they viſited the works, and found they had already advanc'd ten or fifteen cubits breadth to each baſtion and courtine; which ſo ſurpriz'd the Guebres, that they deſiſted from defending themſelves.

Next day the Emir Allahdad, with his regiment nam'd the faithful, conſiſting of the antient people of the Coutchins, attack'd the gate of the town. A young lad, one of his domeſtics, nam'd Serai, ſon of Calandar, boldly caſt a net upon the battlement, and mounted the walls. He was follow'd by Rouſtem Berlas, and a great many brave men, who ruſh'd into the town ſword in hand: they bound Elias Ougani,

and

and the ſon of Tehaneſeri, governors of the place, whom they carry'd to the foot of the imperial throne. The Guebre Seſi, one of the princes of this place, was kill'd in the aſſault, and his body caſt into the fire which he ador'd. Chap. 22.

The firſt of Jumazi-ul-evel they ſtea'd alive all the Guebres of this place, and made ſlaves of their wives and children: they ſet fire to every thing, and raz'd the walls; ſo that this town was ſoon reduc'd to aſhes, tho Turmechirin Can, a great emperor in Aſia, cou'd not make himſelf maſter of it. Jan. 25.

It is remarkable, that before the army's marching to this place, Timur had reſolv'd to write a letter to the inhabitants, to reduce 'em by good-nature and promiſes: but the ſecretary being about to write theſe words, "Why "do you compare us with Turmechirin Can?" Timur reprimanded thoſe who had order'd the ſecretary to write in ſuch a manner, ſaying, "What am I to Turmechirin Can? He was a "greater lord than me, of ſtricter virtue, and "better conduct: but my deſign is to revenge "the affront theſe villains have put upon ſo "powerful and auguſt a monarch." So without ſuffering the letter to be concluded, he march'd to exterminate 'em. This was Timur's modeſty, which ought to ſerve as an example to others.

CHAP. XXIII.

*Several battels upon the great river * Ganges, against the militia of the Guebres.*

* Call'd in Perſian Derjai Conc, the ſea of Conc.

THE ſame day that Myrthe was taken, Timur order'd the Emir Gehan Chah to depart with the left wing by a different road, to ravage the country of the Guebres; for which purpoſe he embark'd with his troops on † Juenga. the Jaoun †. The emperor gave the command of the baggage to the Emir Cheik Noureddin, with orders to conduct it along the river of Caraſou; and then departed in perſon towards the great river of Ganges, fourteen miles from Myrthe. The Emir Solyman Chah join'd him on the road; and having march'd ſix miles, they encamp'd at Manſoura, where Timur Jan. 27. ſtaid one night. The ſecond of Jumazinulevel, he ſet out at three in the morning, and at ſunriſing arriv'd at Pirouznour on the Ganges, where they march'd three miles to find an eaſy paſſage. Some time after they came to the ordinary paſſage, which was very difficult and dangerous: ſeveral horſemen ſwam over there on horſeback, but not without great riſque. Timur going to do the ſame, the Emirs on their knees beſought him to the contrary, telling him that the Mirza Pir Mehemed and the Emir Solyman Chah, having croſs'd the river near Pirouznour, were on the point of periſhing. In the mean while ſeveral brave men ſwam over, as the Tomans of the Mirza Charoc, Seid Coja ſon of Cheik Ali Behadery and Gehan Mulc ſon of Melket. Then Timur march'd

two

two miles further along the Ganges, and encamp'd. The third of Jumaziulevel, he went towards Toclocpour, a town on the bank of the Ganges, twenty miles from the place whence they set out. When they had march'd fifteen, advice was brought the emperor, that a great number of Guebres were got together on the bank of that river. Timur immediately sent thither the Emir Mobacher, Ali Sultan Tavachi, and other Emirs of Tomans, and captains, to the number of fifty thousand horse; and continu'd his road towards Toclocpour. At this time the emperor was seiz'd with a very troublesom swelling in his arm, which much impair'd his health; but this distemper did not continue long, thro the care and assiduity of his officers. Chap. 15. Jan. 28.

In the mean while advice was brought that a vast number of Guebres in forty-eight boats, advanc'd against us upon the Ganges. This news stis'd up the emperor's fury; and the pleasure of having an opportunity of acquiring glory and merit in this war against the infidels, made him forget his distemper. He took horse with a thousand of his particular officers, and march'd along the banks of the river. He had no sooner perceiv'd the enemy, than several of our brave men spur'd their horses into the water sword in hand, with their quivers fasten'd to their sides. The unskilful enemys only let fly their arrows upon 'em, with their bucklers laid over their heads; while our men continually advanc'd, and laying hold on their flat-bottom'd vessels, enter'd 'em, notwithstanding the resistance of the enemy, whom they cut in pieces, and cast their bodys into the Ganges, making their women and children slaves. When they were become masters of these great boats,

they

Book IV. they went in ſearch of ten others mann'd with Guebres, who prepar'd themſelves for fighting, and faſten'd their boats to one another, that they might the better defend themſelves, and make a kind of naval fight. Our ſoldiers, after having diſcharg'd a vaſt number of arrows, boarded their veſſels, giving praiſe to God; and with their ſwords ſlew the remainder of theſe unfortunate Indians.

CHAP. XXIV.

Timur's three Gazies, or expeditions againſt the Guebres.

AFTER the taking of the flat boats on the Ganges, Timur decamp'd for Toc-
Jan. 29. locpour: and when he was arriv'd there, on the fourth of Jumaziulevel, a little after midnight, two men came from the Emirs Allahdad, Bajazet Coutchin, and Altoun Bacchi, the leaders of our ſcouts, who brought advice that having found an eaſy paſſage where they croſs'd the Ganges, they had met on the banks of that river a great number of infidels well-arm'd, who had for their leader a king nam'd Mobarek Can, who was reſolv'd to defend himſelf.

Timur on advice of theſe motions, took horſe before morning at the ſound of drums and kettledrums, being lighted by a vaſt number of flambeaux and torches: he croſs'd the Ganges, and read the morning-prayer, after having march'd a mile on the other ſide that river. Then our ſoldiers, with their cuiraſſes on, advanc'd againſt Mobarek Can, who had rang'd

ten

ten thouſand horſe, and ſome infantry, in order of battel, and expected us with his enſigns diſplay'd, tho he risk'd his crown on this occaſion. Chap. 24.

Timur hereupon imagin'd that theſe Indians being far more numerous than we, and our two wings at a great diſtance, we cou'd uſe no precautions, but muſt entirely reſign our ſelves to the will of God. And as he was thus diſquieted about the ſucceſs of the battel, five hundred horſe of the Tomans of Mirza Charoc arriv'd, which had croſs'd the water with Seid Coja and Gehan Mule, to make inroads in ſeveral places; and they join'd us at ſo proper a time, that one wou'd have thought they had been appointed to meet us here, or that heaven had ſent 'em expreſs to ſuccour Timur when he had ſuch need of 'em. Whereupon he return'd God thanks for his kindneſs to him, and order'd the Emirs Chamelik and Allahdad to attack the enemy with a thouſand horſe, and not to regard their number, or reſiſtance.

Our brave men, in obedience to this order, and in reſignation to the will of God, ruſh'd with fury upon the enemy, who thinking that our men were not alone, but only the vanguard of a great army, ſuddenly grew afraid, and fled like hinds before a roaring lion, and like Chacals * hid themſelves in the woods. Our warriors purſu'd 'em, and put a great number to the ſword, carrying away captive their women and children, with a conſiderable booty of oxen and other animals. Timur encamp'd in

* Chacal is an animal which partly reſembles a dog, and partly a fox. It digs up dead bodys to devour 'em, and hath a languiſhing voice.

this

Book IV. this place; and at the same time receiv'd advice that a great number of Guebres were rendezvous'd in the defile of Coupele, east of the Ganges. Whereupon he departed with five hundred horse for that place, leaving the rest to guard the spoils. The emperor at his arrival at these mountains, met a great number of Guebres. The Emirs Chamelik and Ali Sultan Tavachi, notwithstanding the enemy were superior to 'em in number, fell upon 'em sword in hand, giving praises to God. These infidels at first defended themselves: but our men put 'em to the rout, notwithstanding their great number, while the soldiers were employ'd in collecting the booty. Timur being left with only a hundred horsemen of his guards, a Guebre, nam'd Malek Cheika, fell briskly upon him with a hundred men, partly horse and partly foot. Timur oppos'd these rash fellows; but while the two partys were about to let fly a shower of arrows, one of our soldiers, thro mistake, told Timur that this man was the Cheik Coukeri, one of his faithful servants. This false alarm caus'd the emperor to return to the bottom of the mountain; which the Guebre perceiving, he attack'd some of our men. Timur then return'd against this infidel, shot him in the belly with an arrow, and unhors'd him with a cut of his sabre on his head: he was then bound with cords, and drag'd after our men. Timur being willing to question him concerning the condition of the enemy; but he presently gave up the ghost. Some time after advice was brought that in the defile of Coupele, two miles from this place, a great many Guebres were assembled; that in the passages of these mountains were only thick woods, and trees twisted one within another, with reeds

and

and canes ſo large and ſtrong that a man cou'd ſcarcely graſp 'em. Chap. 24.

Timur, who had already taken horſe twice this day to fight, and was in great want of ſleep, had no ſooner heard this news, than preferring the treaſures of eternal rewards to his quiet here, he march'd towards this defile at the head of ſome officers and Emirs of the vanguard. As he was oblig'd to go thro woods almoſt unpaſſable, and the Indians were far more numerous, Timur ſaid to his men, "If "my ſon Pir Mehemed and Solyman Chah "ſhou'd arrive here preſently, they wou'd be "of great ſervice to us: but that cannot be, "ſeeing it is but three days ſince I ſent 'em "to make inroads beyond the Ganges, which "they have croſs'd at Pirouznour." While Timur was thus ſpeaking, on a ſudden they perceiv'd theſe brave men, who were over-joy'd to meet the emperor in this place. The pleaſure, as one may eaſily imagine, was not leſs on Timur's ſide. They march'd together againſt the Guebres, on whom they diſcharg'd ſhowers of arrows; and then ruſhing on 'em ſword in hand, they made a cruel ſlaughter: they took a vaſt quantity of booty from theſe infidels, as well camels, oxen, and other cattel, as gold and ſilver belts, which the enemys wore.

Thus Timur was in three battels the ſame day, which never happen'd to any prince before him, that we find mention'd in hiſtory. The field of battel being ſo ſtrait, and full of woods and thorns, that it was impoſſible to encamp here, in the evening they were oblig'd to return to the place where the ſecond Gazie was fought.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXV.

Timur exterminates the Gaebres assembled in the famous defile of Coupele. Description of a marble statue of a cow ador'd by the Indians.

THE defile of Coupele is situate at the foot of a mountain near the Ganges; and fifteen miles higher than this defile is a stone carv'd in form of a cow, from whence springs this great river. For this reason the Indians adore this stone; and in all the neighbouring countrys, within a year's journy, when they are at prayers they turn towards it. One of their customs is to burn themselves alive, and to have their ashes flung into the Ganges, believing they shall merit salvation by it. They also cast into this river their gold and silver: and a chief part of their devotion is to wash themselves in it, and there shave their beard and head, upon which they pour water; which they esteem as useful as the Mahometans imagine the Abdeste [a] necessary, when they go in pilgrimage to Mecca.

Religion of the Indians.

Abounair Otbi, in his book call'd Yemini [b], gives a relation of the superstitions of these Indian idolaters, and of the ridiculous notions they entertain concerning this river. We are told in this book, that Nasareddin Subuctekin,

[a] The ablution which the Mahometans are oblig'd to make before prayer.

[b] A famous history of the Sultan Mahmoud Subuctekin of India.

and

and his ſon the Sultan Mahmoud, for ſeveral years made war on theſe idolaters of India, and by degrees conquer'd the towns and caſtles of this kingdom; that God bleſs'd their undertakings, and permitted the Sultan Mahmoud at the end of theſe wars, to march into the kingdom of Cannoudge* with the mahometan army. The interpreter of the Yemini remarks, that this war in the country of Cannoudge is the moſt celebrated of any that Yemin Eddole Mahmoud was ever engag'd in. Chap. 25. 1399.

But to return to our ſubject: we muſt know that when Timur took up a reſolution to carry his arms into India, he ſent ſeveral Emirs with conſiderable troops by one road, and with the reſt of his army march'd himſelf another; that theſe two armys took all the citys, caſtles, fortreſſes, towns and villages, in their way; that they exterminated the idolaters; and met together before Deli, as we have already mention'd; and that after the reduction of Deli, they croſs'd the Ganges. Thus Timur accompliſh'd his undertaking in India, for the extirpation of idolatry in that country. But as there yet remain'd a prodigious multitude of Guebres in the mountains of Coupele, who poſſeſs'd a

* A town and kingdom on this ſide the Ganges. The geographer Abulfeda ſays that the Ganges runs towards the eaſt of the kingdom of Cannoudge, at forty leagues diſtance; and that the capital of Cannoudge is in long. 104. lat. 26. Nafereddin Touſi ſays it is in long. 115. 50. lat. 26. 35. which is conſiſtent with the former, becauſe the one counts the longitude from Hercules's pillars, and the other from the fortunate iſles. Elmeglebi remarks that Cannoudge is 282 leagues eaſt of Moultan. Adem is a town of the kingdom of Cannoudge, ſeven days journy from the city of the ſame name. Benſaid tells us that Cannoudge is between two arms of the Ganges.

great

Book IV. great quantity of riches, cattel, and movable goods, he reſolv'd to attack 'em. Whereupon the fifth of Jumaziulevel the army began its march towards this defile, where the infidels, who were deſtin'd to periſh, dar'd to wait their arrival, and raſhly prepar'd to ſuſtain the attacks of our warriors, and make a vigorous defence. At ſun-riſing the mahometan army was rang'd in order of battel, and arriv'd at the defile in very good order. The right wing was commanded by the Mirza Pir Mehemed, and the Emir Solyman Chah; and the left by other Emirs of great reputation. The Emir Chamelik and other captains famous for their valor, led the vanguard of the main body.

Jan. 30. 1399.

When the noiſe of the drums, the great and little kettledrums, and trumpets, accompanied with the uſual great cry, had echo'd in their mountains and narrow paſſages, the infidels were confounded, and loſt all courage; fear got poſſeſſion of their hearts, and wou'd not ſuffer 'em to wait the attack of our warriors, but oblig'd 'em to conceal themſelves in the mountains, whither they were purſu'd by our men, and great part of 'em ſlain; ſome ſav'd themſelves, yet their effects, which conſiſted of furniture and other riches, fell to the conquerors.

This kingdom being thus deliver'd from these idolaters, the army return'd the ſame day, and croſs'd the Ganges, on the banks of which Timur read the noon-prayer, returning thanks to God for the advantages and victorys he had gain'd thro his goodneſs. Then he took horſe, and after five miles march encamp'd towards the lower part of the river, pleas'd with the conduct of all the captains and ſoldiers of his army, to whom he gave rewards for their brave actions in this war.

CHAP.

Book IV. Chapter XXVI. 1399

CHAP. XXVI.

Timur's resolution to return to the seat of his empire.

TIMUR being satisfy'd with having march'd as far as the eastern frontiers of the empire of India in one campain, and having acquir'd the merit of the Gazie, departed from the bank of the Ganges the sixth of Jumaziulevel, to join the baggage. Every one march'd in his respective post; and the quarter-masters and harbingers had orders to meet the baggage, and conduct it to the army. The seventh, they march'd six miles, and encamp'd four miles distance from the baggage. Jan. 31. Feb. 1.

In the mean while advice was brought that in the mountain of Soualec, one of the most considerable mountains of India, which stretches over two thirds of this vast empire, there were assembled a great number of Indians, with design to insult us. Timur order'd the troops which accompany'd the baggage to decamp, and march towards Soualec, while himself went in person to a place but five miles from thence, where the Mirza Calil Sultan and the Emir Cheik Noureddin join'd him with the baggage. The Emir Solyman Chah and the other generals on their knees besought the emperor to stay in the camp, and not continually expose his sacred person; while they would go and exterminate the Indians. Timur told 'em, the Gazie produc'd two considerable advantages; one was, that it procur'd for the warrior eter-

Book IV. nal merit; the other, that he acquir'd by it worldly ſpoils and goods: that as they had theſe two advantages in view, they ſhou'd be willing that he might partake of 'em alſo, ſince his intention in all his fatigues and labors, was only to render himſelf well-pleaſing to God, and ſo treaſure up good works for his eternal happineſs, and riches to beſtow upon his ſoldiers, and do good to the poor.

Then he ſent orders to the Emir Gehan Chah, who had been gone out a week to make inroads on the Jaoun, to come to the camp, that he might partake of the merit of this expedition as well as the other Emirs. This Emir accordingly obey'd the order, and return'd to join his majeſty.

CHAP. XXVII.

Timur's irruption on the mountain Souale.

Feb. 4. ON ſaturday the tenth of Jumaziulevel, Timur departed for the mountain of Soualec, where a Raya nam'd Behrouz had aſſembled a number of Guebres in a narrow paſſage; and confiding in the ſtrength of the mountain, and a ſtrong place he had in poſſeſſion, which he imagin'd inacceſſible, had reſolv'd to give us battel. Our army advancing in good order, Timur went down to the entrance of this defile, where he ſtopt. Our ſoldiers fell ſuddenly upon the infidels, who made but a weak defence; ſo that with their ſwords and half-pikes they ſlew a great number of 'em. Having reduc'd 'em thus low, they became maſters of their cattel and effects, and took thoſe priſoners who eſcap'd the ſword: but as the

the booty was unequally divided, the rich and powerful having got four or five hundred oxen, Timur order'd the ſpoils ſhou'd be equally diſtributed, that the poor and weak might have their ſhare. The following night Timur lay in the tent of the Mirza Pir Mehemed; and next day he went to Behre, near Bekeri, commonly call'd Meliapour. Chap. 28.

The twelfth of Jumaziulevel he march'd four miles, and encamp'd at Chaeſarfava. The ſoldiers were ſo laden with booty, that they cou'd ſcarce march four miles a day. Next day they went four miles, and encamp'd at Kender. Feb. 6.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Several combats in the woods near Soualet.

THE fourteenth of Jumaziulevel Timur croſs'd the Jaoun, and encamp'd in another part of the mountain of Soualec, where advice was brought that a Raya nam'd Ratan had caus'd the trumpets to be ſounded to aſſemble the people, and fall upon our army; that by this means an infinite number of Indians were got together under his command, and had retreated into thick and inacceſſible woods. Feb. 8.

Timur wou'd not ſtay till night was over before he began his march againſt 'em; but caus'd torches and flambeaus to be lighted, and order'd the captains to keep a conſtant march in order of battel. The ſoldiers employ'd all their ſtrength in cutting down the trees to make roads, and the ſame night they advanc'd twelve miles.

Book IV.

Feb. 9. The fifteenth before morning they arriv'd between the two mountains of Soualec and Couke, where the Raya was prepar'd to give battel, having form'd two wings and a main body: but he had no more courage than the reſt; for as ſoon as the noiſe of the drums, trumpets and kettledrums, with the ſoldiers cries, were heard in this mountain, they fled, and the Raya himſelf turn'd his back, and retir'd to the bottom of a wood. Our ſoldiers purſu'd the enemy, and cut in pieces a great number, enriching themſelves with the ſpoils, and carrying away an innumerable company of captives.

The ſame day our right wing went into another defile of theſe mountains, where, after having exterminated the Guebres, they gain'd a conſiderable booty: the left wing alſo made inroads in another place, and maſſacred ſeveral Indians; but got no ſpoils. The following night the two wings return'd to Timur.

Feb. 10. The ſixteenth, Timur quitted this narrow paſſage, and re-enter'd the mountain of Soualec, where he encamp'd in a place fifteen leagues from Bekircout, all which country is full of forests and craggy mountains. Then he reſolv'd to go in perſon into the moſt dangerous places; and ſent back the left wing, compos'd of the troops of Coraſſana, to make inroads, becauſe they were return'd without any booty.

In the mean while Sainte Maure, at the head of the ſcouts, arriv'd at nine in the morning, bringing advice that there were ſo many Guebres in theſe quarters, that it was impoſſible to number 'em. This news oblig'd Timur to ſtay in this place, while the left wing ſhou'd go out to make inroads.

Then

Then advice was brought from the body of troops commanded by the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Ali Sultan Tavachi, that several Guebres, with abundance of cattel, were got together in a defile on the left side. Timur immediately march'd towards this place, ordering the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Ali Sultan to fall upon the Guebres. They soon became conquerors, putting the enemys to the sword, in the emperor's presence, who had set up his imperial standard on the very brink of the mountain, to encourage his men. Some of the wounded sav'd themselves by flight; but all their effects and cattel fell into the hands of the victors. Timur staid upon the mountain till evening, and caus'd part of the booty to be distributed among those who cou'd get none; so that every one had as much as he cou'd well take care of. At night they encamp'd in this defile, where there were abundance of monkys, who came to steal away the soldiers goods. Chap. 18.

Thus we may truly say, there were twenty battels fought in thirty days, during which time our men conquer'd seven of the most important fortresses of India, which wou'd not give place to Caiber [s]. These seven fortresses were at one or two leagues distance from each other, and the inhabitants were at continual variance among themselves. They had formerly paid tribute to the emperors of India; but were some time since brought to subjection to the Mussulmans, from whom they revolted, refusing to pay tribute to 'em; and thus they merited the punishment they receiv'd. One of these places, which

[s] A strong place in Syria, inhabited by Jews, formerly conquer'd by the prophet Mahomet.

Book IV. belong'd to Cheikou, a relation of the Cheik Couker*, had willingly submitted to Timur, thro the interposition of the Musulmans who liv'd with 'em; but this was mere shew; for they soon gave us marks of their treason and malice, and when the customary tax for the saving of their lives was impos'd on 'em, they made use of tricks and equivocations. In the mean while, one of Timur's officers invented a stratagem to oblige 'em to pay the mony with less reluctance; which was, that we shou'd buy up all their old bows, which they accordingly sold our men upon their offering a good price; so that they had scarcely any more arms left. Then it was order'd that forty Guebres shou'd be listed in the service of Hendou Chah Cazen, one of the emperor's officers: which they wou'd not consent to, but slew several Musulmans.

* Prince of Lahor.

This oblig'd us to treat 'em as enemys, and besiege their place in form; which having taken, we put two thousand Guebres to the sword, as a punishment for their past crimes.

The place belonging to Malek Diuradge, and five others, were taken with the same ease in a very short time; so that this country was clear'd of this generation of idolaters, their temples were ruin'd, and the mahometan religion afterwards flourish'd there.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIX.

Timur's Gazies and expeditions in the province of Tchamou.

THE Gazies on the mountains of Soualec being finish'd to Timur's satisfaction, he departed from Manfar the sixteenth of Jumazin-lather; and after a march of six miles, encamp'd at Balla, a town of the province of Tchamou, where he was join'd by the Emirs Cheik Mahomed Aicouthmur, Mobacher, and Ismael Berlas, of the Toman of Mirza Calil Sultan. March 12. 1399.

The inhabitants of this town were valiant men, and their forests very difficult of access: they had fix'd their bucklers round their woods, where they prepar'd for a vigorous resistance. Our soldiers were eager to fall upon 'em; but there came an order from the emperor to defer the attack till next day, because he design'd to be there in person.

The seventeenth Timur took horse, and having rang'd his army in order of battel, caus'd the great cry to be made, and the instruments of war to be sounded; but the enemy abandon'd the town, and fled into the woods, to hide themselves. Part of our soldiers were posted on the side of the wood, while the others enter'd the town without opposition, and made themselves masters of a great quantity of mony and ammunitions; so that the army was furnish'd with all necessarys. March 13.

The same day the army departed thence, to encamp four miles further. Olaia Timur, Toncator, and Coulad, as also the Mirza Roustem, and

Book III. the faithful Zeineddin, who had been sent ambassador from Deli into Cachmir, arrived at the camp with letters from prince Chah Eskender, from whom there likewise came ambassadors, who assur'd Timur that their prince, full of respect for him, had refus'd to demand protection, with all the submission that could be expected from a subject, who was entirely resign'd to his orders; and that as a mark of his sincerity, he was upon his way to meet the emperor, being already arriv'd at a place nam'd Colelum, where he was rejoin'd by the doctor Nureddin, one of his ambassadors, who told him that the Emirs of Timur's Divan had taxed him at thirty thousand horses, and a hundred thousand Dereks of gold, each Derek weighing two drachms and a half. Chah Eskender immediately return'd to collect the mony he was taxed in, that he might the sooner have the honor to kiss the imperial carpet. Timur, on advice of this, disapprov'd of this order, because they had imposed a tax upon Eskender, which he was not able to pay, since it was more than his little kingdom was worth: and as the ambassadors at the same time represented to the emperor how obedient Chah Eskender had submitted to him, he immediately order'd that he shou'd be treated with civility, and sent to tell him that the payment of the tax shou'd not detain him from coming before him.

March 14. The eighteenth of Jumazulakher, the ambassadors of Chah Eskender, and of Motamedeeneddin were sent back to Cachmir, with orders for Chah Eskender to come to the bank of the Indus in ten days. Then the army on their road plundered three towns: but Arat mouk, officer of Timur's household, was wounded with an arrow.

March 15. The nineteenth of Jumazulakher, they encamp'd over-against the capital of Tchamou, after

after having march'd four miles. In their road they found four leagues of cultivated land, ready for harvest; which serv'd for forage, and our horses were let loose among the grass in this pasture-ground. Chap. 29.

The twentieth of Jomazlulakher, Timur enter'd the defile from whence the river of Tchamou springs, which the army had cross'd several times. It is situate at the foot of a mountain, on the left side of the city of Tchamou, having on its right the town of Menou. It was inhabited by strong and tall Indians, who were resolv'd to defend their lives, and having sent their wives and children into the mountains, had intrench'd themselves in almost inaccessible woods, upon a cragged mountain, having their king at the head; and like dogs barking at the rising moon, they howl'd, if one may so say, when they discharg'd their arrows.

Timur imagin'd it better to surprize 'em by artifice, than to attack 'em openly in so dangerous a place; wherepon he order'd our soldiers to leave 'em, and to go to pillage the town of Menou; which was accordingly executed. The troops also enter'd the town of Tchamou, whence they brought away ammunition and spoils enough for their pay and subsistance. Then Timur posted some regiments of active and resolute men in the woods where the enemy had fortify'd themselves; and in the mean while he departed with the cavalry.

The twenty first he cross'd the river of Tchamou, march'd four miles, and encamp'd on the bank of the Genave, in a plain of four leagues in length, full of pasturage.

As soon as the imperial army had quitted the defile of Tchamou and Menou, the Indians like foxes coming out of their holes, when they imagin'd the

forests

foreſts void of lions, came out of their mountain to re-enter their houſes; but they were ſoon attack'd by our regiments who lay in ambuſcade; and who falling upon 'em, cut 'em in pieces, not giving quarter to any one.

King of Tchamou taken priſoner.

Dolet Timur Tavachi, an officer of the Toman of Cheik Noureddin, aſſiſted by Huſſein Melik Coutchin, took the king of Tchamou priſoner, with fifty officers of conſideration, whom he brought to Timur. The emperor return'd thanks to God, and thus addreſs'd theſe Infidels: "Bleſſed be the almighty King of heaven and "earth, who hath humbled theſe proud Guebres, "the enemys of his name, who but yeſterday "inſolently brav'd the faithful from their craggy "mountains, having no regard to any one: but "to day God has deliver'd 'em up to us, bound "like malefactors. To him be bleſſing and glo"ry for ever." Then he order'd that the captives ſhou'd be loaded with chains, and left groveling upon the earth, except the king of Tchamou, who had been wounded in the head: he was heal'd of his wound, and treated with civility, as well becauſe of his character, as for that they imagin'd they might the more eaſily get the mony due to the mahometan army for the town of Tchamou, and the ſaving the lives of the king and his men. In the mean while they treated this prince with ſo much kindneſs and reſpect, inſtructing him in the beautys of the muſſulman religion, that he reſolv'd to make profeſſion of mahometaniſm, and quit his errors and idolatry. So he declar'd his belief of the unity of God, and eat the fleſh of oxen with the Muſſulmans, which is prohibited theſe miſerable Indians.

This change of religion caus'd him to be honor'd and careſs'd by Timur, who contented to

make

make a treaty with him, by which he was receiv'd under the protection of our monarch. Chap. 29.

The twenty third of Jumaz'ulakher the army ſtaid on the banks of the Genave, to wait for the troops which were gone to Lahor. March 19.

CHAP. XXX.

Relation of what paſs'd at Lahor, with regard to Chicai Couker, prince of that city.

IN the mean while advice was brought that the princes and Emirs, who had been ſent towards Lahor, had made themſelves maſters of that city, and actually receiv'd the tax for redeeming the inhabitants lives, having made Chicai Couker priſoner of war.

Deceit, ſays the poet, may at firſt have a good appearance; but in the end it makes the perſon bluſh who practiſes it: wherefore Timur, who was an enemy to tricking, made uſe of the following words for the motto of his ſeal, *Safety conſiſts in fair-dealing.*

But that every one may be ſufficiently appriz'd of the affair of Chicai Couker, they muſt know that this prince of Lahor, at the beginning of this war, accompany'd Timur every where, from whom he obtain'd ſo much favor and reſpect, that if any of the Indians made uſe of his name, they were neither pillag'd nor made priſoners. When the army was between the two rivers of Ganges and Jaoun, he beg'd leave to go into his own country, which was granted him: and he even agreed about the preſents he ſhou'd make to the emperor upon his meeting him again at the bank of the Biah, which is alſo call'd the river

of

Book IV. of Lahor. Thus Chicai Couker return'd into his own country, where he pass'd some time in plays and diversions, forgetting what he had promis'd before the august tribunal of Timur: and he not only neglected the performance of his promise, but even gave marks of his disregard to us; for several of our officers having past thro his city coming from Tranfoxiana, as the doctor Abdallah Sedre, Hendouchah Cazen, and others, thro whose protection he might have advanc'd himself in honor and power, he did not give em a handsom reception, nor shew the least marks of civility, pretending ignorance of their being in the city. This procedure drew on him Timur's indignation, who order'd that his country shou'd be pillag'd, and his person seiz'd. Thus our monarch punish'd ingratitude.

March 20. The twenty fourth of Jumazi'lakher Timur crost the river of Genare, and encamp'd after having march'd five miles. The same day officers arriv'd from Tauris from the Mirza Miran Chah, bringing news of the good health of that prince, his children, and principal Emirs. They also brought an account of the affairs of Bagdad, Egypt, Syria, Anatolia, and Darchac; as likewise the condition of the forces of Alengic.

The twenty fifth, several sick soldiers were drown'd in the river; which oblig'd Timur, who was the most merciful prince in the universe, to give those who were in want of 'em, proper horses and mules out of his own stable, upon which they crost the river. The same day the emperor sent Hendouchah Cazen to Samarcand, with advice that he was about to return home, to comfort the people who impatiently expected him. That day there likewise came an officer from Persia from the Mirza Pir Mehemed,

med, son of Omar Cheik, who brought news of this prince's health, and the state of his kingdom: he likewise presented Egyptian swords, damask'd blades, and other curiositys.

The twenty sixth of Jumadialakher the army decamp'd from the bank of the Genave, and after six miles march encamp'd in the desart; and the same day the emperor sent again to Samarcand one of the ambassadors who came from Tauris, to order the princes his sons to come and meet him. Then Timur designing to cross the river Dindana before the rest of the army, set out before em.

The twenty seventh he march'd six miles, and encamp'd at the entrance of a wood: they saw a lion in a meadow, which every one attack'd, and the Emir Cheik Noureddin kill'd.

Then the Mirzas Pir Mehemed and Roustem, with the Emirs Soliman Chah and Gehan Chah, arriv'd at the camp from Lahor, after having slain several Indians, and taken a considerable booty. They kiss'd the imperial carpet, and made their presents to Timur, which consisted of nine pieces of each sort. Timur gave great largesses to these brave men; and particularly distinguish'd Mehemed Azad, to whom he presented a vest, a quiver, and a gold belt. The greatest lords only sought to be favorably regarded by our monarch.

The same day Timur order'd that all the Emirs of both wings, the colonels of regiments, and the captains of companys, shou'd return home by the different roads mark'd out for em. Then he made presents to every one according to their rank and merit, beginning with the princes of the blood, the Emirs, dukes, foreign princes call'd Nevians, and then the Emirs of Tomans, the colonels of Hezares, and the centurions.

The

Book IV. The Mirza Pir Mehemed, ſon of Gehanghir, had a preſent made him of a belt and crown ſet with precious ſtones.

He alſo honor'd with his liberalitys the lords of India, the Emirs and Cheriſs, who had the good fortune to accompany him; and giving 'em letters-patent for their principalitys, he permitted 'em to return into their reſpective countrys.

Timur aſſign'd the government of the city and province of Moultan to Keder Can, who having been arreſted by order of Sarenk brother of Mellou Can, and laid in irons in a citadel, had eſcap'd thence, and fled to Biana, a place dependent on Deli, to the king Ahoudan a Muſſulman; and who having heard of Timur's arrival in that country, had with an humble confidence fled for refuge to the foot of the throne, and had the honor to accompany his majeſty from that time.

As in this country there was a plain, which for its vaſtneſs, and the great quantity of game in it, ſeem'd to invite paſſengers to the chace, (for there were lions, leopards, rhinoceros's, unicorns, blue ſtags, wild peacocks, parrots, and other uncommon animals) Timur ſpent ſome time in that diverſion. He ſent ſeveral thouſands of ſoldiers to form the great circle; and having firſt purſu'd the idolaters, he chas'd the wild beaſts, and afterwards went a fowling. The falcons and hawks deſtroy'd all the peacocks, pheaſants, parrots and ducks in this country. The ſoldiers took a great deal of game, and ſlew ſeveral rhinoceros's with their ſabres and lances; tho this animal is ſo ſtrong, that it will beat down a horſe and horſeman with a ſingle blow of its horn; and has ſo thick a skin, that it cannot be peirc'd but by an extraordinary force.

The

The twenty eighth of Jumaziulakher the army march'd eight miles, and encamp'd at Gebhan, a delightful residence on the frontiers of Cachmir. Chap. 31. March 24.

CHAP. XXXI.

Description of the little kingdom of Cachmir, or Kichmir.

AS Cachmir is one of the most noted countrys in the world, has so particular a situation, and so few people ever see it, because it is not the ordinary passage into any other countrys; we will give a short description of it, which we have receiv'd from the natives, and the truth of which we are fully satisfy'd of.

Cachmir is a principality near Hac, in the middle of the fourth climate, which according to Ptolomy, begins at 34 deg. 37 min. of lat. its middle is at 36 deg. 22 min. and its end at 38. 54. The latitude of Cachmir is 35 degrees, and its longitude from the fortunate isles 109.

The country is of an oval form, surrounded with high mountains on all sides: it looks southwards upon Deli and the country of India, northwards on Bedakchan and Corassana, westwards upon the hords of the Ouganis, and eastwards upon Tobbet or Thebet.

In the extent of its province are ten thousand flourishing villages, full of fountains and green plains: but the common opinion is that the whole principality of Cachmir consists of a hundred thousand villages, as well in the plains as mountains. The air and water are very wholesom; and the beauty of the Cachmirian

rian women hath paſs'd into a proverb among the Perſian poets and orators. They have vaſt quantitys of good fruit; but the winter is hurtful, becauſe of the great abundance of ſnows which fall there. The ſummer-fruits, as dates, oranges and citrons, never come to maturity, but are brought thither from the warm neighboring countrys. The flat country in the middle is twenty leagues in breadth from one mountain to the other.

The prince and court reſide at the city of Nagaz, thro the middle of which, as at Bagdad, runs a river as large as the Tigris; and what is very ſurprizing, this river is exceeding rapid, tho it is form'd from a ſingle fountain in the ſame country, call'd the fountain of Vi. The inhabitants have built upon this river more than thirty bridges of boats, with chains, on the chief paſſages: ſeven of theſe bridges are in the city of Nagaz, which is the center and capital of the country. When this river hath paſs'd the limits of Cachmir, it takes different names, from the ſeveral countrys it waſhes, as Dindana and Jamad: above Moultan it joins the Ganave, and both together having paſs'd by Moultan, fall into the Rave, which runs by the other Moultan: at length the river Biah joins 'em, and near the town of Outcha, they all fall into the Indus or Abſend, which diſembogues into the ſea of Omman *, at the end of the country of Tatta.

* The Arabian ſea.

The mountains which ſurround this country ſerve as fortifications againſt the inſults of an enemy; the inhabitants being under no apprehenſions of their being ruin'd, either by [illegible] rains or ſtorms.

There are three roads into this country: that of Coraſſana is ſo very difficult, that the inhabitants, who are accuſtom'd to that ſort of labor

are

are oblig'd to carry bales of merchandize and other burdens upon their backs, which the beasts of carriage are not able to do. The road of India is equally difficult. That of Tobbot or Thebet is easiest; but for several days journy passengers meet with venomous herbs, which poison their horses. Chap. 31.

Thus God has given this country natural defences; so that the inhabitants have no occasion for arms or armys.

The twenty-ninth of Jumaziulakher, Timur departed from Gebnan, march'd four miles, and encamp'd on the bank of the river Dindana, which he cross'd on a bridg built by his order; and which was an ease to the fatigu'd soldiers, as well Turks as Tadgics[1]. The Emirs Chamelik and Gelaleddin had orders for conducting the army over this bridg. March 25.

CHAP. XXXII.

Timur returns to the seat of his empire.

ON the thirtieth of Jumaziulakher in the morning, Timur departed for Samarcand before the army, that he might get there in good time: he march'd twenty miles on the Dindana, and encamp'd at Sanbalte, a town in the mountain of Joudis. The first of Regeb he encamp'd at the castle of Beroudge: he took horse after noon-prayer, and enter'd the desart of Gelali *, from whence he came out in the even- March 27. * Geroun.

[1] The Turks are native Tartars; the Tadgics are inhabitants of conquer'd citys and countrys.

Book IV. ing, and encamp'd in a cavern, where there yet remain'd some water of the Pechecals, or great rains of the last winter. This cavern is but three miles from Beroudge.

The 2d of Regeb at ten in the morning, he came to the Indus, over which the Emirs Pir Ali Selduz, and others, who had the care of the frontiers of Nagaz and Banou, and of the roads of those quarters, had caus'd a bridg of boats to be built.

Timur having cross'd the Indus, staid till noon on its banks; and then leaving the Emir Allahdad at the foot of the bridg, that he might cause the baggage, and part of the army, which was behind, to pass over, he departed in the afternoon, and march'd ten miles before he encamp'd.

March 29. The third of Regeb he stop'd at Banou, where the Emirs Pir Alitaz, Hussein Coutchin, and others, who had been left there to keep the Ouganis in obedience, had the honor to pay their respects to him: having not seen him for a month, they presented him with nine horses and a thousand oxen. Timur gave them back their horses, and order'd that the oxen should be restor'd to the right owners; and then he commanded Pir Alitaz to stay in that place, till all the army had pass'd it.

April 2. The 7th of Regeb, which is the first of Ferverdin of the Gelalian epocha, as also the first day of the spring, he took the road to Nagaz, where he arriv'd next day.

The same day the officer of Mirza Miran Chah was sent back into Azerbijana, with advice of the emperor's conquests, and the good condition of his troops. Mahmoud, son of Berat Coja, and Hendoucha, were likewise sent to Cabul, to bring troops from thence, to destroy the

the Ourganis, against whom the Emir Soliman Chap. 32.
Chah had caus'd the castle of Nagaz to be built before the emperor's departure for India, to oppose their insults: which establish'd quiet and security among the Mussulmans of that country.

On one side of the castle without the walls was a delicious fountain, which Timur was desirous shou'd be within the enclosure of the castle: for which reason, notwithstanding his great desire to see the princes his dear children, he prefer'd the good of the public before his private satisfaction; and staid in that place till the walls of the castle and the building over the fountain were finish'd. This lasted no longer than from tuesday till monday evening, because every one assisted in it, and the Emirs themselves, to set an example to others, carry'd the tiles to the masons. Then the emperor gave the government of this castle of Nagaz to Nusret Comari, an officer of the Mirza Pir Mehemed, with three hundred men of the regiment of Sama Aglen, whose captain was Yarek Aghil; to whom he join'd four hundred deserters of the Uzbecs. He gave the government of Irjab and Schenouzan to the Cheik Hassan, nephew of the Cheik Noureddin. Timur at length departed to encamp at the dome of the Cheik Mobareschah.

The ninth of Regeb he went to Kermadge, April 4.
where the Cheik Ahmed Ougani, prince of that place, had the honor to kiss his hand, being introduc'd by the great Emirs: but Timur was not pleas'd with the entertainment he gave him; for these mountaineers are neither acquainted with civility, good-breeding, or even the laws of hospitality.

In the evening they went to encamp at Accica, where the Cheik Abdal gave the emperor

Book IV. as handſom an entertainment as he was able, with which he was very much pleas'd.

April 5. The 10th of Regeb, Timur encamp'd in the defile of Rame, and the ſame day ſent the doctor Nimet to prince Charoc to acquaint him with his arrival. The 11th they ſtopt at a town, from whence they departed the ſame day at nine in the morning for Cabul, where Timur left the empreſs Tchelpan Mulc Aga, with ſome troops, whoſe horſes and mules were exceedingly fatigu'd: he alſo left Mobacher there, to conduct 'em leiſurely. At night Timur arriv'd at the mouth of Joui Neu, a canal very full of fiſh, which he had caus'd to be dug. The 12th he went to encamp at Garban; where he built a great hoſpital of brick, becauſe ſeveral roads meet at this place, which was ſoon finiſh'd.

April 8. The 13th the court paſs'd the mountain and defile of Cheberto, and went to encamp in a plain at two leagues diſtance. The ſame day the emperor being ſtruck by ſome evil eye *, or malign influence, fell ſick, and had on his feet and hands painful ulcers, which hinder'd his taking any repoſe, and retarded 'em a whole day's march; and becauſe of this accident this place was call'd the dry and unfortunate camp. The night following an officer arriv'd from Herat from prince Charoc, with very agreeable news.

Timur departed from this place on the third day in a commodious litter carry'd by mules, he not being able to ride on horſeback: and as his ſickneſs yet encreas'd, the offices

* The Turks, as well as the Italians, are ſo ſuperſtitious as to believe that certain perſons bring misfortunes to every thing they look upon; and that their eyes are ſo venomous as to kill children. The Italians call this, *il cattivo occhio*, the evil eye.

of

of his chamber fasten'd leathern straps to the Chap. 31.
poles fix'd to the litter, and so carry'd him by
the bottom of the river in a very narrow passage
of the mountain Stapoutch, which they were
oblig'd to pass. From the beginning of this
defile to the mountain they cross'd the river
twenty-six times; and twenty-two times from
the mountain to the end of the defile.

The 15th of Regeb, the domesticks of the April 10.
empresses Serai Mulc Canum and Toumen Aga,
and of the other ladys and children of the em-
peror, arriv'd at Samarcand, where they made
presents to his majesty, assuring him of the em-
presses and princes health. Timur sent Gor-
luc Timur, an officer of Touman Aga, to the
baggage; to bring from thence the elephants.
In the mean while his majesty's indisposition
disquieted the whole court, till the 17th of Re- April 12.
geb, when they cross'd the river of the defile,
at which time it pleas'd God to restore him his
health.

The 18th he went in a litter from Surab to-
wards Bacalan, and encamp'd at the town of
Aker, where he rais'd a little to refresh himself,
and afterwards encamp'd at Cara Boulac. The
ladys of the Mirza Pir Mahomet, and of the
Emir Gehan Chah, with the Emirs and chiefs
of Bacalan, came to meet the emperor, and
make their presents.

The 19th at ten in the morning he arriv'd at
Semencan, whence he departed the same day,
to encamp at Gazuic. The 20th he march'd to
Culm; and setting out from thence at noon, he
arriv'd at the Gihon before Termed at midnight,

CHAP. XXXIII.

Timur crosses the Oxus, and is met by the princes and princesses of the blood.

April 15. THE 20th of Regeb, at nine in the morning, Timur having croſs'd the Oxus in a boat, met on the other ſide the Mirza Oulouc-bek, the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, the princeſs Beghiſi Sultan his daughter, with the empreſſes Serai Mulc Canum, Tekil Canum, and Touman Aga, accompany'd by all the princes, Mirzas, Emirs, lords and Cherifs of Samarcand, with others who came to meet his majeſty, who gave 'em a handſom reception. This charming company, and eſpecially the ladys, congratulated him on his conqueſts, and ſprinkled over him ſo great a quantity of gold and precious ſtones, that it ſeem'd as if the ſand had been transform'd into 'em.

The court ſtaid at Termed two days, during which they were entertain'd with a ſumptuous banquet by the great Cherif Alael Mulc, who made ſeveral handſom preſents.

April 18. The 23d of Regeb the court went to the Kichlac of Gehan Mulc; and the 24th to the bath of Tunkit. The 25th they paſs'd the frontgate of Coluga, and encamp'd on the river of Baiad. The 26th they encamp'd at Tenekelic, the 27th at Couzimondac; and the 28th they arriv'd at Dourbudgia, where the Mirza Charoc, who was come from Herat, had the honor to kiſs the emperor's hands: he congratulated him upon his victorys, made him preſents, and ſprinkled upon him, according to cuſtom,

cuſtom, gold and precious ſtones. The great conqueror moſt affectionately embrac'd his dear ſon, whom he tenderly lov'd, and loaded him with favors and honors. Chap. 33.

At this place likewiſe the Mirza Omar, ſon of Miran Chah, whom Timur at his departure for the Indian war had left at Samarcand, had the honor to kiſs his majeſty's feet, who gave him a very kind reception, becauſe of the love and care he had always ſhewn to his people, and the juſtice he had ſo exactly render'd.

On monday the 29th of Regeb, Timur went to encamp on the bank of a little river *; and the 30th, in the delicious fields of Kech. He immediately went to pay his devotions at the tombs of the great Santons, Chamſeddin Kelar, and others; and at length at that of his illuſtrious father, the Emir Tragai, of bleſſed memory: and then he viſited thoſe of his noble children. Here he ſtaid fifteen days, giving alms to the poor of that country. April 24. * Toum.

He departed from this place the 14th of Schaban, to encamp on the bank of the river of Roudec. The 15th he encamp'd at Tchenar Rebat, or the town of plane-trees: the 16th he paſs'd the mountain, and encamp'd at Cotlocy-urt. The 17th he went to Tact Caratchah, which himſelf had built: and the 18th he encamp'd at the Kiochk * of Gehanmuma. The 19th he arriv'd at the pleaſure-houſe of Dolet-Abad: and monday the 20th, at nine in the morning, he came to the Kiochk of the garden of Dilcu Chah, the palace of which had been lately finiſh'd: and to conſecrate that palace to joy and pleaſures, a royal banquet was prepar'd, at May 9.

* Kiochk is a building in form of a cupola.

Book IV. which the empresses, the emperor's children, the princes of the blood, the Emirs, ordabes, and the Nevians and foreign princes, assisted. They cast so much gold and precious stones upon his majesty, to congratulate him on his victorys and happy arrival, that the earth seem'd sown with 'em; and all the officers were loaded with riches.

The 21st of Schaban, Timur made his entry into his capital city of Samarcand, where, after he had been at the baths, to make his ablutions, he went to visit the tomb of the venerable Santon Farcadeatam, son of Abbas; and there he gave presents to the officers belonging to this mausoleum; then he went to the hospital founded by the empress Toumun Aga. After which he honor'd with his presence the garden of plains, and the palace of Nakchidgehan, where he was diverted with feasts and plays. From thence he went to the delicious garden of Bagh Behicht, which is indeed a true paradise as its name imports. Then he came to the palace of Baghi Bolend, at which place the elephants and baggage arriv'd. The inhabitants of Transoxiana, who had never before seen any elephants, were surpris'd at these huge animals of such an extraordinary figure, and gave praise to the Almighty, whose works are incomprehensible.

The emperor distributed the curiositys and riches he had brought from India, among the princes of the blood, the Cherifs, and other persons of the kingdom, according to their different rank and quality; among which were precious stones, gold, beautiful male and female Negroes.

Timur sent Sarenk, eldest brother of Melek Can prince of Moultan, with two chains of elephants, and other curiositys, to the Mirza Mohemed Sultan. He made other presents to the Emirs

Emirs who had been left in Transoxiana, that every one might partake of the benefits of his conquests. Then he permitted his son prince Charoc, to return to the seat of his kingdom of Corassana, after having loaded him with favors.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Building of the great mosque of Samarcand.

THE Alcoran expressly assures us, that the greatest proof of a prince's faith is his erecting temples to the honor of God: whereupon our conqueror, being perswaded that this work of piety would be the crown of the merits he had acquir'd in his wars and Gazies against the infidels, where he had destroy'd the temples of the false gods, and exterminated the idolaters, resolv'd to build a great mosque in Samarcand, large enough to contain all the faithful of that capital city, when they should assemble at friday-prayers; and to this effect he issu'd out his orders for the foundations to be laid.

The architects chose a happy moment to begin it, viz. on the 4th of Ramadan 801, which answers to the year of the Hare, the moon being then in Leo, going out of the sextile aspect of the sun, and entring the sextile aspect of Venus. The masons, brought from foreign countrys, as mention'd before, gave the greatest proofs of their art and skill, as well in the solidity and beauty of the angles, as in the strength of the foundations of this noble edifice. In the inside of the mosque were employ'd two hundred mason froms Azerbijana, Persia and India, five hun-

May 28. 1399.

Book IV. hundred men likewise work'd in the mountains in cutting and hewing of stones, which were sent into the city. Several other artisans, of different trades, perform'd their parts with the utmost application. Ninety-five chains of elephants were made use of in drawing large stones with wheels and machines, according to the laws of mechanics. The princes of the blood and Emirs were appointed to oversee the workmen, that not one moment might be lost in finishing this stupendous building.

In the mean while the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who ordinarily resided at Andecan, on the frontier of Gete, arriv'd with a great attendance of officers. He had the honor to pay his respects to the emperor in the hospital of Touman Aga, where he made his presents, and sprinkled gold and precious stones upon his majesty, according to the custom of the Tartars, Moguls, and indeed of almost all the nations of the Turks. Timur embrac'd this young prince with all the tenderness that cou'd be expected from so good a father. He then went to visit the works, to animate the workmen by his presence; and he did not stir either from the college of Canum, which is near this mosque, or from the hospital of Touman Aga; at which places he distributed justice, sat in council, and decided the affairs of religion and of the state.

At length, under his conduct, this great edifice was finish'd. It contain'd four hundred eighty pillars of hewn stone, each seven cubits high. The arch'd roof was cover'd with marble, neatly carv'd and polish'd: and from the architrave of the entablature to the top of the roof were nine cubits. At each of the four corners of the mosque without was a Minaret *. The doors were of brass: and the walls, as well with-

* A kind of steeple.

without as within, as also the arches of the roof, were adorn'd with writing in relievo, among which is the chapter of the cavern, and other parts of the Alcoran. The pulpit, and reading-desk, where the prayers for the emperor were read, were of the utmost magnificence: and the nich of the altar, cover'd with plates of iron gilt, was likewise of perfect beauty. Chap. 4.

After the month of Ramadan was past, and the feast of Bairam come, Timur went to the palace of Dilcu Chah, where he order'd preparations to be made for the most sumptuous banquets, and all sorts of plays and diversions. The empress Rokia Canica on this occasion gave a noble entertainment, accompany'd with consorts of music and fine dancing.

CHAP. I.

The end of the fourth book.

BOOK

BOOK V.

Two wars of Timur in Georgia. The conquest of Syria and Mesopotamia. The famous war with Bajazet the Ottoman emperor, who after the loss of a battel is taken prisoner, and dies in the Tartars camp.

CHAP. I.

The causes which oblig'd Timur to make war in the country of Iran, that is, in the western parts of Asia, from the river Gihon to the Mediterranean sea.

An. Dom. 1399. IN the autumn of the year of the Hegira 801, which answers to that of the Mouslems, the Mirza Miran Chah[a], conducted by his evil destiny, went to take the diversion of hunting in the neighborhood of Tauris, where the tomb of Pir Omar Naq Chirban is to be seen.

[a] Son of Timur, and viceroy of Media, which is called by the Persians Azerbijana. The great Moguls of India are descended from him.

He met a roe-buck, which he was desirous to take with his hands: but as he was stooping down to that purpose, he fell off his horse, tho he was one of the best horsemen of Asia; and the violence of his fall cast him into a swoon, in which he lay a long time. All the lords of his court were extremely concern'd at it, and got round him to comfort him. He continu'd in fits for three days and nights: and his physician, being an ignorant fellow, or rather a knave, which has since been most suspected, fail'd in the application of remedys; by which means this prince was seiz'd with a giddiness in his brain, which impair'd his senses. Thus this great man, who till that time had possess'd the throne of Hulacou, and of the kingdom of Azerbijana, with so much applause and glory, by the administration of justice and by his liberality, was depriv'd of his understanding. Upon a bare suspicion he slew a man; and prodigally squander'd away the treasures of the state, destroy'd the most noted buildings, and did many things contrary to the good sense and dignity of a prince. Chap. 3.

One of his actions, which plainly discover'd the alteration of his judgment, was, that at the beginning of summer, he departed at the head of all his troops to besiege the city of Bagdad: he march'd day and night, going two days journy in twenty-four hours, imagining that the bare rumor of his approach wou'd strike a terror into the heart of the Sultan, and make him abandon the city. But affairs took a quite different turn; for when Miran Chah was at the dome of Ibrahim Lic, he receiv'd advice from Tauris, that a great number of the principal men of the kingdom were confederated against him; which nevertheless did not hinder his progress to Bagdad. But the Sultan Ahmed, knowing it was not

Book V. not a proper ſeaſon to beſiege the place, becauſe of the great dryneſs and heat of the weather, reſolv'd to defend himſelf. In the mean while couriers came inceſſantly from Tauris with reiterated advice of the conſpiracy, and even of the revolt of the principal inhabitants; ſo that the Mirza, two days after the arrival of the great ſtandard before Bagdad, was conſtrain'd to return to Tauris with expedition: he was no ſooner enter'd into that capital of Media, than he put all thoſe to the ſword who were accus'd of being in the conſpiracy, of which number was the Cadi*. During this autumn he ſuſpected that the Cherif Ali, prince of Cheki, of the tribe of Erit, wou'd revolt from his obedience: for which cauſe, without examining into the truth of it, he march'd into the field at the head of his army, and went to pillage his country.

* The judg.

When the Georgians, who by their acts of hoſtility had already drawn on themſelves Timur's anger, were inform'd of the Mirza Miran Chah's ſmall application to public affairs, they became ſo inſolent, that during Timur's expedition in India they revolted. At the ſame time the Sultan Taher, ſon of the Sultan of Bagdad, was with his troops in the fortreſs of Alengic, which had been beſieg'd a long time, according to Timur's orders, by the Sultan Sepger, ſon of Hadgi Seifeddin *. The beſiegers, the better to carry on the ſiege, had built a great wall round the place, ſo that no one cou'd go in or out. This conjuncture caus'd the Georgians to get together a great number of troops: and even the Cherif Ali, tho a good Muſſulman,

* An old general of Timur's army, and his favorite, who had attended him ever ſince the beginning of his rife.

join'd

join'd these infidels, to revenge himself for the Mirza Miran Chah's having pillag'd his country. The Georgians came before Alengic with a great army, being resolv'd to deliver the Sultan Taher, who had been so press'd, that his heart, as one may say, was in his mouth; and entring Azerbijana, they sack'd the country, pillag'd the Mussulmans effects, and committed all imaginable disorders. Chap. 8.

Sultan Sendger, on advice of this, rais'd the siege, and march'd to Tauris to give an account of this strange accident to Miran Chah, who immediately order'd his son the Mirza Aboubecre to march with four or five Emirs before Alengic, to repulse the Georgians, and put a stop to their disorders; which they cou'd not do with so much expedition, but that the Georgians got first to the place, from whence having made the Sultan Taher go out, they plac'd Alengic in the hands of Hadgi Saleh, and three famous Oznaours[1] of Georgia, and then return'd home, their design being only to deliver the Sultan Taher. Yet by chance they met the army of Tauris, which being far less numerous, endeavor'd to avoid 'em; but that being impossible, the Oznaours resolutely advanc'd, as if assur'd of the victory: at the first onset they broke thro the wings of the army of Tauris; and the Cherif Ali, perceiving Aboubecre, rush'd upon him out of the main body sword in hand, to revenge the ruin his father had brought upon his country: but this young prince, who was but eighteen years old, kept his ground, and let fly an arrow of walnut-wood against the

[1] The Oznaours are the principal lords of Georgia, as the Emirs and Mirzas are with the Persians and Tartars.

Cherif, with ſo much skill, that he ſtruck him near the collar of his helmet of gold, which he pierc'd, and the arrow ſtuck in his neck; ſo that the raſh Cherif fell down dead on a ſudden. This vigorous action of the young prince did not hinder the Georgians gaining the victory; for they totally defeated the army of Tauris, and then return'd into their own country, while the Mirza Aboubecre ſav'd himſelf by flight.

Theſe melancholy events were the conſequences of the Mirza Miran Chah's being lunatic; which yet appear'd in a more ſhameful manner in his exceſſes and debauches; for he employ'd almoſt all his time in drinking and gaming. And as one vice is always attended by another, he fell into greater extravagances. As he was one day in converſation with his wife the princeſs Canzade, he reproach'd her with a fact which wounded her honor, with which this chaſte princeſs was ſo ſenſibly touch'd, that ſhe us'd all her endeavors to diſcover the ſource of this calumny; in which ſearch the lives of ſeveral men and women were ſacrific'd; and even the Mirza's Viſier, Dolet Coja Einac, was oblig'd to fly with his wife to Beyan Coutchin at Rei, leaving all he had got during the time of his miniſtry to be plunder'd. The averſion of the Mirza and Canzade ſo far increas'd, that the princeſs, being highly incens'd, was oblig'd to go to Samarcand, where ſhe arriv'd juſt as Timur return'd from the Indian war, and had begun to take ſome recreation after the fatigues of that expedition, and inform himſelf of the preſent affairs of the empire. This was a favorable time for the princeſs to be reveng'd; for Timur had been already inform'd of the many diſorders committed in the kingdom of Iran, and eſpecially in Azerbijana, thro the ill conduct of the Mirza.

Mirza. Canzade at her arrival had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet in the castle of plane-trees, where she acquainted his majesty with her husband's distemper, assuring him that if he did not march towards that kindom, the Mirza wou'd not fail of revolting, since he now made slight of the imperial mandates and prohibitions, and had squander'd away the treasures of Azerbijana in debauches and prodigality. Chap. 2.

These reasons oblig'd Timur, before he had repos'd himself after the fatigues of the last campain, from which he had not return'd above four months, to take up a resolution to carry his arms into the countrys of Iran, to put a stop to the disorders which had crept in there, to succour the weak, curb the insolent, and deliver those who were fallen under the weight of injustice and tyranny.

CHAP. II.

Timur's departure for a campain of seven years.

TIMUR, to whom the universal empire of Asia was destin'd, was no sooner on his return from India, where he had suffer'd the fatigues of a tiresom war with the infidels for a whole year, than he resolv'd to march towards the western parts of Asia, for the reasons given in the preceding chapter. The exempts immediately sent messengers into all the provinces, with orders for the officers of the army to assemble their troops, as well cavalry as infantry, for a campain of seven years, and repair immediately to court to receive his

Book V. majesty's orders. Timur sent to Herat three Emirs of the court of the Mirza Charoc, to signify to that prince that he must march into Azerbijana at the head of the troops of Corassana, and that the Emir Soliman Chah * should go before at the head of the vanguard to Tauris.

* Charoc's Visier.

The Mirza Charoc having learnt the emperor's will from the Emirs, employ'd himself in getting ready the army of Corassana; and the Emir Soliman Chah departed at the same time with the Seid Coja, whom Timur had sent. As soon as the troops were assembled, the Mirza at their head took the road to Bestam and Damgan. When he was arriv'd at Jadgeron, he met Torkel Carcara, who was come from the imperial camp, which had already cross'd the Gihon, and who brought orders for the army of Corassan to take the road to Chasuman, Esterabad, and Sari, because the imperial army must pass by Bestam and Damgan. Whereupon the Mirza turn'd towards Chasuman; but many of his horses perish'd in their march, as well by reason of the difficulty of the ways, as for that the roads were full of poisonous herbs: and after a tedious journy he arriv'd at Firouzcouh. Timur before his departure gave the government of all the country of Touran to the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, whom he left at Samarcand, the seat of this great empire. He fix'd several Emirs in employments near the Mirza's person, whose business was to defend the frontiers; and he gave the government of Andecan to the Mirza Esander, to whom he entrusted the care of the limits of Turkestan. At length, recommending himself to God, he order'd the great imperial standard to be brought into the field; and at the beginning of autumn, the eighth of Muharem 802, which answers to the year of the Hegira

Oct. 11. 1399.

this

this great conqueror departed for a campain of seven years; the date of which day is found in the letters of Fateh Carib, which signifys, easy conquest. Timur went directly to encamp at Caratoupa, which mountain he afterwards pass'd, and went down to Kech, where he visited the tombs of the prince his father, and of the Cheik Chamseddin Kelar: here he distributed alms, and then went to Termed, where he did the same in the tombs of the Cherifs, as well as in that of Coja Mehemed Ali, the great philosopher of Termed, and in that of the illustrious Aboubecre Verrac, and other famous Santons, imploring their intercession with God for the good success of his arms. Chap. 8.

He cross'd the Gihon, and went down to Balc, where he encamp'd in a meadow situate at the foot of the fortress of Hendouan: he likewise visited at Balc the tombs of these holy men, Coja Okia Chah, Coja Rommane, Sultan Ahmed Kezrouye, Fdailayaz, Sefian Thaouri, and others, whose assistance he besought: and he did the Emir Yadghiar Berlas, governor of Balc, the honor to lodge in his house. This Emir was not wanting in performing his devoirs, as well in sprinkling gold and precious stones at the emperor's feet, as in preparing for him a magnificent banquet and presents, and giving him all the marks of a profound respect and perfect obedience. Timur departed from Balc, and after several days march, came to Sarek Camich Dgiam, where he was join'd by the Mirza Charoc's household, and by the princesses Melket Aga *, and Ghiohen Chad Aga *, with their children, who came from Herat.

* Charoc's wives.

The emperor took pleasure in seeing em, and receiv'd their presents, and the precious stones they sprinkled on him, with so much the more

ſatisfaction, in that they preſented to him the young Mirza Siorgatmich, who was born of Melket Aga but four months before, under the aſcendent of Virgo, the eighth of Ramadan 801. The emperor was tenderly affected at the ſight of the Mirza his grandſon, whom he loaded with bleſſings.

June 1399.

The Emir Acbouga came to the ſame place to pay his reſpects to his majeſty, making preſents, and ſprinkling precious ſtones at his feet. The emperor gave him a handſom reception, with a veſt, and permitted him to return to Herat. Then he went to viſit the tomb of the celebrated Mufti Ahmed Dgiam, where he diſtributed alms as uſual, to implore the protection of this famous Santon: and from thence he ſent the Mirza Rouſtem to his eldeſt brother the Mirza Pir Mehemed at Chiraz, with orders that theſe two brothers ſhou'd march together towards Bagdad; and he commanded the Emir Sevindge to accompany him with a thouſand horſe. Timur then took the diverſion of the chace in the plains of Khergherd and Feragherd, where in two days they ſlew an exceſſive number of beaſts; and afterwards he continu'd his road by Nichabour and Beſtam, and diſtributed victuals and ammunition among the troops. He paſs'd by the province of Rei and Khouva; and being encamp'd at the town of Arvanic, he was join'd by the Mirza Charoc, who according to his inſtructions had march'd by the road of Mazendran.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

The transactions of the Emir Solyman Chah.

THE Emir Solyman Chah, who had taken the road to Tauris with the vanguard, being arriv'd at Rei, heard from Beyan Coutchin, governor of that town, of the Mirza Miran Chah's being lunatic: whereupon, not thinking himself secure if he shou'd go to wait upon this prince, he resolv'd to march to Hamadan. But the Mirza Aboubecre having held a council with his father's Emirs, they consented to write a letter to Solyman Chah, in which they invited him to come to Tauris, assuring him that he shou'd receive all manner of satisfaction. On this promise the Emir went there, and with so much conduct wrought upon Miran Chah, that he persuaded him to set out two days after to meet the emperor, with a numerous retinue; while the Mirza Aboubecre gave this brave Emir a magnificent entertainment in the meadow of Comtoupa, without the city of Tauris; honoring him with a vest, and making him a present of several fine horses, to gain his good-will; as he did also Seid Coja, who accompany'd the Emir Solyman Chah: and then they went together to Chehriar. When Timur had pass'd by Chehriar, the Mirza Miran Chah arriv'd at the imperial camp; but he cou'd not obtain audience till the next day. The same day a messenger, nam'd Aman, arriv'd from Chiraz, and offer'd presents to Timur from the Mirza Omar Cheik: he had a handsom reception, and the honor to kiss the imperial carpet. Next

Book V. day the Mirza Miran Chah had also the honor to kiss the emperor's feet: he offer'd his presents on his knees; but he was not receiv'd by the emperor with any tokens of kindness, because of the faults he had committed. Then Timur sent to Tauris before the rest, Timur Cosa son of Acbouga, and Gelalelislam, to carry information of the deportment of Miran Chah. These two commissarys, at their arrival there, caus'd the principal officers and lieutenants of this Mirza to be seiz'd and bound, and the registers of the Divan to be brought to 'em. And whereas the Mirza had squander'd away two parts of the revenues for four years belonging to the Divan, these commissarys wou'd not pass his accounts for the same. But as information was given the court, that the principal cause of the disorder of the province came from the Mirza's excesses, and he was buoy'd up in this evil passion by the instigation of certain profligate musicians, and others, who made it their business to excite him to pleasures and drunkenness; that these parasites never stir'd from the prince's person, but took care to furnish him with new subjects for debauches; the emperor issu'd out an order that they shou'd be all hang'd, not excepting one man, to serve for an example to others. Thus all the Mirza's favorites were seiz'd; and even the most ingenious men, who were of that number, were not spar'd, but serv'd as a warning to others; as the incomparable Moulana Mehemed Couhestani, so famous for all sciences, and so celebrated a poet; whose conversation and agreeable wit had render'd him the wonder of his age.

Timur, at his arrival at Sultania, gave audience to Muzaffer of Neteuze *, who came

* A town near Cachan.

from Iſpahan; and preſenting to Timur jewels and precious veſſels, he kiſs'd the imperial carpet. Timur continu'd his march towards Carabagh, by the way of Caraderra and Ardebil: he hunted in the plains of Moucam[a], and Actam[b], and encamp'd on the banks of the Arana[b], which he croſs'd the next day upon a bridge of boats, and went to Carabagh Arran. He diſtributed the winter-quarters among his troops, which were to be in the neighbourhood of Coutourkint, where the hord and lordſhip of Omartaban lay. At Carabagh the Mirza Aboubecre, and the Emir Solyman Chah, had the honor to pay their reſpects to the emperor; and all the Emirs and chief lords of Miran Chah's court, and the generals of his army, made their preſents to his majeſty, according to their ability. Chap. 3.

We have already related how the Cherif Ali king of Cheki, of the hord of Erlat, had join'd the Georgian army; that he came with 'em to the gates of Alengic, and loſt his life by the hands of the young Mirza Aboubecre, ſon of the Mirza Miran Chah. Since that time, his ſon, the Cherif Sidi Ahmed, who had taken upon him the reins of government, fell into an extreme inquietude, fearing leſt his father's fault ſhou'd juſtly draw upon him Timur's vengeance; this reflection oblig'd him to ſeek the protection of the Emir Cheik Ibrahim, king of Chirvan, and to fly to him for refuge, becauſe this Emir was honor'd with Timur's particular favor, who lov'd him becauſe of his ſincerity, and diſtinguiſh'd him among his greateſt officers. Wherefore this king of Chirvan, relying entire-

[a] Towns of Azerbijana.
[b] A river frontier of Azerbijana and Arran.

ly on the emperor's goodness, carry'd the Cherif to the foot of the throne, designing to beg pardon for him, and procure him the honour to kiss the imperial carpet. In effect, Sidi Ahmed kiss'd the ground with a profound submission, and the Cheik Ibrahim ask'd pardon for his faults. The emperor full of clemency was willing to give him that mark of his affection; and not only pardon'd the Cherif on his account, but even gave him a handsom reception, and moreover confirm'd him in the principality of Chekki, which the Cherif Ali his father formerly possess'd. The Cheik Ibrahim, in quality of king of Chirvan, paid also his particular devoirs; and to testify his joy at the emperor's coming into his country, he prepar'd great banquets, and caus'd so great a number of horses and sheep to be slain, that all the cooks in the court were not sufficient to dress 'em. Besides this banquet, he entertain'd the court with all other pleasures, which usually accompany any famous feasts; and afterwards he offer'd his presents, which consisted of curious animals, beautiful boys and girls, divers stuffs, belts of gold set with precious stones, several sorts of cuirasses and other armour, and lastly, six thousand horses of great price and beauty.

CHAP. IV.

The arrival of good news from several parts.

DURING these transactions, advices were brought from all parts, which were very advantageous to us: among the rest we were inform'd of the death of Timur Cotluc Aglen, who

who having fled for refuge to Timur, after the defeat and ruin of Tocatmich Can, had thro the protection of Timur been establish'd on the throne of the Cans of Capchac, and the empire of Touchi; and yet forgetful of all the favors he had receiv'd from Timur, thro an unparallel'd ingratitude, had revolted, and declar'd war against him: they had advice, I say, of the death of this ungracefull prince, as also of the miserable state of the kingdom of Capchac from seditious and intestine wars. Chap. 4.

Death of the grand Can of Capchac.

At the same time we also heard that Malek Exzaher Barcoc, king of Egypt and Syria, had pass'd from this world into the other: that discord having crept among the Emirs and Mamalucs, the affair had ended in a civil war, in which several of the principal Emirs had been massacred; that Farrudge, son of Barcoc, who was declar'd heir and successor to the kingdom, had neither credit nor authority: and, that the kingdoms of Egypt and Syria were entirely fallen into disorder.

Death of the Sultan of Egypt.

There came also advice, that Tangouz Can, emperor of China, where he had reign'd a long time, professing idolatry, was dead: and that the Chinese who had revolted, had caus'd great confusions in that empire.

Death of the emperor of China.

They also learnt that Kezre Coja Aglen, king of Gete, had paid the tribute to the angel Israel; and that after his death dissensions arose among his four sons, Chamadgehan, Mehemed Aglen, Chirali, and Chadgehan, thro the motions of some seditious people.

Death of the king of Gete.

The same day they also heard that the Mirza Eskender, son of Omar Cheik, was departed from Andecan at the head of his Emirs and army, and had enter'd Mogolistan, where, thro Timur's good fortune, he had gain'd the advantage

Book V. tage over the Moguls, whom he utterly defeated.

These advices, which were of so great importance to the designs of our conqueror, arriving the same day, fill'd the hearts of all the emperor's faithful servants with joy.

As the affair of the Mirza Eskender is of such great consequence, we have thought proper to give the reader a detail of it. Dissension having crept in among the people of Gete,[a] after the death of Kezre Coja Aglen, the Mirza Eskender laid hold on this favorable opportunity, and got together the troops of Andecan; and tho' he was but fifteen years old, he put himself at their head, accompany'd by the Emirs of his court, and by those who in compliance with Timur's orders, guarded the frontiers of Gete, and boldly enter'd into the lands of the Mogols.

When he was come near to Caehgar[b], and the Emirs had join'd him, they advanc'd all together to pillage and ravage the town of Tarkent[c]; then they march'd on farther, and did the same to Sarek Camich, Kelapine, Alighetu, Tz Courgan, Tchartac, and Keiouc Bagh[c]: and at length arriv'd at the province of Aoudge in Mogolistan, and almost all the people, whose hordes were in those quarters, came to meet 'em with submission and obedience. They took those prisoners who refus'd to obey, and carry'd 'em with 'em towards the citadel of Acsou, which they besieg'd, and with great difficulty made themselves masters of it. This citadel consists

[a] The author seems to make no difference between the Getes and the Mogols, either because the action is the same, or that the Mogols at that time inhabited the country of Gete.

[b] Capital of Turkestan.

[c] Town of Gete.

[d] All towns of Mogolistan.

three

three caſtles, which have a communication with Chap. 4.
one another, and is eſteem'd ſo ſtrong, that the inhabitants of all the neighboring provinces conſider it as a ſure aſylum in time of war. The Mirza ſoon encamp'd with his Emirs without the place; and being prepar'd to attack it vigorouſly with inſtruments for ſapping the walls, ſcaling-ladders, battering-rams, and other machines, he caus'd ſeveral aſſaults to be given immediately after one another, for near forty days, when the beſieg'd were oblig'd to ſurrender: to which purpoſe they ſent preſents to the Mirza, and made ſeveral very rich Chineſe merchants go out of the place, who had been ſhut up there with their effects. Then the Mirza ſent men to make inroads at Bai and Couſan; the former of which is a cool place fit for the ſummer, and the latter a warm place proper for winter. The ſcouts pillag'd theſe two towns, and brought away captive the princeſs Hadgi Melik Aga, wife of the Emir Kezre Chah, and her daughter Iſan Melik, with other ladys. At length they went to pillage the town of Tarem, whence they brought the inhabitants away priſoners.

After theſe conqueſts the Mirza Eskender departed from Acſou for Cotan *, one hundred and fifty ſeven days journy from Cambalec *, capital of the northern China, call'd Catai, which is a flouriſhing and populous country, with abundance of water: for we count from Cotan to Cara Coja thirty-five days journy; from thence to Tetcaoul, frontier of China, thirty-one days journy, where there is a wall ſituate between two mountains, in which wall is a great gate, and The Chineſe wall.

* Pequin.

* Capital of a kingdom of the ſame name.

ſeveral

several Yam Canes, or inns to lodge passengers, and several soldiers are always at this place to guard the frontiers and entrance of the wall. From hence to Ghendgian Fou, a city of China, is fifty-one days journy; and forty from that place to Cambalec. It is also forty from Ghendgian Fou to Nemnai. We are assur'd there is another road, by which to go from Cotan to the frontiers of China in forty days: but there is not one dwelling-place in it, the sands make it very tiresom; and tho the water, which is drawn out of the wells in its desarts, is easily come at, yet in several places it is venomous, and kills the animals which drink of it: and what is very surprizing, out of two wells at a small distance from each other, the water of one is poisonous, and the other perfectly good. From Cotan to Cachgar is fifteen days journy, and from Cachgar to Samarcand twenty-five. In Cotan are two rivers, Oraccach, and Caracach, the stones of which being jasper, are carry'd to other countrys. These two rivers have their source in the mountain of Carangoutac.

To return to our subject: at the Mirza Eskender's arrival at Cotan, the inhabitants came out to salute him, and bring him presents; and he behav'd himself with so much prudence, that all the places and castles of this frontier-province were reduc'd to the emperor's obedience. He at length departed from Cotan, and came to Carangoutac, a very steep and rugged mountain, into which the inhabitants of Cotan and the neighboring places fly for refuge in time of war. When the Mirza was fully inform'd of the strength and inaccessibleness of Carangoutac, he did not judge it convenient to hazard his troops there, but chose rather to return, and spend the winter at Cachgar. He chose two

com-

companys of Mogul young women, the most beautiful of Cotan, nine in each company, whom he sent as a present to the emperor by the Cheik Yesaoul: he likewise sent by the same person nine young women and nine horses to the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who being extremely incens'd against him, refus'd his presents. Chap. 4.

The reason of this discord was as follows: the Mirza Mehemed Sultan was come into Turkestan with an army to join the Mirza Eskender, and go with him to the war against the Getes; but Eskender, instead of waiting for him as he ought, went before, and march'd directly into Mogolistan, that he might not serve under Mehemed Sultan. This excited Mehemed's hatred, so that he wou'd not accept of his presents; and he return'd to Samarcand with his army, without putting any designs in execution.

When spring was come, the Mirza Eskender return'd to Andecan, from whence he took the road to Samarcand, to visit Mehemed Sultan; but he learnt at the mountain Ackioteb, that the Mirza being highly incens'd against him, had a design to seize him. This advice made Eskender jealous; so he return'd to Andecan, and enter'd the castle: but the Emirs, Pir Mehemed, son of Tagi Bouga, and Pir Hadgi son of Melik, tax'd him with a design to revolt. They assembled the militia of Andecan, and besieg'd the castle, upon which the Mirza Eskender came out, and went to lodge in a garden built by the Mirza Omar Cheik, after having confer'd with 'em with a deal of good-nature. Then the Emirs seiz'd his domestics, and bound 'em; of which they sent advice to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan at Samarcand, as also of Eskender's entring the castle, and design to revolt. Mehemed Sultan dispatch'd an express to bring Eskender to Samar-

Book V. Samarcand, with the officers of his houſhold. They deliver'd this prince to him at the bank of the river of Couhec; and having bound him, they put to death his Atabec [1], Beyan Timur, ſon of Bikidgek, with twenty-ſix of his domeſtics.

CHAP. V.

Timur marches into Georgia, and to the deſert of Comeha.

TIMUR deſigning to carry his arms into Georgia, in obedience to the precept of the Alcoran, which teaches us to wage war upon all who disbelieve the muſſulman religion, he began to make preparations from the winter of An. Dom. 1399. 802, being then encamp'd at Carabagh Arran.

He gave a veſt to the Cheik Ibrahim of Chirvan, and another to Sidi Ahmed of Cheki; and after having loaded 'em with his favors, he permitted 'em to return home. He choſe three men out of every ten to ſerve as ſcouts, whom he order'd to take victuals for ten days: and he commanded the baggage and reſt of the army to ſtay in this place. He went to join their ſcouts with the Mirzas his ſons; and being arriv'd at the river of Cyrus *, he croſs'd it with his troops on a bridge of boats. Soon after he was join'd by the Cheik Ibrahim of Chirvan, and Sidi Ahmed, prince of Cheki, who came to follow the court.

* Abcor.

[1] Atabec is a prince's governor.

The

The imperial army pass'd by Cheki [a], and took Chap. 9.
the road to the defile of Comcha [b], where the
infidels dwelt: and as this defile was full of
thick woods, the trees of which were very close-
ly interwoven with one another, the soldiers had
orders to cut 'em down to facilitate their passage.
Accordingly they made a road with their axes
and saws ten days journy in length, and broad
enough for five or six companys to march in
front. At that time it snow'd exceedingly for
twenty days together; but that cou'd not hin-
der Timur from arriving with his army in
Georgia. Our men made the great cry, *Allah Ec-
ber*, and fell upon the enemy with so much fury,
that the surface of the mountain which the snows
had before render'd white, with the blood of these
infidels became as red as fields sown with tulips;
and no quarter was given to any they met. Com-
cha the chief of these infidels, who disbelieve
any future judgment, was oblig'd to abandon
his effects and family, and fly. Our soldiers pur-
su'd him as far as the defile of Acsou, and re-
turn'd with a great many oxen, sheep, and other
cattel. After Comcha's flight, and retreating
into the woods, they set fire to his houses, and
pillag'd and ruin'd all his villages. And as
wine was absolutely necessary for this people;
their men, women, and little children being so
accustom'd to it, that when they were on their
death-bed, they entreated that some might be
buried in their sepulchres with 'em, and order'd
by their wills that after their deaths their bodys
shou'd be wash'd with wine, and their coffins
made with vine-tree: for this consideration,

[a] A town on the south frontiers of Georgia near the Caspian.
[b] A defile in Georgia, belonging to prince Comcha.

that

Book V. that they might do 'em the more damage, and entirely ruin 'em, the vine-trees were distributed among the troops, who rooted up all of 'em, which they had with so great difficulty cultivated; they also cut down the other trees, and peel'd several. They afterwards raz'd the great edifices of this country, and especially the temples, where they paid their adorations, which were so disagreeable to God. And what is remarkable is, that in the winter of the preceding year, which was that of the Leopard, Timur destroy'd the Guebres of India, and ruin'd their temples at Deli, and upon the Ganges; and that this winter, which was the year of the Hare, he was carrying on the same war of religion in Georgia, and razing the temples of the Georgians. The poet says, that he had one foot on the eastern frontiers of India, and the other upon the western limits of the country of Arran.

CHAP. VI.

Timur's return from the defile of Comcha.

TIMUR staid near a month in this defile; and his soldiers had made themselves masters of all the mountains, after having slain an infinite number of brave Oznaours, whose prince Comcha was retir'd to so great a distance, that no advice cou'd be got of the place he was in; and the enemy's country was entirely ruin'd: besides all this, the cold was very violent, and the ways were clog'd up with snow, so that the horses had nothing to eat but the barks of trees, and even several of 'em died with hunger. Where-

Whereupon Timur resolv'd to return: he repass'd the river of Cyrus, and came back with glory to Carabagh, where he enter'd his imperial tent with the acclamations of all the lords and princes of his court. The joy at his presence was augmented by the birth of a son to the Mirza Calil Sultan: this young prince was nam'd Berkul; and several days were spent in sprinkling gold and precious stones upon him: they had banquets and plays, accompany'd with music, to celebrate this happy birth. Soon after a severe order was issu'd out, for prosecuting those in a council of war, who had not behav'd themselves as they ought in the battel fought by the Mirza Miran Chah against the Georgians in the neighborhood of Alengic. The Mirza Charoc was commission'd to see to the putting this order in execution; who having examin'd all the facts, in council with the Emirs of the Divan, they presented a memorial to the emperor with the several interrogatorys, informations and proofs: upon which Timur order'd the punishment due by the laws of Genghiz Can to be executed. The bastinado was given to Hadgi Abdalla Abbas, and Mehemed Casgan: Yunne Haruzai Aperdi, who had fled first, was order'd to be put to death; but the Chah Zades, or emperor's children, obtain'd the favor of his being repriev'd after the bastinado before and behind; and each of these three lords was lent thirty horses. They also fin'd the principal officers of the Mirza Miran Chah, some at fifty, some at two hundred, and some at three hundred horses; which horses were distributed among the foot-soldiers.

Chap. 6.

Timur bestow'd many favors and honors on the Mirza Aboubecre, because of the valor he had shewn in the fight, when he unhors'd Sidi

Ali king of Cheki. At the same time the prince Burhan Aglen was likewise put to death, for having committed some considerable faults, very unworthy of his birth, in several skirmishes. His son was treated in the same manner; and his regiment, officers, and domestics were given to Rouſtem Fouſad.

CHAP. VII.

Continuation of the history of the Mirza Rouſtem, who was gone from Dgiam to Chiraz. A great crime committed by his eldeſt brother, the Mirza Pir Mehemed.

WE have ſaid before that the emperor had ſent the Mirza Rouſtem from Dgiam to Chiraz, and that he was accompany'd in his journy by the Emir Sevindgic at the head of two thouſand horſe. They happily arriv'd at Chiraz by the road of Yezd and Abrecouh. The Mirza Pir Mehemed gave him a handſom reception, and a ſumptuous banquet, in the garden of Carabagh[1], and preſented him with a veſt and a hundred thouſand Dinars Copeghis. Some time after the Mirza Rouſtem, accompany'd by the Emirs Sevindgic, his nephew Haſſan Jandar, and Haſſan Jagadaoul, who were at Chiraz, took the road to Bagdad, according to the emperor's order, and paſs'd by Behbehan and Toſtar; leaving

[1] In Coraſſana towards Bactriana: the ſame with Sarik Camich Dgiam.

[1] A royal garden at Chiraz, different from Carabagh near Tauris.

ing at Chiraz, to govern that city, the Emirs Said Berlas, and Alibek Aiſa, a relation of the Emir Abbas, as Timur had commanded him. But the Mirza Mehemed, who had the ſame orders to depart at the head of this army, delay'd his departure, till a long time after; then pretending ſickneſs, he return'd to Chiraz by Nobendgian in Chouleſtan. Chap. 7.

This did not deter the Mirza Rouſtem with his Emirs from ravaging Loraſtereo, in the country of Ramhermez [a], from whence he brought a great quantity of booty: he made the ſame haſte in paſſing by the village of the bridge, call'd Dezfoul: he pillag'd in the plain of Dombar all the ſubjects of the princes Saki and Febli. From thence he went to plunder Bad [b] and Bacſa [b], whence he brought away ſeveral ſlaves; and in the month of Jumaziulevel 802, he arriv'd at Mendeli [c]. The Emir Ali Calander, the governor of it for the Sultan of Bagdad, put himſelf in a poſture of defence; but he being repuls'd at the firſt onſet, they ſeiz'd on eleven of his men, whoſe heads they cut off, and then permitted the ſoldiers to pillage the place. March 1400.

In the mean while the Mirza Pir Mehemed, who under pretence of ſickneſs had turn'd back, arriv'd at Chiraz, where by the inſtigation of certain Tadgics, who had liſted themſelves in his ſervice, he fell into ſome extravagances; undertaking to compoſe poiſons and faſcinations, the deſigns of which he was utterly ignorant of. The Emir Said Berlas, governor of Chiraz, being inform'd of it by ſome of this young prince's ſervants, immediately made a ſtrict ſearch into

[a] A town of Loreſtan, long. 86. lat. 31.
[b] Towns of Chaldea.
[c] A town of Arabia, dependent on Bagdad.

Book V. the matter, and learn from his very officers the whole of it, even before the Mirza's face. Upon these incontestable proofs, the Emir Said imprison'd Pir Mehemed in the inner fortress, and lodg'd himself in the castle to guard him, leaving Alibec Aisa in the city to govern it in his stead; and he sent advice to court of what had pass'd at Chiraz. The messenger of the Emir Said gave an account of this to Timur in the winter-quarters at Carabagh, who immediately sent the Emir Allahdad to Chiraz, to prosecute those wicked Tadgics, who had taught the Mirza to make the poisons, that they might be put to death: he was likewise order'd to settle the Mirza Roustem upon the throne of Persia, in the room of his eldest brother, whom he was to bring bound to court. Accordingly, the Emir Allahdad, at his arrival at Chiraz, put to death Moulana Mehemed Calife, Seid Djemal, and Roustem Corasani, who were convicted of having taught the Mirza how to compose the poisons; he caus'd Mastaoui Couchtchi's legs and arms to be cut off; and put in irons Mobarec Coja, Muhib Cherberder, and Cheik Zadi Farid, who were accus'd of having been concern'd in the same crime. Allahdad then sent the emperor's letters-patent to the Mirza Roustem, in Irac-Arabi, by which he was install'd in the government of the kingdom of Persia. This prince receiv'd 'em at Mendeli, after he had gain'd the victory over Mir Ali Calander. As soon as he had read the emperor's orders, he departed for Chiraz: the Emirs Hassan Jandar and Hassan Jagadaoul, who accompany'd him, return'd back; and the Emir Sevindgic took the road to Chepchemal, for Carabagh Arran, where the army lay then encamp'd.

Mir

Mir Ali Calander, who had fled from Mendeli, being arriv'd at Bagdad, gave an account to the Sultan Ahmed of what pass'd; this prince fell into a great inquietude, and order'd the gates to be shut, and the bridge of the city to be destroy'd. Chap. 7.

About this time there happen'd a very remarkable affair, of great service to Timur. This monarch having given the government of Courestan to one nam'd Cheroüan, this governor immediately gave himself up to the getting of money at any rate; he exacted great sums from Chamseddin Dehdar, and other principal men of the country; he even put to death the governors of Haviza [1]; and what was worse than all this, he revolted, and with a thousand horse well-equip'd went to Bagdad, where he offer'd his services to Sultan Ahmed, who gave him a handsom reception, loading him with honors and caresses. Cherman did not rest there; but endeavor'd to win over to him the Sultan's principal officers, and to that purpose secretly gave em considerable sums, from ten thousand to three hundred thousand Dinars of Bagdad. But it happen'd very unluckily to this traitor, that the memorandum of the sums paid to each of these lords was lost thro the negligence of his secretary, and fell into the hands of Cayre Behader, one of the Sultan's officers, who presented the note to his master, at a time when the affrighted Sultan had caus'd the gates of the town to be shut. This affair greatly increas'd his jealousy; and particularly a sum of ten thousand Dinars, set down to the name of Rate, whom the Sultan immediately caus'd to be arrested, and cut off

[1] A town in the province of Courestan, call'd also Ahouaz.

his head with his own hand. In the mean while, as he had already ſent Cheronan, with Coutoub Haideri, Manſour, and other Emirs, to ravage Oirat; he immediately diſpatch'd Tadghiar Edatchi, with orders to the Emirs to ſlay Cheronan; which was accordingly executed, and his head brought to Bagdad, where the Sultan in leſs than eight days put to death near two thouſand of his officers. He ſent to Valet the lady Veſa Catoun, who had nurs'd and educated Cheronan from his infancy; where ſhe was ſmother'd by a pillow laid over her face. He ſlew with his own hand moſt part of the other ladys and officers of his houſhold, whom he order'd to be caſt into the Tigris: and afterwards he ſhut himſelf up in the Seraglio, not ſuffering any one to come to him; and even when the Bavertchis, or ſtewards, brought him his dinner, they knock'd at the door, deliver'd in the diſhes, and then return'd without entring. He ſpent ſeveral days after this manner, and then order'd ſix of his moſt faithful ſervants to convey ſecretly ſix horſes out of his ſtable to the other ſide the Tigris; which river he croſs'd one night in a boat, and with thoſe ſix perſons rode into the country ſubject to Cara Youſef, prince of the Turcomans. In the mean while the ſtewards, as uſual, carry'd the king's dinner to the gate of the Seraglio, and deliver'd it to an officer who was in the ſecret, the people having no knowledg of the Sultan's abſence. This prince join'd Cara Youſef, and perſuaded him to come with his troops to pillage the town of Bagdad. When they were come there, he aſſign'd quarters on the other ſide of the water for the troops of Cara Youſef: the Sultan croſs'd the river in a boat, and came to his palace; and he gave ſo much ready mony, ſtuffs, arms, Arabian horſes,

gold

gold belts, and other riches, to Cara Youſef and his men, that thoſe Turcomans were content with what they had got. The Sultan wou'd by no means permit 'em to inſult the city; but as he very much fear'd being attack'd by the army of Zagatai, he ſent out ſpys on all ſides, who gave him a true information of the condition of Timur's affairs. Chap. 7.

In the month of Zilhadge 802, Timur being on his march to Sebaſte, the Sultan of Bagdad imagin'd that if the formidable armys of this conqueror ſhou'd again enter Natolia and Syria, all the paſſages wou'd be block'd up, whilſt he muſt be oblig'd to ſave himſelf by flight. He therefore reſolv'd to leave Farrudge governor of the city of Bagdad, whence he deſign'd to go out with Cara Youſef, his wives and children, and his jewels, with whatever he cou'd carry away worth taking. So they croſs'd the Euphrates, for Natolia; and being arriv'd at Aleppo, Temourtach, who commanded there, came out with his Emirs to oppoſe his paſſage. A battel enſu'd; but thoſe of Aleppo being defeated, the Sultan and the reſt purſu'd their road, and came to Natolia. As they were on their march towards the city of Sebaſte, capital of Roum, they were met by a party of Timur's army: but what paſs'd between 'em we'll relate hereafter. July 1400.

CHAP. VIII.

A diet in relation to the affair of Georgia.

AFTER winter was over, that is, in the beginning of the year of the Crocodile, Timur left his winter-quarters at Carabagh. He aſſembled a diet, whereto the princes his ſons, the Emirs, the lords and generals of note did not fail of coming: he held a council with 'em, in which it was unanimouſly reſolv'd that the war with the infidels of Georgia was preferable to all others, as well for the good of religion, which ought to be the principal object of war, as for the increaſe of the power of monarchy, and the conjuncture of the preſent affairs. The uſual feaſt was made after the diet, and the banquet, which was very ſumptuous, was accompany'd with all ſorts of plays and pleaſures. Timur, excited by a deſire of liberality, diſtributed the treaſures among the Chah Zadés, his ſons, the Emirs and all the ſoldiers of the army, and gave horſes to thoſe who were on foot. He afterwards inform'd himſelf of the roads and quarters of Georgia, where they ſhou'd encamp, and had 'em very exactly ſet down in writing: and then imploring the divine aſſiſtance, he departed from Carabagh, taking the road to Georgia, the country of Malek Ghourghin. In ten days he arriv'd at the plain of Berdaa, where he encamp'd, and gave audience to Taharten, prince of Arzendgian upon the Euphrates, who had already gain'd his majeſty's favor by his good ſervices. This prince kiſs'd the earth before Timur; made a diſcourſe in his praiſe,

full of vows for his prosperity, and offer'd his Chap. 8.
presents. Timur being willing to distinguish him by very particular favors, not only gave him a vest, a cap and a belt, but he further honor'd him with a horse-tail, a standard, and two kettle-drums, which are the signs of sovereignty, and then he permitted him to return to Arzendgian, after having given him instructions concerning the application and care he ought to use in the government of the city, as the prefect, commendore, and expressly recommended to him to use circumspection to preserve his frontiers from the insults of the Ottomans; to which purpose he ought to be watchful, cautious, and liberal to his soldiers, and neglect nothing to protect himself from his enemys artifices, who are very politic and dangerous.

Timur departed from Berdaa, and after seven days journeys arriv'd at the frontiers of Georgia. He immediately dispatch'd an express to Melek Ghourghin, to send to the camp the prince Tahem, son of Soltan Ahmed Gelair. The messenger acquitted himself of his commission to but the king of Georgia, Ghourghin return'd him a very uncivil answer. The express came back without obtaining any thing, and gave an account to Timur of all that had pass'd in the audience. The rashness of this refusal kindled his wrath against these infidels; wherefore leaving the baggage, he went before, and order'd his troops to enter the lands of these Georgians, and to put every thing to fire and sword. The soldiers flew over the country, they burn'd, ruin'd the houses of the Georgians, and even rooted up the trees: they destroy'd the vines, spoil'd the fruits, and brought a terrible desolation upon this country. The affrighted Georgians fled for refuge into their high mountains,

where

Book V. where no one had ever yet conquer'd 'em; for here were fortify'd caverns, and houses upon craggy rocks, which it wou'd in vain to think any one cou'd enter by force of arms. They had entrench'd themselves in those places, and carry'd with 'em whatever they cou'd find worth taking. Timur's soldiers, without examining the dangers to which they were expos'd, and full of confidence in their prince's good fortune, ascended these mountains, and then laid themselves in boxes, to which strong cords were fasten'd, and so were let down by their comrades from the tops of the mountains to the caverns of the Georgians; where discharging their arrows they approach'd the enemys, and drew the men advanc'd: then taking lances in one hand, and swords in the other, they enter'd the caverns notwithstanding the vigorous resistance of the enemys, of whom they made a horrible slaughter. Among these craggy places there were some so well defended, that our men were oblig'd to cast a great quantity of combustible matter, as well to dispossess the enemys, as to burn their wooden houses, and the entrenchments they had made. Thus by the assistance of heaven, tho these infidels fought with all imaginable resolution, the mussulman soldiers had the advantage over 'em, according to the promise of the Alcoran, taking fifteen noted places on which they very much rely'd. Those who wou'd turn Mussulmans obtain'd quarter, but those who, thro the temptation of the devil, stubbornly continu'd in the disbelief of the Alcoran, were beheaded.

Timur left several of the best troops of Corassana in the garison of the city of Tefflis, capital of Georgia, and then went to encamp in the plain of Mocran. The king Ghourghin being

being terrify'd at the ſucceſs of the Mahometans, fled into the deſarts, and as a vagabond wander'd about the uninhabited mountains: but the greateſt part of the Ozmaours of Georgia, ſeeing themſelves reduc'd to the utmoſt extremity, ſubmitted; they came in a humble manner to the gate of the imperial pavilion, where they begg'd quarter and pardon of the victorious Timur, making divers excuſes to avert his vengeance. When our troops had reduc'd this country, they raz'd the temples and monaſterys, where the Georgians had for a long time exercis'd their religion; and erected chappels and moſques, in which they proclaim'd the Ezan[1], and read the prayers of the muſſulman religion with the uſual ceremony, to the glory of Timur. Chap. 9.

CHAP. IX.

Timur marches againſt prince Jani Bec, & Georgians.

AFTER the conqueſt and deſtruction of the country of Malek Ghourghin, Timur reſolv'd to attack the other provinces of Georgia. He departed with expedition from the plain of Mucran, and leaving the baggage, march'd towards the defile of Jani Bec. When they were arriv'd there, the troops ſurrounded all the country, pillag'd it, and brought away a conſiderable booty. Jani Bec ſoon abandon'd

[1] Ezan is the cry the Mahometans make from the top of the Minarets (or ſteeples) of their moſques, to call the people to prayer.

his

Book V. his mountain and fortreſs; and with an entire ſubmiſſion came before the emperor. In the mean while our ſoldiers ravag'd the villages, burnt the houſes, and ſlew every one they met; they carry'd away the Georgians effects; and while they enrich'd themſelves in this world, they were laying up treaſures of merit in the other. Afterwards they return'd to join the baggage, and Timur ſent, by the way of Semave, the Seid Coja, ſon of the Cheik Ali Behader, to make inroads in other parts of Georgia; he order'd the Emir Gehan Chah to paſs the defile with the troops of the left wing, and the main body, commanded by Timur, paſs'd by Semave, where it was join'd by all the troops which were gone out to make inroads in the provinces, from whence they return'd loaden with ſpoils, bringing away a great number of horſes and ſheep; and, to mortify the Georgians the more, our ſoldiers deſtroy'd all the ſtanding corn, and ruin'd their temples and other edifices. At the mouth of the defile was a fortreſs nam'd Bil, which was very high and difficult of acceſs: nevertheleſs our army was no ſooner arriv'd there than they had orders to beſiege it; and the ſiege and conqueſt of the place were almoſt perform'd at the ſame time. Having taken it, they rac'd it, leſt it ſhou'd be of uſe to the enemy on another occaſion. From thence the army went to encamp in the more orient Georgia; and Timur ſent the Emirs into all parts in ſearch of king Ghourghin, who, like wolves and chacals, wander'd as a vagabond in uninhabited woods and mountains: but not being able to find him, they return'd to join the imperial camp with a great quantity of ſpoils, and ſome of Ghourghin's officers whom they had taken. Timur at length decamp'd, croſs'd the river of Cyrus, and happily encamp'd

amp'd on the other bank, loaded with good Chap. 10.
ortune, and pleas'd with his victorys.

CHAP. X.

The taking of the fort of Zerit, and the town of Suanit.

DURING these transactions, the spys brought advice that a great number of Oznaours were retir'd into the castle of Zerit, situate on the ridg of a narrow mountain, which had never been taken by any conqueror. On this, Timur, to whom nothing appear'd impossible, march'd with expedition towards this place, and order'd it to be besieg'd. The machines and battering rams were got ready; and after several attacks necessary at a siege, a general assault was given seven days after Timur's arrival. The fort was taken sword in hand, and raz'd the same day, after putting all the Georgians to the sword. Then they went out to make inroads, and brought away a great number of prisoners bound, whom the emperor order'd to be put to death, because they wou'd not turn Mahometans. They afterwards receiv'd advice that king Gourghin was in the town of Suanit. Timur order'd the roads to this town to be taken down in writing; and that the troops which were gone out to make inroads, shou'd return to the camp. He left one half of the army with the baggage; and with ensigns display'd march'd with the rest. But Ghourghin, who had his spys about him, had advice of Timur's approach; he went out of Suanit,

Book V. Suanit, and fled towards Abkhaze [a]. The troops, at their arrival at Suanit, carry'd it upon the first assault, and then went in pursuit of Ghourghin, several of whose officers they slew; but this prince, reduc'd to the greatest misery, cross'd the rivers of Aigar and Corlan [b], and had the good fortune to save himself from the danger wherewith he was surrounded. Then seeing himself, in a manner, ready for the slaughter, he found it was not for so weak a prince as himself to protect the son of the Sultan of Bagdad, against the powerful emperor Timur; whereupon he oblig'd Taher to seek an asylum in the country of the Ottomans, whither he had heard the Sultan Ahmed his father was likewise fled. At length Gourghin sent to the court of Timur an ambassador nam'd Ismael, who made known to him the great misery and extremity to which his master was reduc'd; deplor'd the ruin of his state, and destruction of his country; and with his face turn'd towards the ground, he spake thus to the emperor with all the submission that cou'd be expected from a miserable and vanquish'd prince. "I have felt "the evil success of the methods I have so "fortunately taken; I have tasted the fruits of "my imprudence, and the bitterness of the "punishment I have merited: but if the "emperor, whose generosity alone, I "may venture to say, surpasses the fury of his "arms in battel, will take pity upon me, who "am his servant, and confess my fault, and is "willing to pardon me for what is past, and "grant me my life, I will not only be intirely "obedient to him, but my life shall always

[a] A town of Georgia on the frontiers of Circassia.
[b] Rivers of Capchac.

em-

" employ'd in his ſervice. I will take great care Chap. 11.
" not to hurt the Muſſulmans in any manner:
" and moreover I conſent to pay the annual tri-
" bute to the imperial treaſury; likewiſe pro-
" miſing to ſend what number of troops his ma-
" jeſty ſhall order into his ſervice, at the time
" appointed."

CHAP. XI.

Timur marches againſt the Georgian prince Aivani.

TIMUR, upon hearing this diſcourſe of Ghourghin's ambaſſador, was touch'd with the condition of this prince, and did not doubt the truth of what he ſaid; conſidering the great miſery and neceſſity to which he was reduc'd, his ſincere confeſſion of his fault, and his repentance for having dar'd to give protection to the Sultan Taher. Theſe conſiderations, join'd with the promiſes he had made, and confirm'd with an oath, to be always ready in the emperor's ſervice, and punctually to pay the annual tribute, caus'd Timur to grant him the pardon he demanded; who then went out of his country, and march'd towards the lands ſubject to prince Aivani, one of the moſt powerful ſovereigns of Georgia. The ſoldiers having enter'd his country, ravag'd and pillag'd all they met; and as there was no army to oppoſe 'em, they diſpers'd themſelves up and down, ruining the towns and caſtles, and deſtroying every thing with fire and ſword. After they had entirely laid this country waſte, they paſs'd into that of Cara Calcanlic *, the inhabitants of which,

* A tribe of Georgians.

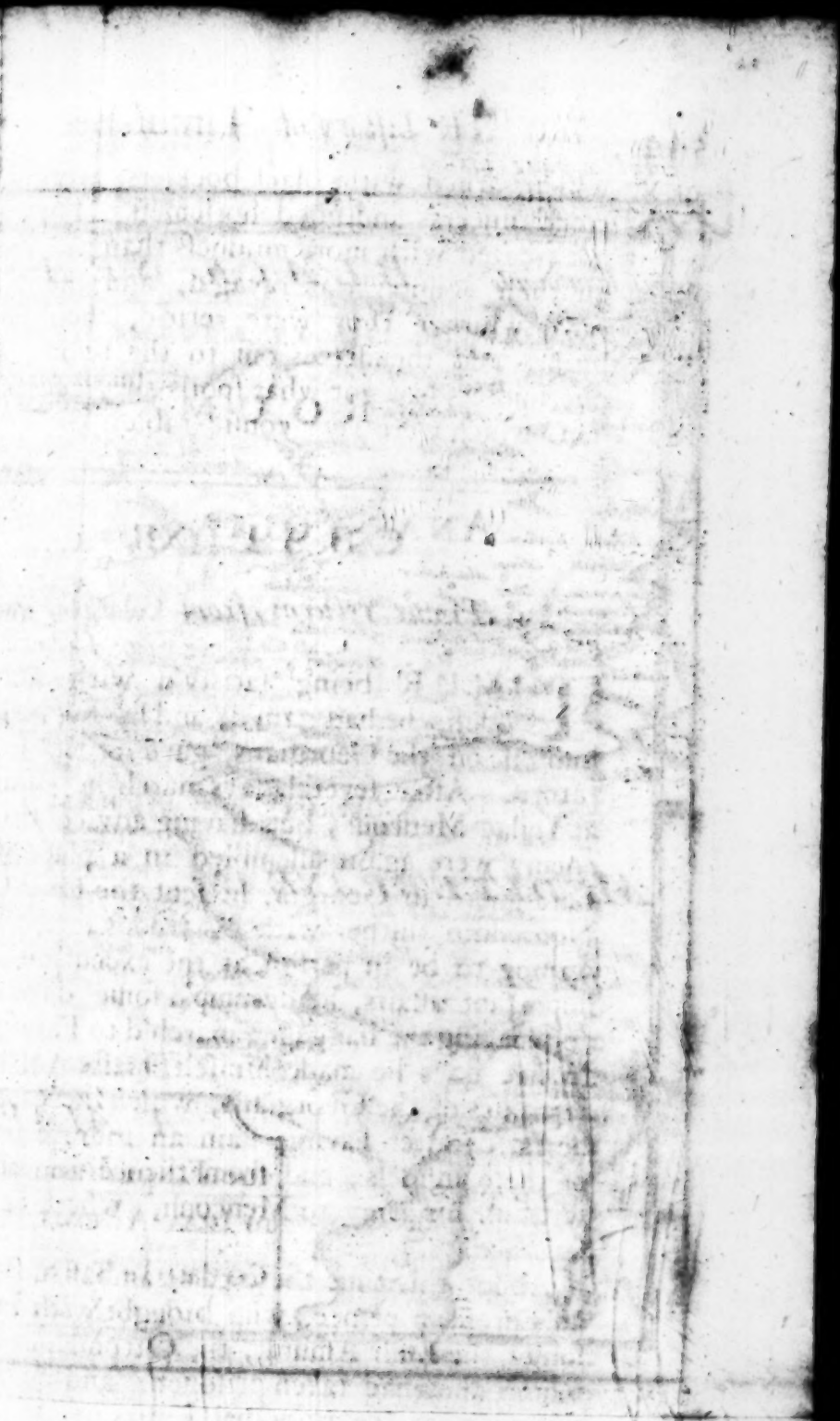
which, arm'd with black bucklers, were skilful mountaineers, and good horſemen. They were not treated with more mildneſs than the others; for their country was ravag'd, and the places raz'd whither they were retir'd, their houſes burnt, and themſelves put to the ſword, after our ſoldiers had got what ſpoils they cou'd from 'em, which were very conſiderable.

CHAP. LXII.

Timur returns from Georgia.

TIMUR being ſatisfy'd with the conqueſts he had gain'd, and having reveng'd himſelf on the Georgians, gave orders for his return. After ſeveral days march he encamp'd at Yeilac Menconl; but having advice that the enemy were again aſſembled in a place nam'd Faraſgherd in Georgia, he ſent the Emir Cheik Noureddin thither with his troops; and being willing to be in perſon at the execution of all important affairs, he decamp'd ſome days after, and leaving the baggage, march'd to Faraſgherd. In five days he made himſelf maſter of ſeven fortreſſes of the Georgians, which he caus'd to be raz'd, after having ſlain an infinite number of theſe infidels; and from thence he return'd with all his army to Mencouh, where he ſtay'd ſeveral days.

About this time there came ambaſſadors from an European prince, who brought with 'em the ſon of the Emir Amurat, the Ottoman emperor, whom they had taken priſoner; and by the interceſſion of the principal Emirs of the court, they were admitted into Timur's audience; to whom they made known the high eſteem their maſter



Vol. 2. page 145.


CASPIAN
SEA
GEORGIA
CIRCASSIA
CHIRVAN
ARRAN
AZERBI
IRAC
AGEMI
ARABIA
Leagues
Horary Leagues
C. OF PERSIA

master had conceiv'd of his actions, and his desire to enter into an alliance with him, which he shou'd account a great honor. Timur receiv'd the ambassadors with all manner of civility, granted 'em what they desir'd, and after having given 'em rich vests, dismiss'd 'em; and they return'd home by the way of Trebizond, pleas'd with the honors they had reciv'd at court. The army lay encamp'd two months in the meadow of Mencoul, that the horses might have some rest after their fatigue, and to wait the arrival of the Emirs and troops which were dispers'd up and down the country. Chap. 13.

CHAP. XIII.

Reasons which oblig'd Timur to march against the city of Sebaste, capital of Anatolia.

PHILOSOPHERS tell us that the relation between a king and his kingdom is the same as between the soul and body; for when the soul and body harmonize in the rules of moderation, the body is in perfect health; but if the contrary happens, it is attack'd with diseases, and at length falls into corruption: and so when a king neglects to do justice, his kingdom falls into decay. This moral may with justice be apply'd to the case of the Ottoman emperor, and the Sultan of Egypt; for these two princes priding in their power, committed several violent actions, which drew upon 'em

[a] Capital of the kingdom of the same name, in Anatolia, on the shore of the black sea; long. 70. 30. lat. 42.

Book V. Timur's anger, and caus'd the destruction of their country and the desolation of their subjects. Timur being irritated at their proceedings, tho but newly return'd from a toilsom campain, and notwithstanding the great distance of these Sultans dominions, did not fail of undertaking the conquest of their empires, which by the grace of God he brought into subjection; so that all the citys, towns and villages of these great countrys were pillag'd by his soldiers: which calamity was brought upon the poor innocent people thro the bad conduct of their princes.

But to come to a particular detail of this history; we must know that Ildurum [a] Bajazet, sirnam'd the Thunder, who was then emperor of the Ottomans, surpass'd most of his predecessors in power, and the vastness of his dominions: he had brought into subjection a great part of the country of Roum *, to wit, the provinces of Aidine, Mentecha, Kermian, and Caramania, which his ancestors had never been able to do: and he had likewise extended his dominions the space of four months journy in Europe. After he had taken prisoner Cara Osman, son of the Cadi Burhaneddin, prince of Sebaste, and had put to death the Cadi, he brought an army into the field, and having made himself master of Sebaste, he push'd his conquests towards Malatia [b], a town on the Euphrates, and bordering upon the province of Aleppo. He even besieg'd and took the city of Malatia, which had been a long time dependent on Syria. He made the

* Anatolia.

[a] Ildurum signifys lightning or thunder.

[b] Long. 71. lat. 37.

Emir Muſtafa governor of Sebaſte, to whoſe ſon he gave the government of Malatia. At length, as if he cou'd find no one to diſpute his conqueſts, he return'd victorious and loaded with ſpoils to the ſeat of his empire. He had a great number of troops and officers belonging to his houſhold, and among the reſt, near twelve thouſand dog-keepers. His magnificence, riches, and power, render'd him ſo proud, that he forgot the ſentence which teaches us, that God, the creator of the univerſe, hath made thoſe who are ſuperior to them who pride themſelves in their ſtrength. He had the boldneſs to ſend an ambaſſador to Taharten, to ſummon him to his court, and ſend the tributes of Arzendgian, Erzerom, and their dependences, to his treaſury; which order was in ſuch haughty terms, that it did not become him to uſe. Taharten ſent advice of this to court; and Timur was very much ſurpriz'd at the deſigns of the Ottoman, who was not ignorant that Taharten was under his protection: whereupon he reſolv'd to write a letter to him, to endeavor to bring him to a ſenſe of his fault by ſweetneſs and friendſhip. Chap. 14.

CHAP. XIV.

Timur's letter to the Caiſer Roum, that is, the Ottoman emperor.

TIMUR commanded a ſecretary to be call'd to him, whom he order'd to write a letter to Ildurum Bajazet, mix'd with counſels and reproaches, hoping by that means to make him reflect upon what he had done. The ſecretary began the letter in an eloquent manner,

Book V. with praiſes to God, and bleſſings on Mahomet he made uſe of this paſſage of the Alcoran for the ſubject of his letter, *God bleſſes thoſe princes who know what uſe they ſhou'd make of their power, and go not beyond the bounds preſcrib'd 'em*: and he continu'd it with expreſſions which were as daggers to the heart of Bajazet, and ought to have ſhewn him his duty. The letter was as follows.

To the emperor of Roum, Bajazet the Thunder.

"AFter the uſual compliments, we let you "know, that by the infinite grace of God, "the greateſt part of Aſia is in ſubjection to "our officers, which we conquer'd by our "ſtrength, and the terror of our arms. Know "likewiſe that the moſt powerful Sultans of the "earth are obedient to our commands; that "we govern our dominions by our ſelf, and "have even conſtrain'd fortune to take care of "our empire; that our armys are extended "from one ſea to the other, and our guard con-"ſiſts of ſovereign kings, who form a hedge be-"fore our gate. Where is the monarch who "dares reſiſt us? Where is the potentate who "does not glory in being of the number of our "courtiers? But for thee, whoſe true origin ter-"minates in a Turcoman ſailor, as every one "knows, it wou'd be well, ſince the ſhip of thy "unfathomable ambition has ſuffer'd ſhipwreck "in the abyſs of ſelf-love, if thou wou'dſt ſave "the ſails of thy raſhneſs, and caſt the anchor of "repentance in the port of ſincerity, which is

* This metaphorical way of expreſſion is very common among the Orientals; but it ſhould make proper in this place, becauſe of the race of Bajazet being related to a ſailor.

" the port of safety; lest by the tempest of our Chap. 14.
" vengeance you shou'd perish in the sea of the
" punishment which you merit. But as we have
" learnt, that in obedience to the precept of
" the Alcoran, which orders us to wage war
" with the enemys of the Mussulman laws, you
" have undertaken a vigorous war with the Eu-
" ropeans; this consideration hath hinder'd us
" from making any insults in the lands which
" are subject to you: and the reflection that
" your country is the bulwark of the Mussul-
" mans, hath oblig'd us to leave it in a flou-
" rishing condition; for fear the passage of our
" armys into it shou'd raise a division among
" the inhabitants, and cause the Mussulmans
" to be disquieted, and the infidels to rejoice.
" Then take care of your self, and endeavor by
" your good conduct to preserve the dominions
" of your ancestors, not suffering for the future
" your ambitious foot to wander out of the li-
" mits of your power, which is but small.
" Cease your proud extravagances, lest the cold
" wind of hatred shou'd extinguish the flam-
" beau of peace. You may remember the pre-
" cept of Mahomet, to let the Turks remain in
" peace, while they are quiet: don't seek to
" wage war with us; which no one ever dar'd
" to do, and prosper'd. The devil certainly
" inspires you to ruin your self. Tho you
" have been in some considerable battels in the
" woods of Natolia, and have gain'd advanta-
" ges upon the Europeans; it was only thro
" the prayers of the prophet, and the blessings
" of the Mahometan religion of which you
" make profession: don't be proud at these
" advantages, nor attribute 'em to your own
" valor. Believe me, you are but a pismire:
" don't seek to fight against the elephants; for

"they'll crush you under their feet. The dove "which rises up against the eagle destroys it "self. Shall a petty prince, such as you are, "contend with us? But your rodomontades "are not extraordinary; for a Turcoman "never spake with judgment. If you don't "follow our counsels, you will repent it. These "are the advices we have to give you: do "you behave your self as you think fit."

This letter was seal'd with the imperial signet, and deliver'd to Bajazet by envoys who knew how to carry on the intrigues of princes. When they were come to Bajazet, they presented him the letter, acquainting him with the reasons of their coming, and their master's pretensions: but pride had taken too deep root in the breast of the Ottoman, for a letter, or the words of an ambassador, to have any effect upon him: he gave 'em therefore a very haughty answer. "It is a long time, said he, "since we have been desirous of carrying on "a war with you. God be thanked, our de- "sire has had its effect, and we have taken "up a resolution to march against you at the "head of a formidable army. If you don't "advance against us, we will come to seek "you; and pursue you as far as Tauris and "Sultania. We shall then see in whose favor "heaven will declare, who of us will be raised "by victory, and who abas'd by a shameful de- "feat."

CHAP.

CHAP. XV.

Timur marches to Sebaſte, and takes that city.

THE envoys at their return from Natolia, gave an account to the emperor's officers of Bajazet's haughty anſwer. Whereupon Timur, being incens'd againſt this Turcoman, caus'd his enſigns to be diſplay'd, in order to make war on him; and he immediately march'd towards Natolia. Being arriv'd at Avenic, he met the Emir Allahdad, who had been ſent to Chiraz to bring from thence the Mirza Pir Mehemed bound like a criminal; which he accordingly did. Timur order'd that the Mirza ſhou'd be interrogated by the council of war; and that after his proſecution, he ſhou'd be puniſh'd according to his deſerts. Accordingly, after judgment was given, he receiv'd the blows of the baſtinado, order'd by the laws call'd Yaſa; after which his chains were taken off, and himſelf ſet at liberty. In purſuance of the ſame laws, the Cheik Zade Ferid, and Mobarec Ooja, who were then in irons, were put to death, for having corrupted the Mirza, and taught him magic.

Then the emperor ſent to Sultania the empreſs Serai Mulc Canum, Canaade, and the wives of the princes his ſons, with the Mirza Oloucbek, and the other young princes of the imperial houſhold, under the care of the Mirza Omar, and ſome Emirs. After that he caus'd the great imperial ſtandard to be diſplay'd, and march'd at the head of his army. At his arrival at Erzeron, he was ſaluted by Tahartan prince of Arzendgian. Two days after he decamp'd, and

Book V. march'd beyond Arzendgian, to enter the frontiers of the country of Roum, or Natolia, which was then subject to the Ottomans.

Sept. 1. 1400. The first of Moharrem 803, Timur enter'd the country of the Ottomans, and march'd against Sebaste. When he was come before the city, he encamp'd upon an eminence, to view its condition and situation; and the troops encamp'd round about it. He saw the place full of men lifting up their heads to heaven, and singing and rejoicing with musical instruments in their hands: the walls, whose marble foundations were in the bottom of a ditch full of water, lifted up their battlements to the very clouds: and the soldiers in garison, arm'd with cuirasses, raised a great cry towards heaven. Then advice was brought that the vanguard of Bajazet's army, commanded by his son Kerichtchi, and Temourtach, one of the greatest Emirs of the Ottoman empire, who had been sent to Sebaste, having learnt the march of Timur's army towards that city, were fled, and return'd into the very heart of Natolia. The Emirs Solyman Chah, Gehan Chah, and others, were order'd to pursue 'em with expedition; which they did, and came up with 'em beyond Cæsarea in Cappadocia, where they briskly attack'd 'em, and put them in disorder; after which, they made inroads, pillaging all the places near Cappadocia. They then return'd to the imperial camp before Sebaste, laden with the spoils of the Ottomans.

The city of Sebaste had walls of an extraordinary strength, being built of free-stone from the battlements to the very foundations, and each stone was three cubits long, and one thick. The wall was twenty cubits in height, ten in depth at the foot, and six at the top. There were seven gates, and those which opened were

of

of iron. It was built by Aladin Keikobade, and surrounded on the east, north and south sides, with a great ditch full of water; so that it was impossible to sap the walls on those sides, for they had no sooner sapp'd a cubit than the water enter'd: but it was not difficult to sap on the west side. The place was commanded by Mustafa with four thousand horse, who prepar'd to make a vigorous defence, being furnish'd with all sorts of arms and machines for war. The besiegers rais'd a platform higher than the towers over against the gate of Iran, upon which they planted their machines to throw stones. There were Arrades*, Manganes†, and Batalics‡: they likewise prepar'd battering rams to beat down the walls. On the west side the sappers kept continually at work, while arrows were discharg'd from both sides, which did a great deal of damage.

After the siege had continu'd eight or nine days, the violence of the battering rams, and the great stones which were shot, began to shake the walls, and make breaches. On the other hand, the sappers had work'd with so much diligence, that the towers were undermin'd only by flames which Timur order'd them to set on fire, and so the towers fell. This struck terror into the hearts of the besieged, who perceiving that the troops would soon enter the city, and take it by assault, chas'd Mustafa the governor out of it;

* A Seljukide king.

† The Arabian history of Mr. Vatier says, that Soliman, son of the emperor of Bagdad, was governor of Sebaste; which is a mistake. * Arabchah.

‡ Machines to cast fire.

† Machines to hurl stones.

‡ A kind of battering ram.

and

Book V. and the Cherifs, Cadis, and doctors, full of hopes, came to caſt themſelves at the emperor's feet, begging quarter and pardon for them and the gariſon. Their prayers, mingled with the cries of the women and children, ſoften'd Timur's heart: he granted quarter to all the Muſſulmans of the city, on paying the right of amneſty; but order'd that all the Armenians, and other Chriſtians, ſhou'd be made ſlaves. And as the major part of the cavalry, which had ſo ſtubbornly defended the place for Bajazet, were Armenians, he gave orders that four thouſand horſe ſhou'd be divided among the Tomans of the army, and flung into pits, and then cover'd with earth, to ſerve as an example to thoſe who ſhou'd follow their ſteps. He afterwards caus'd the walls of Sebaſte to be raz'd.

During the ſiege, advice was brought that Sultan Ahmed Gelair had fled from Bagdad, with Cara Youſef prince of the Turcomans, into Natolia. This oblig'd Timur to order ſome ſquadrons of horſe to go in purſuit of 'em; which they accordingly did, and overtook their baggage, which they pillag'd, and brought away captive the Sultaneſs Dilchade, eldeſt ſiſter of Cara Youſef, with his wifes and daughter. But he ſav'd himſelf from our hands; and being come ſafe before Bajazet, our troops return'd to the imperial camp.

CHAP. XVI.

Timur marches to Abuleſtan.

WHILE Timur was employ'd in the ſiege of Sebaſte, ſome robbers of Abuleſtan, which is the country of Zulcaderia, were ſo daring as to come and ſteal away the horſes of our ſoldiers, who were then buſy'd in the ſiege. For which reaſon, after the taking of the city, Timur march'd to Abuleſtan, to revenge himſelf on theſe robbers. He then ſent the lord Taharten to Arzendgian to guard his frontiers; and the Mirza Charoc ſet out in quality of chief of the ſcouts, accompany'd by the Emir Solyman Chah, and a ſelect troop, which compos'd the vanguard. The name of the ſoldiers were regiſter'd; and they had orders not to abandon the Mirza one moment. They ſoon arriv'd at Abuleſtan, from whence, on advice of their march, a great number of Turcomans fled into the mountains and deſarts. The Mirza purſu'd 'em ſo briskly, that he overtook 'em: theſe miſerable people ſeeing themſelves cloſely preſs'd, endeavor'd to ſave their lives by fighting; but after a weak defence, they were all routed and ſlain, as a puniſhment for their rash enterprizes. The Emirs return'd to the imperial camp laden with ſpoils, and a great many horſes, mules, oxen and ſheep. Afterwards Timur ſent a courier to Malatia, to ſummon the inhabitants to ſubmit to him. Muſtafa's ſon, who was governor of it, blinded with ignorance, which is an inſeparable quality of the Turcomans, and eſpecially of thoſe of Natolia, impriſon'd the meſ-

ſenger,

Book V. senger. Timur on this was incens'd against the governor, and march'd towards that place. On the first advice these cowards had of the march of the imperial standard, Mustafa's son fled out of the place with all his party. Timur at his arrival at Malatia, carry'd it the same day. The Georgians and Armenians were made slaves; but quarter was given to the Musulmans, after they had paid the tribute for an amnesty. Which money was distributed among the soldiers. Timur order'd the Emir Gehan Chah to go, with other Emirs, to make inroads in the country of Malatia: he harangu'd 'em, and with the most charming eloquence set before 'em the excellence of good warriors above other men; he told 'em that they ought utterly to exterminate the enemy, to take from 'em all means of renewing the war; and he spoke with a great deal of force of the punishment they ought to execute upon those who after pardon'd hostilities. After this discourse, he chose out of each Toman some good soldiers, whom he gave to the Emirs to strengthen their body of the army, and then he dismiss'd 'em. According to these orders they departed, and ravag'd the country on all sides, not stopping in one place: they gave no quarter to any one, and left not one habitation unpillag'd; so that from Malatia to the castle of Rakka[a], they made themselves masters of a great many places, some by fair means, and others by force; and after having constrain'd the natural princes of the country to submit to Timur, they return'd with a great quantity of riches, and join'd the imperial camp at Malatia, the government of which Timur gave to Can

[a] A castle in the country of Roum, frontier of Syria.

Osman

Osman a Turcoman. Thus the frontiers of the two kingdoms of Natolia and Syria were in a short time brought in subjection to Timur, whose fame spread it self thro all parts of the world: so that there was not one prince who was not struck with terror at the rumor of his conquests. Chap. 17.

CHAP. XVII.

The reasons of Timur's carrying his arms into Syria and Mesopotamia.

MAHOMET has told us, that when God resolves to destroy any one, he deprives him of common sense; conceals from him the methods he shou'd pursue, to protect himself from his destiny; and permits him to commit imprudent actions, which become the causes of his destruction, that the will of God may not fail of an accomplishment. The truth of these words was apparent in the fate of the countrys of Syria; for the governors of the citys of this kingdom, being blinded with excessive pride, turn'd from the ways of peace and justice, and committed actions as infamous as extraordinary, violating the rights of nations, and trampling upon the laws. Thus in the year 795, Timur, having made himself master of Bagdad, and conquer'd all Irac Arabi, sent to the Sultan Barcoc in Egypt an ambassador a doctor of Sam, whose learning, birth and genius distinguish'd him from the chief persons of the empire, as we have said before *. This Cheik being arriv'd at Rahaba, An. Dom. 1393.

* Book III. Chap. 32.

Book V. haba [1], he was seiz'd according to custom, that advice might be given the Sultan of Cairo of the arrival of an ambassador on his frontiers. Barcoc, being excited by the evil counsels of the Sultan Ahmed Gelair king of Bagdad, order'd this ambassador to be put to death, not reflecting on the consequences of so enormous a crime, nor the infamy of the action, since to insult an ambassador is to violate the right of nations. What is most surprizing is, that such a king as the Sultan of Egypt shou'd be ignorant how Sultan Mehemed, king of Carezem, in the same manner put to death the ambassador and merchants of the great emperor Genghiz Can; and what was the tragical end of so black and barbarous an action *; which wou'd be too long to recite here. However the destiny, which caus'd the ruin of Syria, blinded the mind of Barcoc, and procur'd the causes of his destruction.

* See history of Genghiz Can, Book II. Ch. 5.

Moreover, after the conquest of Azerbijana, and Irac Arabi, Timur being gone to make war in Capchac, and in Russia, Muscovy, Circassia, and the northern countrys, there was a battel between Atilmich Coutchin, governor of Avenic for Timur, and Cara Yousef, prince of the Turcomans, in which Atilmich was made prisoner. Cara Yousef loaded him with chains, and sent him to Sultan Barcoc at Cairo, who without any reflection upon the matter, continu'd his hostilitys against Timur, and confin'd Atilmich in a very close prison.

Timur being on the frontiers of Malatia, sent an ambassador with the following letter to Farrudge son of Barcoc, who succeeded his father in the throne of Egypt and Syria.

[1] A town upon the Euphrates, otherwise call'd Rahaba Mes Bec Ben Taouc, frontier of Syria, long. 75. lat. 34.

The

" The Sultan your father hath committed ſe- Chap. 17.
" veral criminal and odious actions againſt us;
" and among the reſt, the murder of our ambaſ-
" ſadors without the leaſt ſhadow of a cauſe,
" and the impriſonment of Atilmich, one of
" our officers, whom he hath ſeiz'd inſtead of
" ſending him back to us. As your father hath
" ſurrender'd up his life to God, which he had
" only upon truſt, the puniſhment of his crimes
" muſt be brought before the tribunal of the ge-
" neral judgment: but as for your part, it is
" neceſſary you ſhou'd have regard to the pre-
" ſervation of your ſelf and your ſubjects; and
" to that effect you ought forthwith to ſend back
" Atilmich, leſt, the effects of your wrath and
" vengeance, falling upon the people of Syria,
" and even of Egypt, our furious ſoldiers make
" a cruel ſlaughter of their perſons, and burn
" and pillage their effects. If you are ſo ſtub-
" born as to reject our counſel, you'll be the
" cauſe of the effuſion of the muſſulman blood,
" and the total loſs of your kingdom."

The ambaſſadors, at their arrival at Aleppo, were ſeiz'd according to cuſtom, that advice might be given the Sultan of their arrival. Farrudge, to imitate his father's example, ſent meſſengers to bind the ambaſſadors, and put 'em in priſon.

It is not to be wonder'd at, that a plebeian ſhou'd commit actions of cowardice: what then may we expect from a Circaſſian ſlave? Barcoc had been ſold ſeveral times; and when his power encreas'd thro the kindneſs of his gover-nor, who was alſo a Mameluc ſlave, he trai-terouſly ſlew his benefactor, and uſurp'd the kingdom: and as there had never been any king of his race, ſo he had not in him the leaſt appearance of royalty. Thus was Barcoc, and his

Book V. his ſon Farrudge was the crooked branch of an evil ſtock. He mounted his father's throne, tho but a child, no one having taught him how he ought to live: he had neither ſuffer'd heat nor cold; and was ignorant of policy and the art of war. In ſhort, the father was of an ill character, and the ſon without merit.

Timur being inform'd of Farrudge's raſhneſs, was tranſported with anger; and the fire of vengeance, which had lain lurking in his heart ſince the crimes committed by Barcoc, did ſo far exaſperate him, that he immediately reſolv'd to enter the Sultan's kingdom, and deſtroy every thing with fire and ſword: which reſolution he the more eaſily took up, in that Bajazet, with all his pride and menaces, had not dar'd to appear in the field of battel; and this proud Ottoman quietly ſaw our army beſiege, take, ruin and pillage Sobaſte and Malatia, and all the citys and towns of his kingdoms, as far as Kakhta, without making the leaſt defence. But theſe are all the hidden decrees of providence.

CHAP. XVIII.

Timur marches into the kingdoms of Syria and Egypt.

THE heroes who are deſtin'd to execute great affairs, are alſo endu'd with a diſcerning ſpirit, which makes thoſe enterprizes appear eaſy to 'em; and with reſolution to carry 'em on with all the ſtrength and power they are poſſeſs'd of: ſo that they eaſily accompliſh thoſe deſigns, which every one elſe accounts impoſſible. In effect, the Sultan of Egypt and Syria

Syria having added to his father's crimes, by the arresting and imprisoning of Timur's ambassadors; on advice of it, the wrath of our emperor was kindled, so that he resolv'd forthwith to chastise him for his fault: and tho the execution of this project appear'd impossible to the eyes of all politicians, or at least exceeding dangerous and difficult; yet the boundless zeal of Timur, made this great and perilous enterprize appear easy to him. The Emirs and principal lords of the state on their knees remonstrated to him, that it being but a short time since the troops return'd from the long campain in India, they had not repos'd themselves, before they march'd to the Georgian war, where they had been extremely fatigu'd, after re-iterated inroads in the mountains and rocks, and the conquest of the towns of that country; that after this they had march'd to Natolia, and conquer'd Sebaste, and all the citys and towns between that and Aleppo, where they had perform'd actions of the greatest valor; that therefore at present the expedition into Syria and Egypt appear'd very toilsom and difficult, as well in that the country was full of towns and fortresses, with lofty walls and impregnable castles, as in that the army of the Syrians was very numerous, good warriors, and provided with arms and every thing necessary to a vigorous resistance: for which reasons they besought his majesty to have the goodness to disband the troops, and send back the soldiers into their own countrys, to repose themselves for some time; and that afterwards fresh preparations might be made suitable to the greatness of this undertaking. Timur answer'd them, that victory was a gift which God liberally bestows on the princes whom he loves; that the great number of soldiers and arms had nothing to do with victory, which he had

Chap. 18.

Book V. had often prov'd: he put 'em in mind of the conqueſts he had gain'd with 'em, and the difficult enterprizes they had gone thro, tho they had believ'd 'em impoſſible; that it was requiſite they ſhou'd have the greateſt ambition; and then he wou'd anſwer for the ſucceſs, provided they truſted in God. The Emirs perceiving the emperor firm in his reſolution, loaded him with praiſes and applauſe; reſolving to follow him, and thinking only of the expedition into Syria, and the means of making themſelves maſters of that kingdom.

Then Timur put his army in order; and cauſing the braſs-drum to be beat, which is a ſign of his departure, all the ſoldiers began their march, every one in his proper poſt; and they took their road towards Syria.

CHAP. XIX.

The taking of the caſtles of Beheſna and Antap.

TIMUR order'd the Mirza Charoc to depart with ſeveral great Emirs, as chief of the ſcouts. Being arriv'd at Beheſna[a], they encamp'd there, where they were ſoon join'd by Timur with the whole army, who encamp'd on an eminence near the caſtle, to view the ſituation of the place, which is in a defile where ſeveral torrents flow: its walls were high and ſtrong, being built on the ridge of a ſteep mountain. The troops ſoon made themſelves maſters of the lower town, which they entirely ravag'd. The

[a] A fortreſs of Syria, between Aleppo and Malatia:

gover

governor of the caſtle for the Syrians was nam'd Mocbel, who relying upon the ſtrength of the caſtle, put himſelf in a poſture of defence. While Timur was examining the condition of the place, the beſieg'd diſcharg'd a great ſtone from their machines againſt the emperor's perſon, which fell upon the ground near his tent, and roll'd into the very tent. This ſtir'd up Timur's wrath, who immediately order'd the ſiege to be form'd, and ſhar'd the walls among the Tomans of the army, round which they erected twenty machines, and one of 'em upon the very ſpot where the ſtone fell. The firſt ſtone caſt from this machine ſtruck that of the beſieg'd, and broke it to pieces, which was reckon'd as a good omen. Then the Mirza Rouſtem arriv'd from Chiraz with the Perſian army, and join'd the imperial camp. The ſiege was continu'd, and the ſappers follow'd their work cloſe, while the Emirs and other brave men attack'd the place on all ſides, and ſoon made breaches in ſeveral parts of the walls, propping the foundations with ſtakes. Mocbel ſeeing himſelf reduc'd thus low, was ſeiz'd with fear, and reſolv'd to ſurrender: he ſent meſſengers ſeveral times to the emperor, to acquaint him with his weakneſs and want of power; and alledg'd as an excuſe for not coming before him, the dread he had of his imperial majeſty; beſeeching Timur to grant him quarter, which cou'd not in the leaſt prejudice him or his officers. Timur made anſwer, that he wou'd grant him his liberty, but not till after the taking of the place; becauſe as this caſtle was eſteem'd impregnable, if the army ſhou'd raiſe the ſiege, thoſe who had but little inſight into things, would imagine that our ſoldiers were not able to take it by force; and that a conqueror ſhould not be thought to have ſpar'd his enemy.

Chap. 19.

Book V. The 7th of Sefer 803, they were order'd to set fire to the breaches, and so the towers began to fall: which the befieg'd seeing, they were ſtruck with fear, and Mocbel loſt all hopes. He ſent the Çadi, the Imams and the Cherifs, with all the pearls and curioſitys he had, as a preſent to Timur. They addreſs'd themſelves to the Mirza Charoc, whom they beſought to be their advocate and protector. These doctors let the emperor know that Mocbel was the meaneſt of his majeſty's ſervants, that he ſincerely repented of his fault, humbly demanded pardon for it, and hop'd that the emperor wou'd not refuſe him the favor of ſparing his life. Timur, at Charoc's interceſſion, pardon'd not only Mocbel, but even all the gariſon: and the envoys contentedly return'd back, praiſing the emperor, and making vows for the prince Charoc. As ſoon as the good news was brought to the city, new gold and ſilver mony was coin'd, and friday prayers read in the name of the invincible Timur.

Octob. 7. 1400.

After this, the army decamp'd and march'd towards Antapa [a]. The walls of this city were exceeding ſtrong, being built of hewn ſtone, and ſurrounded with a ditch thirty cubits deep and near ſeventy broad, with a draw-bridge: the counterſcarp, which is of ſtone, has alſo a cover'd way, broad enough for a man to paſs on horſeback; which poſt was aſſign'd the archers. The Tartar army on their arrival at this place

[a] A town of Syria near Aleppo.

A Note taken from Arab Shah.

Timur left Calat-Erroum without attacking it; which he did not do, becauſe this place was very ſtrong; and Nafer-ed-din, ſon of Mouſſa, ſon of Sakari, made ſeveral advantageous ſallys upon Timur's army, and very much molested them.

found

found the principal persons gone out [a], and only a few poor citizens left, who had shut the gates upon 'em; but the city was full of goods and ammunition. When Timur came before the place, the gates were open'd, and the keys brought out to him: he fix'd a governor over it, and join'd it to his dominions. Chap. 20.

CHAP. XX.

The siege and taking of the city of Aleppo [b].

MAHOMET tells us, that the sole terror of his name made his conquests extend a month's journy: and we may with reason say, that Timur had the honor to resemble him in that, since the terror of his name was so great, that upon advice of the approach of his troops [c], kings and princes were so terrify'd, that they abandon'd their dominions; fear blinded their eyes, and darken'd their understanding, so that all their actions tended to their destruction.

While the army was in the quarters of Behesna and Antapa, Temourtach, [d] governor of Aleppo for the Sultan of Egypt, dispatch'd a con-

[a] The Arabian of M. Vatier says, that the governor of Antapa, nam'd Asquemar, sally'd out to defend himself; and being abandon'd and wounded, he fled to Aleppo, but was not pursu'd further.

[b] A city of Syria in the province of Cannaserin; it is the antient Beræa; long. 72. 25. lat. 35. 35.

[c] The Arabian says, that according to the computation of Berezem, Timur's comptroller, his army consisted of eight hundred thousand men.

[d] Arab Chah says, that Temourtach had agreed with Timur to betray the Sultan of Egypt.

Book V. rier to Grand-Cairo to give advice of it to his master. Whereupon the Sultan sent orders to the troops of all the towns and countrys of Syria, to march towards Aleppo, with all the arms and ammunition necessary for a vigorous defence. According to these orders, Chadoun [6], chief of the Emirs of Damascus, march'd to Aleppo at the head of a great army. The governors and generals of Hemse [7], Hama, Antioch, Tripoli, Napolos-Samaria, Balbec, Canaan, Gaza, Ramla or Rama, Jerusalem, Kerek, Calat-Errum and all the other countrys and lordships of the kingdoms of Syria, came to the same place, well equip'd and arm'd cap-a-pie: and in a short time there were got together a very numerous army. [8] Temourtach, governor of Aleppo, who was esteem'd one of the most considerable lords, assembled the chiefs of all those troops, and made the following speech to 'em, in order to know their opinions of the matter: "We ought not, "sirs, said he, to regard this affair which is "coming upon us as a slight thing; and it is "requisite we shou'd reflect seriously upon it be- "fore it happens. The prince who is this day "come against us, is exceeding powerful; his "and his officers have perform'd such extraor- "dinary actions, as are no where recorded in "antiquity. Wheresoever he hath march'd, he "hath always conquer'd the towns and fortres- "ses: and who ever attempted to resist him "always repented in the end, and suffer'd the

[6] M. Vatier calls him my lord Sudon.

[7] Principal citys of Syria.

[8] The Arabian tells us, that Timur sent an ambassador or herald to Aleppo, to summon the inhabitants to surrender; and that this herald was immediately put to death by Chadoun's order.

"mo

" moſt rigorous chaſtiſement. Conſider, ſirs, Chap. 20.
" how in a very ſhort time he has reduc'd many
" vaſt and flouriſhing empires; as thoſe of Ca-
" rezem, Turkeſtan, Coraſſana, Zabuleſtan, and
" India, as far as the great river of Ganges; the
" kingdoms of Tabareſtan, the two Iracs, Per-
" ſia, Couheſtan, Georgia, Azerbijana, and
" Diarbekir, with all their dependences, which
" he has wreſted out of the hands of the moſt
" powerful Sultans, and the moſt illuſtrious em-
" perors of the univerſe. He has eſtabliſh'd
" himſelf in thoſe places with ſuch an abſolute
" authority, that one of his lieutenants, with a
" few officers, maintains a whole city under
" his obedience; ſo that in the vaſt extent of
" the countrys of Iran and Touran, there is not
" a ſoul who dares act the leaſt thing againſt his
" orders. It ſeems as if the great riſe of this
" prince was owing to the peculiar protection
" of Heaven; if ſo, we ought not to tempt God.
" My advice therefore, in this conjuncture, is to
" treat with him by the ways of ſubmiſſion and
" obedience; to coin our mony, and to ſay the
" public prayers in his name; and to make uſe
" of the Cherifs, Imams, and doctors, as our
" mediators with him; ſeeing there are none but
" men vers'd in the law, and pious perſons, who
" have any acceſs to him, or whom he in the
" leaſt regards. At the ſame time we'll ſend
" him preſents and jewels, the moſt ſuita-
" ble to his grandure; that we may endeavour
" to keep him from coming near us, and by that
" means preſerve the repoſe of the city, and per-
" haps of the whole kingdom. He is a prince
" favor'd by fortune, powerful, active, glorious
" and ambitious: his wrath burns and conſumes
" a thouſand times fiercer than fire; and if
" it is kindled, the ſea it ſelf won't be able to

Book V. "quench it. Therefore now conclude upon "something: chuſe either peace or war, quiet "or miſery."

Temourtach having finiſh'd his ſpeech, thoſe who had moſt experience applauded his ſentiments, and agreed that it was the beſt method they cou'd take: but the majority, and eſpecially Chadoun governor of Damaſcus, were of a contrary opinion. Pride and preſumption were rooted in their hearts, and ignorance had ſo ſtupify'd 'em, that they gave no heed to what Temourtach had ſaid; and were ſo far from applauding him, that they made uſe of ſome haughty expreſſions, and tax'd him with cowardice, ſaying, that he who is afraid, is already fruſtrated of his deſires. "What compariſon, "ſay they, is there between this kingdom and all "thoſe you have mention'd? Their towns were "built only of mud and brick; but ours are "all of ſolid ſtone, cut out of the almoſt im-"pentrenable rock; they are fill'd with good "gariſons, and furniſh'd with plenty of ammu-"nitions of war and victuals; ſo that it wou'd "require a whole year's ſiege to force a ſingle one. "Why therefore has fear got poſſeſſion of your "hearts? Is it the great number of their cavalry "and infantry, or of their arms and equipages, "which terrifys you? Only view ours, and "you'll ſee the difference: our bows are of Da-"maſcus, our ſwords of Egypt, our lances of "Arabia, and our bucklers of Aleppo. In the "regiſters of this kingdom are ſixty thouſand "villages; out of each of which taking but a "few brave men, we ſhall complete an army, "which our vaſt plains won't be able to hold. "The houſes and walls of theſe Tartars are on-"ly of cords and canvas; while we live in good "fortreſſes, which are of hewn ſtone from the bat-

"tlements

" tlements to the very foundations." Thus fate, having reſolv'd upon the deſtruction of theſe unfortunate Syrians, inſpir'd ſentiments of pride into 'em: and theſe obſtinate people perſiſted in their error, notwithſtanding what Temourtach, and other men of ſenſe, cou'd ſay to divert 'em from the evil ſteps they had reſolv'd to take; who repreſented to 'em that the way of peace was always the moſt ſecure, conſidering the inconſtancy of fortune, and the ſmall hopes they cou'd reaſonably expect of gaining the advantage over their powerful enemy. The others on the contrary ſaid, they need only have courage and reſolution; which if they had not, all ſorts of diſorders and loſſes wou'd happen among 'em. After a great ſtruggle on both ſides, the latter carry'd it by a plurality of voices; and it was reſolv'd and concluded, that no one ſhou'd go out of the city, but that they ſhou'd fortify it with intrenchments, and with arrows and ſtones hinder the enemy from approaching the walls. Chap. 29.

Timur departed from Antapa with joy, and made two days journy of ſix or ſeven leagues each: he afterwards gave orders that they ſhou'd march but half a league a day, and at each encampment dig a trench round the army, and make a kind of rampart with their bucklers; ſo that in a whole week they march'd but one day's journy, and that with extraordinary precautions. The Syrians, ignorant of the art of war, attributed the ſlowneſs of their march to fear, believing the Tartars miſtruſted their own ſtrength: at which they became haughty and inſolent; for abandoning their firſt reſolution of not going out of the city, and which indeed was the leaſt dangerous, they rang'd themſelves in order of battel, and pitch'd their tents in the open plains.

The

Book V.

Nov. 8. 1400.

The 9th of Rabiulevel 803, which answers to the year of the Serpent, the army of Timur arriv'd in the neighborhood of Aleppo; and the Mirza Sultan Hussein, with some great officers, met the enemy's scouts: he fell upon 'em, tho superior to him in number, and at the first onset unhors'd a cavalier, whom he collar'd, and carry'd prisoner out of the field of battel. His officers also perform'd some glorious actions, and took two prisoners: the rest of the Syrian army fled into the city.

The same day the Mirza Aboubecre advanc'd with sixty men; and a great number of the enemy made a sally to repulse him. After a sharp skirmish, the two partys return'd to their several camps. The next day some brave Tartars advanc'd to skirmish; and having shewn themselves to the enemy, not one dar'd to attack 'em. The third day at sun-rising, Timur order'd the whole army to take horse, and with ensigns display'd, and at the sound of drums and kettledrums, to march towards the enemy's camp. Every one having on a coat of mail, a cuiras, and a helmet, they advanc'd in order of battel. The right wing was commanded by the Mirzas Miran Chah and Charoc, accompany'd by several great Emirs, as Solyman Chah and others: and the vanguard of this wing was led by the Mirza Aboubecre. The Sultan Mahmoud, whose lieutenant was the Emir Gehan Chah, had the command of the left wing; and his vanguard was brought up by the Sultan Hussein. The main body was commanded by Timur himself, who had before him a rank of bulky elephants, which had been taken in India, equip'd and caparison'd in the most magnificent manner. They serv'd as a rampart to this body of the army; for the towers on their backs were fill'd with archers and

and flingers of wild-fire: and these animals had drawn in their snouts like serpents. When the army was rang'd in order of battel, a Toman of the best horse of the army was order'd to post themselves on an eminence on the right side of the field of battel, and to keep their ground there, when the Syrians shou'd be put to the rout, and fly. Chap. 20.

The Syrian army was likewise rang'd in order: it was compos'd of a right and left wing, and a main-body; and advanc'd with its ensigns display'd. The kettle-drums and trumpets were the signal to begin, and both partys made the great cry of Allah Ecber *. The battel began by the skirmishers, who rush'd furiously out of their squadrons into the midst of the enemys, and who after some brave action, as either the slaughter of some noted person, or the taking a prisoner from the midst of the opposite batallion, return'd glorious to their post. Our right wing immediately fell upon the enemy's left with so much vigor, that it was routed, thro the valor of the Mirza Aboubecre, who enter'd the field of battel like a lion, and forc'd many of the enemy to fling away their arms, and abandon their ensigns; while others were slain, and the ground soon cover'd with helmets, head-pieces, and sabres, mix'd promiscuously among the dead carcasses. Our left wing likewise defeated the Syrians right, and entirely dispers'd 'em, some crying out for quarter, and others saving themselves by flight. Our main-body did not in the least yield to the other; and the elephants enter'd into the midst, and with their trunks toss'd some up into the air, and trampled others under their feet, no one being able to stop them.

* God is the greatest.

Chadoun and Temourtach having seen the strange manner of our soldiers fighting, quitted their

their former fierceneſs: they trembled at the ſight of the dreadful ſlaughter which was made in ſo ſhort a time; and ſeeing no other remedy, they fled, and enter'd the city by the gate of Mancouſa. The ſoldiers, perceiving their generals meaſures, likewiſe fled and diſpers'd themſelves; the major part took the road of Damaſcus, and were purſu'd by our men, who ſlew a great number, taking their arms and horſes from 'em; ſo that out of this prodigious number of Syrians there eſcap'd but one horſeman, who fled to Damaſcus to carry the news of the defeat.

After the rout of this army, part of 'em enter'd the city. The diſorder was ſo great in the chief ſtreet of Aleppo, and the gates ſo crouded, that one cou'd hardly paſs. Here was the greateſt ſlaughter ever mention'd; for to avoid the fury of the ſword, they flung themſelves upon one another into the ditches, which were ſoon fill'd with men and horſes. On the other hand, our men with a ſingle pike often run three or four of the enemy thro at a time, in the throng at the gate; ſo that the dead bodys were pil'd upon one another to the very plinth of the walls; and at length a paſſage was made over the ditch upon thoſe bodys, level with the draw-bridge. There one might ſee the horſes and their riders mix'd promiſcuouſly together, and cover'd with blood and dirt; ſome pierc'd with arrows, and others with their brains daſh'd out; one with a coat of mail, his head bending beneath the blow of a war-club; another falling without his head, with his ſword faſt claſp'd in hand.

During this horrible ſlaughter, a body of the army was ſent to pillage the Syrians camp, wherein they found the governor's pavilion, with his tents, furniture, arms, and ſeveral beautiful horſes

horſes richly harneſs'd. Each of the ſoldiers took his ſhare of the ſpoils, of which there were great abundance. At length all the army march'd with ſo much vigor to the general aſſault, that they enter'd the city the ſame day, which was the 11th of Rabiulevel 803. Timur permitted 'em to pillage the city of Aleppo; and they ſpar'd neither the markets nor any of the houſes: they carry'd away the women and children, the horſes, mules, and all the cattel; beſides a prodigious quantity of gold and ſilver, arms, curious furniture, precious ſtones, pearls, veſſels of gold, the women's rich habits and ornaments. All theſe were taken by the ſoldiers, who render'd no account of 'em to any one. Chap. 21. Nov. 11. 1400.

CHAP. XXI.

The caſtle of Aleppo attack'd and taken.

CHADOUN and Temourtach, not imagining themſelves ſecure in the city, enter'd the caſtle; which was a fortreſs upon the ridge of a high ſteep rock[1], ſurrounded with a ditch thirty cubits wide, and ſo deep that there is a ſufficient quantity of water to carry a boat[2]. From the ſurface of the water to the bottom of the walls of the caſtle, which is the ſhelving of the mountain, is about

[1] The caſtle of Aleppo is not built on a rock, but on a mountain of earth covered with free-ſtone.

[2] The author ſeems not to have ſeen the ditch any more than the caſtle; for if the ditch was full of water, a veſſel might ſail in it.

a hundred cubits; and it is so smooth and steep, that 'tis impossible to ascend it on foot, because this shelving is cover'd with free-stone and flat polish'd bricks. The strength of this place render'd these two governors insolent; they undertook to make a vigorous defence, resolving to die rather than surrender: they made great crys in token of their resolution; and ran upon the walls and towers, to give orders to the garison. They caus'd the great and little kettle-drums to be beat, and in good earnest began to insult the besiegers: they cast a great quantity of wild-fire, and pots fill'd with sulphur, which in their effects resembled a thunderbolt; as likewise stones and arrows: by which they let us know that they were in a condition to defend themselves.

Timur having enter'd the city as a conqueror, encamp'd over-against the castle, ordering his troops to range themselves round about the ditch; for the out-parts consisted only of a single key unguarded: then there were nothing to be seen but showers of arrows, which the besiegers incessantly discharg'd with so much vigor, that none of the besieg'd dar'd to get upon the walls. In the mean while the sappers went down into the ditch, and favor'd by the archers, cross'd the water upon floats; and being come to the other side, they began to work upon the bottom of the mountain, and to shake the stones of the walls: but the besieg'd having perceiv'd their design, five of their bravest men went out by the great gate, and being resolv'd either to lose their lives or succeed in the design, they ty'd a cord to their waste, the end of which others held from the top of the walls, that they might descend and get up again, notwithstanding the steepness of the shelving, without fear of

of falling. These five men accordingly went down, and ran sword in hand upon the sappers; but the Tartars, who had orders to back the sappers, sally'd out of their tents, and slew 'em with their arrows. The besieg'd on this were afraid, and drew up again the five dead bodys with the cords. From that time no one dar'd so much as look thro the loop-holes of the walls, so far were they from making sallys. Then Timur, whose advantages were consider'd rather as the scourge of God, than as an effect of human power, sent by an ambassador the following letter to the besieg'd, who now began to conclude that obstinately resisting him wou'd in the end produce repentance: "The Almighty having reduc'd under my command the greatest part of the kingdoms of Asia, my armys can't be stop'd either by walls or fortresses: the great number of soldiers or arms are not able to oppose the just effects of my wrath, nor ward off the deadly blows of my vengeance. I believe the best way you can now take, is to have pity on your own lives; otherwise you'll be the murderers of your selves, your wives and children, and must answer for the crime of having shed their blood." Chap. 21.

The besieg'd seeing no other refuge, were constrain'd to give way to force. Chadoun and Temourtach took the keys of the castle, treasurys, and magazines; and being accompany'd by the Cherifs, Cadis, Imams and nobles of the country, open'd the gate, and in an humble manner came to cast themselves at Timur's feet. Chadoun, Temourtach, and other chiefs, with a thousand soldiers, were shar'd among the Tomans, and put in irons. Soldiers were sent to the castle, who brake down the battlements

Book V. of the wall. Timur sent an embassy to Grand-Cairo, to the son of Barcoc, Ellen Bougai Davatdar, whom they had seiz'd in the castle, with advice that he had laid Chadoun and Temourtach in irons, by way of reprisal for Atilmich, and that he wou'd not set 'em at liberty till he shou'd come back to him; that he must send Atilmich immediately, if he was willing to preserve the lives and liberty of those two governors, and of all the other slaves he had taken. Timur fix'd the place where Ellen Bougai was to meet him at his return; then he went to the castle of Aleppo, to take the diversion of a very beautiful prospect, and also to view the situation of the city and country. He staid there two days. He order'd the Emir Gehan Chah to guard the gate of the castle and the riches within it, which consisted of the treasures which several kings had amass'd there, and an infinite number of jewels and furniture which the citizens had carry'd into it to preserve 'em from pillage. The whole amounted to immense sums, part of which he distributed among the Emirs and soldiers. He afterwards left the baggage and cumberlom things belonging to the army, with his treasure, in the castle of Aleppo; and he nam'd eight considerable Emirs for governors of this strong place, and guardians of the treasures he left there. And after fifteen days residence at Aleppo, he began his march, to continue his conquests in the rest of Syria.

---

* A note taken out of the history of Timur-Bec by Cherefeddin Ali.

During the fifteen days that Timur staid in Aleppo, he order'd the doctors to come before him, to propose to them hard questions, and from thence get an opportunity to put them to death. He said to Ahmed Ben Arab Chah (author of the Arabian

CHAP. XXII.

The taking of the towns and castles of Emessa and Hama.

WHEN Timur lay encamp'd without the city of Aleppo, he sent the Mirzas Pir Mehemed and Aboubecre, with the Emirs Soliman Chah, Sevindgic and others, as scouts towards Hama*. These lords soon made themselves masters of the lower town; but they cou'd not take the castle, because it was exceeding

---

Arabian history of M. Vatier) There have lately been slain some of our men, and some of yours; which of the two are martyrs? This question, said Arab Chah, was formerly propos'd to Mahomet by an Arabian peasant; and I'll return the same answer as he did. Timur demanded what answer he gave. The peasant, answer'd Arab Chah, said to Mahomet, Lord, apostle of God, some fight thro shame, others thro valor, others thro a zeal for religion: who is the martyr? He who fights for religion, answer'd Mahomet, and for the honor and advantage of the word of God. Very well, says Timur, you cou'd not have given a better answer: and then he related to 'em all his victorys. I have one foot, says he, in the grave; but yet I have employ'd my life to a good purpose; for I have conquer'd, &c. Arab Chah then said, In gratitude for the favors you have receiv'd from heaven, pardon these men of learning. I never put any one to death, answer'd Timur, purposely; you are the cause of your own deaths: but thro God I grant you quarter. Then every one had liberty of speaking, and endeavor'd to answer first, as in the college.

When Timur, says the Arabian, design'd harm to any one, he did it without delay; but when good, he remitted the execution of it to another.

Timur cut off several heads to erect a trophys.

* A town of Syria, of which the geographer Abulfeda was prince; long. 70. 40. lat. 35.

Book V. strong. After the affair of Aleppo was finish'd to Timur's satisfaction, he went to Hama, and in his way took three or four castles. At the arrival of the great imperial standard before Hama, those who were in the castle, seeing this innumerable multitude of troops from the top of their walls, imagin'd it wou'd be best for 'em to go out immediately with what presents they had, to offer the keys of the place, and submit to Timur. They accordingly did so, and addressing themselves to the Mirzas who were come before as scouts, they besought 'em to intercede and obtain quarter for 'em. The Mirzas promis'd 'em this favor, and quarter was granted 'em; but their spoils were given to these scouts. Timur staid twenty days at Hama, for the refreshment of his troops and horses; during which time he had apartments built for himself, the Mirzas, and principal Emirs of his court, and a magnificent Divan Cané, where the councils of the state were held; so that this place in less than two or three weeks became a second city.

In the mean while the Emirs made another attempt, to persuade the emperor to stay at this place, representing, that for two years past the troops had been either on the march, or employ'd in a battel; that the enemy had a great number of cavalry, whose horses were fresh and not fatigu'd, and being in their own country, had vast advantages over us; and that if his majesty approv'd of it, they wou'd go and repose themselves on the sea-shore at Tripoli in Syria, where they wou'd take up their winter-quarters; so that the horses might have some rest after their fatigues, and at the beginning of the spring they might march with vigor to exterminate the enemy. Timur wou'd not hearken to

their

their reasons, tho they were plausible; but answer'd, that they ought to make dispatch, that the enemy might have no time to recover themselves. Whereupon he order'd 'em to take horse, and march towards Emessa[1]. One of our great Emirs went thither first as a scout, and had the good nature to advise the inhabitants, telling 'em that their resistence wou'd serve only to ruin 'em, and it wou'd be pity so many shou'd be destroy'd; that if they wou'd go meet the emperor, and submit to him, he wou'd answer for the succels, and their lives and even their effects shou'd be spar'd. These words, which on one hand caus'd fear, and on the other hope, in the people of Emessa, made an impression upon 'em; so that the principal men of the city took up a resolution to obey Timur; they came out loaded with presents, and ran to meet him; they cast themselves at his feet, kissing the earth, which they cover'd with gold and precious stones: they presented him with the keys of the town, upon which Timur had the goodness to prohibit any one's insulting 'em either in their persons or goods. He gave 'em for their governor Ali Kebet, whom he order'd to have a singular regard to 'em, and to be their protector on all occasions.

Chap. 22.

[1] Emessa or Hems, a town of Syria near Hama.

CHAP. XXIII.

Conquest of the town of Balbec.

TIMUR decamp'd from Emessa, and continuing his road towards Balbec, reach'd a day's journey, and encamp'd near a fall-pit, from whence he sent out a body of army to make inroads towards Gaza, and to pillage the country along the shore of the Mediterranean. When the emperor was arriv'd at Balbec, all the army admir'd the beauty of the walls of this town: they are of a prodigious size, and there is one corner of the castle, which looks towards the gardens, twenty-eight cubits long, sixty and seven high. This town is very famous well for the beauty of the walls, as for the height of its buildings; and it is believed to have been built by Solomon's order, by the assistance of genii, over whom he had an absolute command. Notwithstanding these advantages it was reduc'd by our troops as soon as they appear'd before it. There were in it so great a quantity of fruits, pulse, and goods, that our soldiers were furnish'd with all manner of necessarys for a long time. Then Timur sent the Emirs Cheik Noureddin, Chameli, Mevindgic, and others, to advance towards Damascus at the head of thirty thousand horse.

CHAP. XXIV.

Timur marches to Damascus, capital of Syria.

THEY said no long as Balbec, because it was situated near a mountain, which render'd the air exceeding cold, and it being the beginning of winter, there fell abundance of snow and rain.

The 3d of Jumazi-ol-evel, the sun being in the sixth degree of Capricorn, Timur departed from Balbec, and after having march'd a day's journey, he halted to visit the tomb of the prophet Noah, whose blessing having besought, he set out for the conquest of Damascus. The body of the army, which had been sent out to make inroads towards Said and Beirut, return'd, after having ravag'd all the maritim country of Syria, and join'd the imperial camp, loaded with the spoils of that country. As Syria was at that time under the dominion of the Sultans of Egypt, the Syrians were continually sending couriers to carry the news of our army's march to Farrage Ion of Barcoc their king, whom they continu'd to press so assiduously to come to oppose Timur, that at their persuasion he rais'd an army, which he equip'd with great expence and magnificence, and above all, the cavalry, which was the best in the world. In this condition he took the road to Damascus, which he was no sooner enter'd, than he us'd all his precautions to examine the fortifications, to post guards and centinels every where, to put the walls in good order, and to augment the entrenchments as well of the city as of the castle.

Jan. 3. 1400.

Book III. In fine, he took all needful precautions: and using policy with strength, he sent to Timur, in quality of ambassador, an eloquent and perfect villain, who the better to cover his intentions took the habit of a poor religious. He order'd him for his companions two young villains, to each of whom he gave a poison'd dagger, with orders to use their endeavours to murder Timur during the audience of the ambassador. Timur's arrival near Damascus, these villains join'd the court, and came to the foot of the imperial throne to pay their compliments: they had several times the honor to approach his majesty, and very favorable opportunities to execute their designs: but the Almighty who was always Timur's guardian and protector, would not suffer an ever to come to perfection. Coja Massoud Semnani, one of the secretarys of the council, imagin'd by the meetings of these rash fellows that they had some evil intention: wherefore he communicated his thoughts to some, who related 'em to the emperor, who order'd 'em to be search'd: and found in their boots poison'd daggers. The chief of the villains perceiving himself, his companions discover'd, declar'd to the and the resolution they had taken to murder Timur. The emperor return'd thanks to his sovereign protector; and said, "That the maxim of kings to murder ambassadors, was "would be a crime to suffer the relations of "comrades, to live, who the cloth'd in the habit of a religious, is a monster of corruption "perfidy." Then he order'd, that according to the passage which tells us that treason shall the head of the traitor, he should be with the same dagger with which he would have committed

mitted this abominable action, and his infa- Chap. 5.
mous carcase to be burnt for an example to others. His two assassins had their nose and ears cut off; but were not put to death, because Timur won'd send 'em back with a letter to the Sultan of Egypt.

Timur took horse, and having rang'd his troops in good order, march'd towards Damascus, near which he encamp'd at the foot of a hill near Cobbei Sejar: a trench was dug for precaution round the army, and fortify'd with bucklers and palisadoes. Then Timur ascended the hill to examine the situation of Damascus and its outparts. He sent scouts to skirmish with the enemy, and to keep 'em in play: the Emirs Sevindgi, Sainte Maure, and others, advanc'd, and were back'd by the Seid Cojs of the right wing, and the Mirza Rouستem of the left, at the noise of kettle-drums, hautboys and flutes, mix'd with the soldiers crys. By next morning they attack'd the enemy's scouts, whom they put to flight, after having slain several, and taken others prisoners. Then Timur, to revenge himself for the scandalous action of the Sultan of Egypt, order'd Chadoun and the other prisoners brought from Aleppo, to be put to death.

The same night there happen'd an affair as ridiculous as extraordinary. The Mirza Sultan Hussein, after a debauch, was excited by some seditious Persians to revolt against the emperor his grandfather; and he accordingly went to the city of Damascus, and listed himself into the Syrian service: which adventure gave the Syrians a great deal of satisfaction, imagining it won'd produce to 'em considerable advantages. They conducted the prince into the city with a great

Book V. deal of pomp and ceremony. Farrudge, imagining the union with this prince would deliver him from all troubles, and cause a calm after the storm was over, treated him with all possible respect. The officers of this Mirza, Amour and Hussein son of Barat Coja, gave advice of what had pass'd to the Emir Chamchi, who inform'd the emperor thereof. At break of day they decamp'd, and after a league's march towards the south-side of Damascus, which looks upon the country of Canaan, Egypt, and the desart of Arabia, they encamp'd again, and built a wall about the height of a man round the camp, and dug a trench round the wall. The scouts went out to ravage the country in the neighborhood of Damascus: and Timur plac'd both infantry and cavalry round the walls of the camp to guard them in the night.

Two days after Timur sent Padi Chah Badoram ambassador to the Sultan of Egypt with the following letter. "You are not ignorant "of the effects which circumspection and ex- "actness produce; and know that emulation and "jealousy, mix'd with ambition, are the mo- "tives which oblige conquerors to raise armys, "undertake the most dangerous wars, and "make themselves masters of countrys and king- "doms; and that by this means they preserve "the honor of their crown, and acquire eternal "fame. All this great noise of the world is not "so much to heap up riches, as to acquire ho- "nor; for half a loaf every day is sufficient for

---

* The Arabian remarks, that the Mirza Sultan Hussein had a handsom head of hair, which they shav'd off, and having honor'd him with a robe, dress'd him after the fashion of their country: and that he had quitted Timur, before afraid to see him with his army in so miserable a condition.

"the

"the nourishment of a man. We have several "times demanded Artimich of you, and you "have not once offer'd to send him to us; "but have always started some difficultys, "and delay'd an affair of such consequence. "This hath oblig'd us to make war in your "country, which will bring ruin and desolation "upon your subjects. If rocks could speak, "they would tell you that this action of yours "portends no good to you. Yet, notwithstand-"ing your unreasonable proceedings, if you'll "cause the money to be coin'd, and the public "prayers to be read in our name, that shall stop "our fury. This you ought to do, if you have "any compassion for your self or subjects. "Our soldiers are like roaring lions, which "want their prey: they seek to kill their ene-"my, pillage his effects, take his towns, and "overturn his edifices to the very foundations. "There are but two ways to chuse: either "peace, the consequences of which are quiet "and joy; or war, which produces disorder "and desolation. I have set both before you: it "is your part to follow one or other. Consult "your prudence, and make your choice. Fare-"well."

The ambassador having carry'd this letter, they receiv'd him with very particular honors, contrary to their usual custom: at which reception they practis'd all the ceremonys us'd towards the most illustrious men. And as fireworks are very often made in this country, they assembled a great many persons of this trade, who pass'd in review before the ambassador, to shew their strength and power: but they were not ignorant that these were no more than atoms in comparison of the court of Timur. After they had endeavor'd to please the ambassador by abun-

Book III. abundance of civil treatment, and several honours bestow'd on him, they sent him back; and he was follow'd by several lords of the court of the Sultan of Egypt, who came to cast themselves at the foot of the imperial throne, and spoke to Timur in these words. "Most excellent and formidable emperor, we "know that we appear before your majesty as "your meanest servants; yet we are full of "respect and submission. We have resolv'd to "send Atilmich to your august court within "five days: and if after that you deign to "pardon our faults, we'll omit no occasion of "giving you marks of a perfect obedience; "and as far as depends on the power of the "Sultan, and the capacity of his subjects, they "shall endeavor to merit by their services the "good-will of your majesty, and the friend-"ship of the illustrious lords and officers of "your imperial court." The emperor, being touch'd with their discourse, which was cover'd over with an appearance of sincerity, gave 'em a kind reception, worthy of his clemency; he made 'em presents of vests, and with very obliging expressions assur'd 'em of the sincerity of his heart; he afterwards sent 'em back very well contented and pleas'd with having succeeded so well in their embassy. And this appearance of an accommodation occasion'd joy in the inhabitants of Damascus.

CHAP. XXV.

Timur gives battel to the Sultan of Egypt, and gains the victory.

AFTER ten days encampment, an account was taken of the state of the army; upon which Timur order'd they shou'd depart from thence directly to encamp at Gouta, that the horses might feed in that delicious place. The army had no sooner began this motion, than thro their ill-fortune, the inhabitants of this country imagin'd that this march proceeded from weakness, and that our troops were fled towards the Levant. They likewise thought that so numerous an army cou'd not decamp without falling into some disorder, and that if they laid hold on this opportunity to attack the rear of the Tartar army, they cou'd not fail of defeating 'em; that the surprize wou'd so embarass the soldiers, that they must be constrain'd to disperse and fly; and that this action wou'd be a great honor to 'em in all future ages. In this hope the whole army of Syria took horse, and made a sally out of Damascus: the populace join'd with the soldiers, some having swords, and others sticks and stones in their hands; and as there were prodigious numbers of 'em, they had the rashness to fall on our rear. There came so great a multitude out of the city, that the whole plain was cover'd with horse and foot. The cavalry were arm'd with cuirasses, and were perfectly well equip'd; the infantry were arm'd with bows and arrows, swords, bucklers and axes, presuming in victory: and there were never

Book V. ver seen before so great a multitude assembled together.

Timur being inform'd of this ridiculous rash action, knew what fate had resolv'd on the Syrians destruction: he implor'd the assistance of God, and reflected seriously upon the conduct he ought to use in this conjuncture. He gave orders that the whole army shou'd face upon the enemy, and that all the cavalry shou'd dismount to encamp; he caus'd a kind of wall to be made with the bales of the baggage, prop'd up with great stones; and being thus entrench'd, they erected their tents and standards. Then Timur got upon an eminence with fifty of his favorites, and according to custom, on his knees addressed himself to God in prayer: he order'd his cuirass and other arms to be brought him, and then he took horse full of confidence, commanding the drums to be beat, and the great cry made. In the mean while the troops of our left wing arriv'd all in good order; and as the Syrians were already very near us, Timur sent instructions to the Mirzas Miran Chah, Charoc, and Aboubocre, who commanded the right wing, to attack the enemy on one side, while the Emirs of the left wing shou'd fall upon 'em on the other. In this order they advanc'd against the enemy, and gave 'em battel. The Emirs Seyindgic, Chamelik, Seid Coja, Sainte Maure, and others, as well of the vanguard as of the rear, began the fight; being back'd by the main-body. And as the two wings fell furiously upon the unfortunate Syrians, there was so great a slaughter, that the whole plain was cover'd with blood. After an obstinate battel, victory incin'd to Timur: the Syrians were defeated, and repuls'd as far as to the gates of Damascus, having above half their soldiers slain, and a great part dispers'd;

dispers'd; but this part was afterwards driven Chap. 61
taken by the Tartars, who slew vast numbers of
'em. There were nothing to be seen but heaps
of dead bodys, and rivulets of blood, arrows,
and standards, mix'd together. Scarce any escap'd
the fury of our soldiers, except those who ent-
ter'd the city. This signal victory was gain'd
the 19th of Jumazi-ul-evel 803, which answers to Jan. 19.
the year of the Crocodile. During the heat of 1400.
the battel, the Mirza Sultan Hussein, who com-
manded the Syrians left wing, was sent against
the Mirzas Miran Chah and Cherok; but Toqalic
Coutchin, an officer of the Mirza Cherok, fell
upon him, and having seiz'd his horse's bridle,
brought him to his master, who gave advice of
it to Timur. His majesty being inform'd, gave
orders that Hussein should be put in prison, and
loaded with chains, as a punishment for his actions:
but he was shortly after set at liberty, thro the
intercession of the Mirza Charok, yet not till
they had given him the bastinado, as order'd by
the law of Yasec. This was not so much a pu-
nishment to him, as the shame and continual re-
proaches he receiv'd from the whole court; and
he was never permitted to enter the emperor's
hall.

CHAP. XXVI.

Taking of the city of Damascus.

THE next day our army decamp'd, and
went to erect the standard near the city, at
the foot of a hill, while the news of the late
victory spread it self every where. As long as
they departed at the noise of drums and trumpets
and

Book V. and Timur order'd that the army shou'd march in order of battel, and place before 'em a great rank of elephants, as well to augment the magnificence of the army, as to strike terror into those who had never seen such things. It is remarkable, that from one end of the right wing to the extremity of the left, the Tartar army took up between three and four leagues of ground. Then having their elephants at their head, the army got upon a rising ground, from whence there was a prospect of the city, that the enemy might see their power, and be dishearten'd. By this means all the inhabitants of the country, as well soldiers as others, were satisfy'd of the multitude of this army, of which before they had but an imperfect knowledge. All the cavalry being upon this hill, the drum was beat, and the whole army made the usual great cry, and then they advanc'd nearer the city, to encamp on the bank of a deep rivulet, which serv'd instead of a trench; and with their great and little bucklers they made a sort of rampart round the camp. After these precautions, both the cavalry and infantry cross'd the rivulet, and the army, according to custom, rang'd themselves in order of battel in sight of the enemy. There was a vast number of Syrians, but the disadvantages they had had the preceding day had so discourag'd 'em, that they dar'd not advance. The Sultan of Egypt held a council with his great Emirs, as Nouruz Hafezi, Yakn Bec, Chadountaz, Cheikh Hajeki, and others, upon what they shou'd do in this conjuncture. Some, who were attach'd to the inhabitants interest more than to the Sultan's, said, that tho they had receiv'd a great shock, the city and walls were entire; that there yet remain'd a vast number of soldiers, who were disposed to fight; that the

he best way would be to make a second sally,
nd afterwards to defend the city and fortress.
The others, who had greater experience, and
were more attached to the Sultan's interest, were
f another mind; they thought that men of sense
ou'd not be prepossess'd with chimeras; that
hen the Tartars were disorder'd by a decamp-
ent, without precaution, or being upon their
uard, and not in the least expecting a battel,
he Syrians with their great numbers, and in
ood order, went to surprize 'em, and attack
heir rear, with all possible diligence and arti-
ce; yet every one knows what the success was;
rom whence they concluded, that the best reme-
y wou'd be for them to take the road of Egypt,
n the night, under favor of the darkness, accor-
ing to the proverb, which tells us, That he who
ains his life, gains all: than in the town and
astle there were a great number of soldiers, as
ell as inhabitants, who were capable of defend-
ng themselves; and wou'd use all their efforts to
reserve their lives, their wives and familys: that
f fortune favor'd 'em, and they sav'd the city,
he king won'd always continue master of it; but
n the contrary, if the Tartars took it, and burnt
nd destroy'd every thing, the king and court at
east wou'd be secur'd from the public desola-
ion.

The whole Egyptian council was of this opi-
ion; upon which Farrudge sent an ambassador
with presents to Timur, and a letter in these
erms. "The affair which happen'd yesterday
" was a popular sedition, in which we had no
" hand; a number of ignorant young fellows of
" the common sort, had the rashness to sally out
" of the city, and receiv'd the punishment they
" merited. For our part, we have no other de-
" sign than to keep our words, as we promis'd be-

Book V. "fore: and if your highneſs is willing to
"a ceſſation of arms for this day only, we
"now we will execute whatever you order,
"and endeavour to repair the damage com-
"mitted againſt our will, and obtain pardon
"for it."

The ambaſſador acquitted himſelf of his inſtructions: and after he had made known to the emperor the ſubject of his coming, he or the army to return, and encamp where it was.

When night was come, the Sultan of Eg took horſe, accompany'd by the principal lo of his court; and having diſpos'd every th in a proper order for his departure, he went of Damaſcus at midnight, and took the road Grand-Cairo. A Tartar deſerter named Tha mac, came with expedition to find the Mi Charoc, to whom he gave an account of all had paſs'd. This Mirza ran to inform Timur it, carrying Thacmac with him. He order that the troops of the right wing, under command of the Mirza Abouhecre, ſhould veſt the city on one ſide, and thoſe of the l wing, commanded by the Emir Gehan Chah the other, that no one might get out. At t ſame time Timur ſent ſome of the moſt famo Emirs of his army, with a great body of cavalry, in purſuit of the Sultan. Theſe brave me march'd with ſo much diligence, that they over took him: they ſlew ſeveral of his men, a oblig'd the others to abandon their horſes, camels, and all their equipage, to ſave their liv ſo that the ways were cover'd with goods w they had caſt away to fly the better. On br of day, Timur took horſe, and ordered the ſuburbs of Damaſcus to be pillag'd. Next day, Jan. 23. the 23d of Jumaziulevel, after ſun-riſing, the whole army were commanded to march in order

of

of [illegible], and after having paſs'd the gardens and ſuburbs, he inveſted the city. This order was readily executed; and Timur went to lodge in the palace of Caſrablac, ſituate over-againſt the fortreſs, and built by Malek Ezzaher, formerly Sultan of Egypt. The Mirzas, Emirs, and ſoldiers took up their quarters in the ſuburbs; where they found a great quantity of furniture, beaſts, fruits, and all ſorts of merchandiſe.

Chap. 25.

Timur, who never omitted any opportunity of paying his devotions, viſited the tombs of Omme Selma and Omme Habiba, two of the wives of Mahomet; and afterwards that of Belalhabechi, whoſe interceſſion he implor'd; and then he return'd to his camp. As ſoon as the inhabitants of Damaſcus ſaw themſelves beſieg'd in form, they were ſo ſeiz'd with fear, that all the Cheriffs, the Cadis*, Imams, doctors, and other lawyers of the city, open'd the gates themſelves, and with an entire ſubmiſſion went out, and carrying with 'em preſents, caſt themſelves at the foot of the imperial throne. They repreſented their miſery, and the great diſpleaſure they had at what was paſs'd; and they beſought the emperor to have pity on the Muſſul-

---

* An excellent [illegible]

The chief of this deputation was the Cadi Validdin ſon of Chaldoun, who [illegible] in his [illegible] with him: this [illegible] and the [illegible] who [illegible] with him, dine at his [illegible]. As that Validdin had travell'd into Africa, Timur was [illegible] of hearing his diſcourſe concerning the kings of that country; [illegible] was well verſed in the hiſtory of [illegible] and [illegible] ignorant of what paſs'd [illegible].

Timur gave [illegible] of honour to theſe lawyers, and ſent 'em away contented.

He eſteems him who comes to ſee him, according to the value of his preſents, and preſently after gives him up as a prey to death.

mans, and only grant 'em quarter for themselves and for their familys. They made several presents to the officers; and after having submitted to pay the tribute for ransoming their lives, they return'd home. Timur gave a commission to the Emirs for receiving the tax, and sent 'em into the city. These Emirs were Cheik Noureddin, Chamelik, and Allahdad, accompany'd by the comptrollers Goja Mahmoud Chehab and Gelaleslam, who enter'd into Damascus, and according to custom wall'd up seven gates of the city, leaving open only the gate of Feradis, without which they kept their office. The receivers having drawn from the city the sums agreed upon, brought 'em to the Emirs. The friday following the Coutbe, or prayer for the king, was read in the famous mosque of the Ommiades Califs, in the name and titles of the august emperor Timur.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Taking of the castle of Damascus.

THO the condition of the city was as bad as we have represented, yet Yezdar Coutual, governor of the castle, confiding in the strength of this place, which was one of the most noted fortresses in the world, resolv'd to defend himself. Its walls were of great pieces of rock, very high and regularly built; it had round it a ditch of about twenty cubits, and

---

Timur caus'd some of his soldiers to be punish'd for having us'd violence after the publication of quarter.

the place was supply'd with all sorts of ammunition. The garison began first to cast stones out of their machines, as also arrows, and pots full of naphtha and wild-fire, to hinder our approach. Nevertheless orders were given to all the generals of Tomans and Hezares to advance towards the castle, and besiege it inform. The necessary preparations were made, and the battering-rams and machines to cast stones were got ready; and the soldiers rais'd three platforms of such a height, that they commanded the castle. Then afterwards entirely drain'd the ditch; then the sappers advanc'd to the foot of the wall, and began to work with all imaginable diligence, notwithstanding the great stones the besieg'd continually shower'd on 'em; which were answer'd by those from the machines erected on the platforms, and which hinder'd the besieg'd appearing so often in view. From our machines were likewise cast pots fill'd with wild-fire like theirs, besides the arrows which constantly fell upon the place like hail. The siege being divided among the Emirs, every one took the walls on his side with battering-rams and other machines. Chap. 27.

During these transactions, Timur order'd the Mirzas Miran Chah and Charoc, and the Emirs Solyman Chah, Gehan Chah and others, to go and take up their winter-quarters near Canzan, that their soldiers might refresh themselves, and their horses might get some pasture. The rest of the army advanc'd in the siege with a great deal of vigour: they heated great pieces of the rock by putting fire underneath, and casting vinegar thereon, and then with their hammers they broke 'em, and took 'em out of the walls: and when the wall and bastions were ready to fall, they prop'd 'em up with great stakes lest they should fall on a sudden. In this manner they soon

finish'd sapping the bastion of Tarma, which was the largest of any: and the place which Altoun Bacchi inspected was sooner sunk'd. This being done, orders were given to set fire to 'em: and at the same time this high and famous tower fell, and made a vast breach by its fall. The soldiers ran with their bucklers on their heads to enter by this breach: but on a sudden another part of the wall fell, which rais'd a prodigious dust, and crush'd to death eighty men of the troops of Corassana and Sistan. This misfortune stop'd the ardor of our men, who would advance no farther: and the besieg'd laying hold on the occasion, clos'd up the breach, and fortify'd themselves behind. These breaches struck terror into 'em; and they had willingly surrender'd, if they had not despair'd of pardon. The other props were then order'd to be set on fire, and great part of the castle soon fell. This accident entirely taking away all hopes from the besieg'd, Yezdar governor of the place caus'd the gate to be open'd; and being constrain'd to go out, he came full of grief to deliver up the keys of his castle, and of the treasury and magazines within it. The other sides of the walls, which had been prop'd up with stakes, were not set on fire.

Timur gave orders that the governor Yezdar shou'd be put to death, because he had waited too long before he surrender'd. They found in the castle great quantitys of riches, jewels, curious stuffs, and raritys which had been kept there for many ages. There was a famous granary full of corn, being the revenues of the two renown'd citys of Mecca and Medina. Timur, who was sincere in his religion, prohibited any one from touching 'em: and Herimule, one of the Tavatchis, having taken a hundred Batmans of

of barly, he was baſtinado'd both before and behind, and the mony he had receiv'd for em taken from him. Timur order'd the intendant of this magazine to ſell him ſome corn at the price of three Dinars Copeghis for each Batman or pound, becauſe the war had render'd proviſions extremely dear. This intendant got a great ſum of mony for the corn; and the whole ſum was diſtributed among the officers of the above citys, who were ſent back to Jeruſalem, after having receiv'd a great deal of civil treatment from Timur. Chap. 27

The gariſon were made ſlaves, and diſtributed among the Mirzas and Emirs; it was moſtly compos'd of Circaſſians, Mamalucs, Ethiopian ſlaves, and Zanghebars; all the women, children and old men had the ſame fate. The tradeſmen were ſeparated from the reſt, and ſhar'd among the Emirs, with thoſe who had been taken out of the city, to be conducted to Samarcand. Moulana Jumaleddin, and Moulana Sulleman, two celebrated phyſicians, were alſo carry'd with em. Then Timur went from the palace of Caſrablac to lodge in the houſe of Boutecach, one of the great Emirs of Syria, which houſe was the moſt charming and noble of any in that country. At the ſight of all this magnificence, Timur cry'd out, "Is it not "a ſhame that in a kingdom of ſo large an ex"tent, where men give themſelves up only to "pleaſures, they ſhou'd build all theſe fine edi"fices to pleaſe their ſenſes; and not have the "charity to erect a ſingle mauſoleum of four "walls for the holy wives of Mahomet, who "lie underneath theſe tombs?" Whereupon he immediately order'd that two magnificent domes ſhou'd be built over the ſepulchres of theſe holy ladys. The commiſſion was given to the

Book V. Mirzas Aboubecre and Calil Sultan, and to the Emirs Cheik Noureddin, Ali Sultan, and Mengheli Coja, who made the workmen proceed with so much diligence, that the whole was finish'd in twenty-five days. These two domes were of white marble, full of sculptures and chisel-work.

As the Syrian mony was of a base alloy, Timur caus'd new mony to be coin'd both of gold and silver, which was refin'd by the coppel: there were pieces of a hundred, of fifty, and of ten Medicales, which were all honor'd with the name and titles of the august emperor Timur. The mony was so common among the soldiers, that the Divan got about six hundred thousand Dinars Copeghi out of the single revenue for monys.

Timur commanded the principal secretarys of state to prepare letters of conquest, to send to Samarcand, and all the capital citys of the kingdoms of Iran and Touran, which were subject to his empire, with advice of the reduction of Syria; and to command the governors to make public rejoicings for his victorys. These letters were dispatch'd by couriers, who likewise carry'd with 'em several of these new-coin'd pieces of gold and silver, to be distributed among the empresses, the princes of the blood, and chief lords of the kingdoms of Iran and Touran.

Timur sent Coja Hassan to the Mirzas Miran-cha and Charoc, that they might order the Emirs Soliman Chah and Gehan Chah to make inroads along the coast of the Mediterranean, as far as the town of Akkia. These Emirs having departed according to order, made havock in all this country, from whence they brought away a great quantity of booty, and return'd to Canaan.

During

During these transactions, Timur was attack'd Chap. 17.
with a distemper, which proceeded from a flux
of humors, which fell upon his back, and turn'd
into an imposthume. He was very bad within
and one of the Emirs who attended his person,
nam'd Aratmur, was sent into Canaan, to order
the princes of the blood and the Emirs to return
with expedition; but at their arrival the dis-
temper went off, and the emperor recover'd.
Then Timur reflecting upon the history of Syria,
assembled his privy-council to communicate his
sentiments to 'em. "I have heard, says he,
"than in the wars which the Merouanian Om-
"miades Califs wag'd against the children of
"Mahomet, and particularly with Ali, his son-
"in-law, nephew, and lawful heir, where they
"exercis'd all the massacres and cruelty's they
"cou'd invent, the Syrians kept an intelligence
"with 'em, encouraging 'em in all these abomi-
"nable actions. Nothing shou'd be more won-
"der'd at than this; for how can a nation be
"thought to be of the sect of a prophet, and
"be drawn from the abyss of error and infi-
"delity by the light he has afforded 'em, when
"it becomes so far the enemy of his family as
"to unite with its most cruel adversarys, and
"suffer all sorts of cruelty and injustice to be
"us'd towards 'em? This is what I can't com-
"prehend. We ought not to disbelieve this
"tradition; for if it were false, so rigorous a
"sentence wou'd not have come from the tribu-
"nal of God's justice, in consequence of which
"they have suffer'd so cruel a punishment at this
"time, notwithstanding all their strength and
"power."

Timur having related this piece of history, with which he was perfectly acquainted, they explain'd his highness's thoughts among one another;

Book V. ther; and the officers of his household were constantly reasoning on it. It was so insinuated into the minds of the warriors, that on the first March 28. of the moon of Schaban the troops forcibly enter'd the city without orders, and made a terrible slaughter, committing all manner of violences: they made both men and women slaves, took from 'em their jewels, and pillag'd their goods, which consisted of an infinite quantity of gold, precious stones, curious merchandises, rich stuffs, and all sorts of rarities. They got so much riches, that all the horses, mules, and camels, which they had taken from Sebaste as far as Damascus, were not able to carry 'em away; so the soldiers were oblig'd to fling away a great part, and especially several pieces of gold and silver stuffs, and curious belts of Egypt, Cyprus and Russia, which they had pillag'd at the beginning of the campain. This circumstance I have heard from several credible persons who were eye-witnesses of it.

The first floor of the houses of Damascus are built of stone, and the two upper ones of wood; and most of the cielings and even of the walls of 'em are varnish'd; which renders 'em very inflammable; so that when any place has took fire, the judges and governors, notwithstanding all their precautions, are not able to stop it; and it commonly burns a great way. This often happens in time of peace.

March 29. The 12th of Schaban, the city took fire by an accident; and every one strove in vain to quench it: it increas'd so much, that no place was free from the scent occasion'd by the ebony and sandarac, of which the varnish was compos'd; and the houses became exceeding black.

Timur, whose regard for religion was unparallel'd, sent the Emir Chamelik to preserve the

the famous moſque of Ommiades from the fire; but tho the roof was made of wood cover'd with lead, inſtead of being varniſh'd, God made his wrath appear againſt theſe people; for notwithſtanding the ſoldiers endeavors to quench it, they could not hinder the eaſtern Minaret of this moſque's being reduc'd to aſhes, tho it was built of ſtone: whereas the Minaret of Arous, otherwiſe nam'd Moumar Beiza, remain'd ſafe, on which the Muſſulmans believe, that the lord Meſſiah Jeſus, on whom, as on our prophet, may bleſſings and ſalvation be ſhower'd, will deſcend from heaven, when he ſhall come to judge both the living and the dead. And what was moſt miraculous is, that this latter Minaret, tho built of wood, and plaſter'd over with lime on the out-ſide, remain'd intire, while all Damaſcus was burnt down, and the immenſe riches within it pillag'd and ſack'd, as well as the reſt of Syria. Chap. 7.

Then Timur took up a reſolution to return back; and to give the inhabitants of Syria ſome marks of his clemency, after having made 'em feel the effects of his wrath, he order'd that all the ſlaves of Damaſcus and the reſt of Syria, men, women and children, ſhou'd be ſet at liberty. Gelaleliſlam had the commiſſion for executing this order, and conducting all the ſlaves to the city of Damaſcus; which was exactly obſerv'd.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Timur returns out of Syria.

March 31. 1401. THE fourth of Schaban 803, which answ[ers] to the beginning of the year of the Se[r]pent, the ſun entring Aries, Timur decam[p'd] from Coubqibat, and march'd to Gouta, [where] he encamp'd. He there caus'd two orders to [be] drawn up; the one to the Mirza Mehemet Sul[tan], to leave the government of the frontiers [of] Mogoliſtan, to the Emirs Codadad Huſſein, Birdi Bei, Sarbouga, and others, and to come forthwith to the foot of the throne, to receive the crown and inveſtiture of the empire of Hulacou Can, which was granted him, in conſideration of his merits and ſervices. The ſecond order was, that the auguſt empreſs Toumanagha and the young princes his children, ſhould come to meet the emperor. Theſe two orders were ſeal'd, and ſent by Doné Coja.

Timur being departed from Gouta, paſs'd by Caraoun Bec; and in three days he arriv'd at Emeſſa, the inhabitants of which had continued firm in their obedience, for which reaſon the troops did not moleſt 'em in their paſſage. There a council was held, and Timur order'd the Mirzas Rouſtem and Aboubecre, with the Emirs Soliman Chah and Cheik Noureddin of the right wing, to march with ten thouſand horſe to the town of Tedmir, built by the prophet Solomon, the houſes of which were of free-ſtone; and to pillage the ſubjects of Zulcader, who were in the territorys of this town. He commanded the Mirza Sultan Huſſein, and the Emir Berendac

ac of the left wing, to march to Antioch at the Chap. 8.
ead of five thouſand horſe: and he ſent the
lirza Calil Sultan, the Emir Rouſtem Tagi
ouga Berlas, Temour Coja, Acbouga, and o-
ers, with fifteen thouſand horſe of the main
ody, againſt the Turcomans of Coubec, who
ere encamp'd on the banks of the Euphrates.

Thoſe of the right wing ſoon arriv'd at Ted-
ur, from whence they brought away about two
undred thouſand ſheep belonging to the Zulca-
ians, who were conſtrain'd to fly into the
eſarts of Arabia with their horſes and camels.
fter this the troops return'd, paſs'd the deſart,
d came to the banks of the Euphrates, along
hich they advanc'd.

Thoſe of the left wing being arriv'd near An-
och, cou'd ſcarcely enter it, becauſe of the
reat waters, ſloughs and marſhes: they pillag'd
e city and country, and then turn'd towards
leppo, where they join'd the troops ſelected out
f the main-body, and commanded by the Mir-
a Calil Sultan: with theſe they march'd into
e neighborhood of Calat-Erroum, towards the
uphrates. Here they met the Turcomans, who
d the boldneſs to wait their coming, and pre-
are for battel: they were briskly attack'd, and
s courageouſly defended themſelves; but the
heik Huſſein, ſon of Coubec, their leader,
ing ſlain, his brothers and the reſt of the chiefs
ere conſtrain'd to fly to the deſart. Several
f 'em were kill'd; and abundance of horſes,
amels, ſheep and other ſpoils taken, which be-
ng join'd to the other booty of our ſoldiers,
ey counted above eight hundred thouſand
heep; and the ſoldiers were ſo fatigu'd, that
ey cou'd not carry away the reſt of the cat-
el.

When

When Timur was arriv'd in the neighborhood of Hama, the evil destiny of the inhabitants excited 'em to commit acts of hostility against our men; they destroy'd the edifices our soldiers had built when they were there the first time. This action inflam'd Timur's wrath, who permitted 'em to be pillag'd: the inhabitants were made slaves, and their houses set on fire after they had taken from 'em their best effects.

The army march'd from Hama to Aleppo, from whence to Damascus are seventy leagues. After some days journy they came near Aleppo, and the Emirs Seid Azeddin, Hezarasper, Chah Chahan, and Mousa Tui Bouga, who were in the castle belonging to that city, raz'd the walls, burnt the houses, as well of the castle as of the town, and join'd the imperial camp. After four days journy the army arriv'd on the banks of the Euphrates; and the Mirzas Roustem and Aboubecre, with the Emirs of the right wing, arriv'd there at the same time, coming from the lower part of the river. The Mirzas Calil Sultan and Hussein Sultan, with the Emirs of the main body, came there also by water; and they had all the honour to kiss the imperial carpet, and offer presents of the booty they had taken in their inroads. There was so great a number of cattel in the camp, that a sheep was sold for a Dinar. The Mirza Sultan Hussein had perform'd several brave actions, and done the duty of a good subject in the last inroads, he obtain'd a pardon for his former faults, and kiss'd the emperor's feet, who promis'd to restore him his best favors, and take care of his advancement.

CHA

Chap. 29.

CHAP. XXIX.

Timur croſſes the Euphrates, and hunts in Meſopotamia.

AFTER all the Mirzas and Emirs had join'd the imperial camp, orders were given to repair the Euphrates: and accordingly five boats were brought from the town of Bire, on the eaſt ſide of this river, to tranſport the emperor's baggage. The Mirzas, Emirs and ſoldiers ſwam over, and encamp'd near Bire, the governor of which came out to ſalute the emperor, bringing him preſents: and in acknowledgment of his ſervices, his highneſs confirm'd him in his government, and the inhabitants receiv'd no damage from our troops. Cara Oſman arriv'd at this place, and kiſſing the imperial carpet, made his preſents, and he had a handſom reception.

The army being departed thence, Timur had a deſire to hunt in Meſopotamia: the ſoldiers of the right and left wing form'd the great circle of five days journy in circumference: and the circle growing leſs and leſs, they found ſo much game of all ſorts near the fine fountain of Kaleiain, that they took the beaſts with their hands. After the chace, tables were erected for a general banquet, to eat the game which had been taken, wherein the moſt delicious wines were ſery'd up: and as an incentive to drinking, they eat roe-bucks and antilopes, whoſe fleſh is very tender, and the beſt-taſted of any creatures of the deſart.

Then

Book V. Then they decamp'd from Bire, and when they were come to the town of Edessa[a], the principal persons came out with presents to salute Timur, who treated 'em handsomly, assur'd 'em of their lives, and sent 'em back contented. Passing farther, they found a castle inhabited by Armenian robbers. Timur gave orders for their being exterminated; and they were accordingly put to death, their goods seiz'd on, and the place raz'd. During these transactions Hadgi Chah Cazandgi arriv'd from Samarcand: he had an audience of the emperor, to whom he gave an account of the good state of affairs in Transoxiana. There also came an officer from the empresses Toukel Canum and Touman Aga, and another from Sultania, from the empress Serai Mulc Canum, with presents of stuffs and jewels: and all these messengers inform'd the emperor of the good health of the princes his sons.

CHAP. XXX.

Timur marches to the town of Mardin.

THEN the army march'd towards Mardin. Timur sent back Hendou Chah Cazandgi, and the officers of the empresses, giving 'em presents, and letters full of affection for the princes his children. To the same place came the Sultan of Husni Keifa[b], and the Sul-

[a] The same as Ruhha and Orpha.

[b] Corruptly call'd Hasan Keif, a town on the bank of the Tigris between Amed and Mousel.

of Arzinc, with the other princes and Chap. 30.
of those quarters. They brought presents
precious stones to lay before the emperor,
they had the honour to kiss the imperial
to the Sultan of Mardin, we have already
mark'd, that he being reduc'd to obedience,
been imprison'd by the emperor's order
the castle of Sultanie; that Timur in con-
sion to Him had pardon'd him, and given
a vest, with much civil treatment; and
he had promis'd to become a faithful servant
as he liv'd, and let slip no opportunity
giving marks of it, that so he might render
self agreeable to the emperor, and merit
favours. After this it became him to follow
army into Syria with his troops, or if the
nearness of the enemys, there was any dif-
culty in that, he ought at least to have sent
e of his sons or brothers. But as he had fail'd
this particular, he was conscious of his fault;
d dar'd not come to meet his highness. Ne-
rtheless Timur, being arriv'd near his fron-
ers, had the goodness to ask after him, or-
ring him to come before him in very oblig-
g terms: but this unhappy prince, giving
y to his evil destiny, had the insolence to
fuse to come, and dream'd of defending his
wn, being perswaded that it could not be
ken by force. Insteed, as a long siege
necessary to the carrying it, or tho in the
eighborhood were abundance of fertile plains
ll of pasturage, and proper to encamp
; Timur was contented with running and
burning

Timur could not take the castle of Sherkat, which was
uate upon an inaccessible rock, large enough to contain
much

Book V. burning all the houses of the lower town, as well as the markets: and he order'd Can Osman, governor of Malatia, after having honor'd him with a vest, to form the blockade of Merdin, and shut the inhabitants up so close, that no one might be able to escape.

Timur us'd abundance of civility to the Sultans of Husni Keifa, Arzine, and the other neighboring places, who were come to pay their devoirs to him at his arrival. He gave to each a robe wove with gold, a belt set with precious stones, and a sabre with a gold handle; and he permitted 'em to return to their own countrys. Then Timur sent the Emir Allahdad to Samarcand, with orders to march afterwards to Achpere, to take care of the frontiers of Gete.

CHAP. XXXI.

Timur sends troops into Georgia, and to Bagdad.

THE army being departed from Merdin Timur order'd the Mirzas Sultan Hussein, Pir Mehemed, Omar Cheik, and Abousaeed, also the Emirs Gehan Chah, Temour Coja, Coja, and others, to march with a great body of the army to Alengic by the way of Amed

much plough'd lands. Here are great springs of water, so the garison stand in no need of the enemies to supply 'em.

The Arabian says, that to be desirous of obliging a man is to seek the friendship of an envious man, or to make a sign to the blind.

to make themselves masters of Alengic, and Chap. 21.
from thence to pass into Georgia. The Mirzas
and Emirs departed according to order; but as
Alengic had been besieg'd already two years
by others of our troops, (for when the army
marched towards Schamie, the Cheik Mehemed
Deloga, with the troops of the Mirza Miran
Chah, Firouz Chah, and the Mirza Charoc,
went to besiege it, and prest it so closely,
that most of the inhabitants died of hunger;
they being in so great want of victuals, as to
be oblig'd to eat old leather, skins and such like
things, to appease their hunger; and even these
things failing 'em at last, constrain'd 'em to go
out and deliver up the place) Alengic, I say,
having been besieg'd two years, when the Mir-
zas and Emirs came near Avemic, and heard of
the reduction of Alengic, instead of marching
to it, they turn'd towards the right for Geor-
gia. They made great haste to surprize the
Georgians, whose country they ravag'd. This
exceedingly disturb'd Malek Gourghin, who
sent an ambassador to the Mirzas, to acquaint
'em with the great surprize he was in at their
coming into his country, seeing he was one of
the emperor's most faithful servants, and to assure
'em that as soon as his highness shou'd come into
those quarters, he would not fail of paying his
obedience to him. The Mirzas sent an express
to court with advice of Ghourghin's submission;
they ceas'd ravaging his country, and staid at
Mencouf, which is a place proper to pass the sum-
mer in, to wait the answer of the court, and
know whether the emperor wou'd grant quar-
ter to Ghourghin. The same day an order was
issu'd out for the Sultan Mahmoud Can, the
Mirza Rostem, the Emir Solyman Chah, and
other Emirs, to march at the head of their

Book V. Tomans and companys towards the city of Bagdad. These lords set out immediately, and after several days march arriv'd at Bagdad, and encamp'd on the south-side. Farrudge, of the Mogul hord of Gelair, was governor for the Sultan Ahmed. The vast multitudes of Turks and Arabians, who were assembled in this city, render'd Farrudge insolent; and confiding in the strength of his walls, and the number of his soldiers, he even dar'd to sally out to oppose the Tartar army, and rang'd his men in order of battel in the view of ours.

As soon as the rumor of the arrival of our army was spread, the Emirs Ali Calander of Mendeli *, and Dgian Ahmed of Bacou *, began their march against us, and pass'd the Tigris at Medaine. On the other hand, Farruk Chah of Hille, and Micail of Sib, also departed with the same design, and join'd together at Serser; and with three thousand men well arm'd advanc'd to fight. The Mirza Roustem, the Emir Soliman Chah, and others, immediately took horse with their troops, and surrounded the enemy. They repuls'd 'em as far as the Tigris, and a bloody battel ensu'd near the castle of the Emir Ahmed. Dgian Ahmed was there slain, with a great number of his bravest soldiers: many cast themselves into the river and were drown'd, while the rest escap'd with a great deal of difficulty. After the defeat, one wou'd have thought Farrudge shou'd not have held out any longer; but this peasant, who had never before been master of a government, and had attain'd this only by cowardly intrigues, cou'd not resolve to quit his new dignity of governor, but found a pretence to excuse himself. "The Sul-
"tan Ahmed my master, says he, made me
"swear, that if Timur shou'd come in person,
"I

* In Coureſtan.

" I wou'd ſurrender the city, for fear of bring- Chap. 32.
" ing the people into miſery: but if that em-
" peror ſhou'd not come in perſon, whatever
" number of troops approach'd, I wou'd make a
" ſtout defence, and not deliver up the place:
" and I muſt obey my maſter's orders."

Under this ſly pretence, he gain'd over the inhabitants and militia, whom he poſted upon the walls to defend the city. There he us'd all his efforts; for he excited the ſoldiers upon the walls, and advanc'd upon the water in a boat, diſcharging a ſhower of arrows on our men in the rear.

In the mean while Timur advanc'd towards Tauris: he paſs'd by Naſibene[1], a ſtrong place, which he gave orders to beſiege and raze; but the inhabitants coming out with preſents, and bringing the keys of the fortreſs, Timur gave em quarter; and they receiv'd no damage from the paſſage of our troops. The army being ar-riv'd at Mouſſel[2], they built a bridge over the Tigris, which all the troops croſs'd in a week.

CHAP. XXXII.

Timur beſieges and takes Bagdad.

THE Emirs who were before Bagdad, ſent an expreſs to the emperor, to acquaint im with Farrudge's ſentiment, and the pre-ence with which he color'd over his obſtinacy defending the city. On this advice Timur

[1] A town of Courdiſtan, long. 76. 30. lat. 37.
[2] A town of Meſopotamia, long. 77. lat. 36. 30.

Book V. chose the bravest men of his army; and leaving the empress Tchelpan Mule Aga, with the re[st] of the troops and baggage, under the care o[f] the Mirza Charoc, accompany'd by the Emi[r] Chamelik, whom he order'd to march to Tauri[s] by Tchinaran and Calaghi, he departed in per[-] son for Bagdad, by the way of Altoun Cupruc[1] where being arriv'd, he encamp'd at the lowe[r] part of the river, over-against the gate of C[a]riet Ulacab; and all the troops encamp'd roun[d] the city. He immediately order'd the sappe[rs] to begin to work. The Mirzas and great E[mirs] of the Tomans, Hezares and Couchons, fix'd th[e] sappers each before his post, and some body o[f] the troops to sustain 'em. Farrudge being de[si]rous to know whether Timur was there in pe[r]son, sent one to him whom he had confide[d] in, in quality of ambassador, because this per[-] knew him, having had the honor to see him b[e]fore. The ambassador met with a honorable re[-] ception; and after his audience was honor[ed] with a vest, and at length dismiss'd. At h[is] return he gave Farrudge an exact account o[f] what had pass'd; but this governor, who well knew he spoke the truth, accus'd him o[f] dissembling, and put him in prison, lest othe[rs] shou'd likewise know the truth from him: a[nd] then giving out that Timur was not there in person, he continu'd to defend himself, committed hostilitys, not considering what consequence wou'd be. Then the Colas Masa[ns] Semnani, and Menghely, who were employ'd in building a platform, which might have a pro[s]pect upon the city of Bagdad, were wounde[d] with arrows, and soon after expir'd.

[1] A bridge on the river of Altoun Soui near Mousel.

Tim[ur]

Timur ſent Locman Tavachi to the Mirza Charoc, to order him to return to Bagdad with the baggage and the reſt of the army. Locman join'd the Mirza at Calaghi, and accompany'd him in his way to Bagdad. When this great army was aſſembled together, Timur review'd it: and the aſtoniſh'd inhabitants no longer look'd upon their city as the houſe of peace *, but as the palace of hell and diſcord. The troops encamp'd on both ſides the river, and ſurrounded the city, tho it was more than two leagues in circumference. A bridge of boats was built over the Tigris below Cariet Ulacab: and ſeveral skilful archers were laid in ambuſcade down the river, to hinder any from flying. The care of the upper part of the river, was given to the Mirzas Miran Chah and Charoc, who encamp'd over-againſt Souqs Eſſultan. On the other ſide of the Tigris were Mehemed Azad, and Tangri Birmich Coja, to guard the fore-part of the city, that no one might get out that way. In fine, it was ſo block'd up and envi-ron'd on all ſides, that tho the Tigris paſs'd thro the middle of it, and there was a great number of boats, yet it was impoſſible to get out. During theſe tranſactions, Ahmed Ogoul-chai, governor of the caſtle of Alengie, who was ſeiz'd after the taking of the place, was brought to Timur, who order'd that he ſhou'd be put to death, and the caſtle committed to the care of Malek Mehemed Aoubehi. The execution of this order was given to him who had brought Sidi Ahmed to court.

Chap. 22.

At the ſame time the Emir Mouſſa arriv'd from the Mirza Mehemed Sultan at Tranſoxi-

* Bagdad is ſtiled Dareſſelam, that is to ſay, the houſe of peace.

Book V. and, and gave the emperor an account of the good ſtate of affairs in that kingdom. He preſented him with a piece of a balaſs ruby, weighing one hundred and twenty Miſcales, out of the mine of Bedakchan.

In the mean while Farrudge and the inhabitants of Bagdad were ſtruck with fear ſo that they fought not ſo much out of bravery as from deſpair; they perform'd actions of the greateſt raſhneſs, which almoſt exceeded humane power; for as ſoon as the Tartars having made a breach had ſet fire to it, and a ſide of the wall was about to fall, the beſieg'd immediately repair'd the breach with mortar and brick, and entrench'd themſelves behind. It was then ſummer, the ſun being in Cancer; and as Bagdad was ſituate in a country near the tropick, the violence of the heat was ſo great, that the birds fell down dead; and as the ſoldiers had on their cuiraſſes, one may ſay they even melted like wax; nevertheleſs they rais'd a high platform, which commanded the city, from whence they inceſſantly caſt great ſtones out of their machines. The Mirzas and Emirs fell ſeveral times on their knees before the emperor, begging leave to make a general aſſault, that they might take the city ſword in hand: but Timur would not conſent to it, ſaying, perhaps the beſieg'd may come to a ſenſe of their fault, beg pardon, and deliver up the place, that they may ſave themſelves from being ſlain or made ſlaves, and that the kingdom may not be entirely ruin'd. But fate had fix'd it otherwiſe; for theſe unfortunate people continu'd in their ſtubbornneſs notwithſtanding the dearneſs and ſcarcity of proviſions, the ſiege having already laſted forty days.

Chap. 32.

July 23. 1401.

The 27th of Zilcade 803, at noon, when the inhabitants, by reason of the heat of the sun, not being able to stay upon the walls, had retir'd into their houses, and fix'd their helmets upon sticks which they had erected in their places, our army undertook to give a general assault. The Mirzas and Emirs furiously advanc'd, and having fix'd their scaling-ladders against the walls, the Emir Cheik Noureddin mounted first, and erected his horse-tail upon the wall, crown'd with a half-moon. He caus'd the trumpet to be sounded, and the drums and kettle-drums beat: immediately all the captains in their respective posts mounted the walls, and then cast them down into the ditch: the troops enter'd the city sword in hand, and Timur advanc'd to the foot of the bridge which had been built below Bagdad. The soldiers being in the place, the inhabitants endeavor'd to get out by all the ways they cou'd, but in vain; so they were constrain'd to cast themselves into the Tigris, where escaping the swords of the Tartars, they became the prey of the fishes. Several got into boats, and others swam, to gain the lower part of the river; but they were no sooner come to the bridge than they were shot by the soldiers arrows, who lay in ambuscade. Farrudge embark'd with his daughter, and found means, notwithstanding all Timur's precautions, to escape by water. He was pursu'd along the banks of the Tigris by our soldiers, who discharg'd upon him a vast number of arrows, whom not being able to resist, he was constrain'd to cast himself and daughter into the water, where they were both drown'd, and the boat sunk to the bottom. The boatmen had orders to fish up Farrudge; and having drawn him up out of the water, they cast his unfortu-

Book V. nate carcase upon the bank. As there had been several Tartar soldiers slain in the general assault, each soldier was order'd to bring one head * of the men of Bagdad; which they accordingly did, and spar'd neither old men of fourscore, nor children of eight years of age. No quarter was given either to rich or poor; and the number of the dead was so great, that no one cou'd count 'em up, tho the Tavachis had orders to register it. Towers were made of these heads, to serve as an example to posterity. Some learned men found means to cast themselves at the feet of the emperor, who granted 'em pardon and quarter, and even gave 'em vests and horses, with a convoy to conduct 'em to what place of security they desir'd: all the rest of the inhabitants were exterminated. Afterwards Timur gave orders that there shou'd not remain one single house in the city burnt; but that the mosques, colleges and hospitals shou'd be spar'd. Accordingly they ruin'd the markets, caravanseras, hermitages, cells, monasterys, palaces, and other edifices. Thus says the Alcoran, *The houses of the impious are overthrown by the order of God.*

* Arabschah says two; and that there were ninety thousand inhabitants of Bagdad slain in cold blood. They flung away the bodys, and made trophys of the heads pil'd together. There were one hundred and twenty towers made of the heads for trophys.

CHAP.

Chap. 33.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Timur's return from Bagdad, and march towards Tauris.

AFTER the Tigris was grown red with the blood of the inhabitants of Bagdad, and the air began to be infected by the dead bodys, Timur decamp'd from that city the beginning of Zilhadge, and march'd a league towards the upper part of the river. He encamp'd near the tomb of the great Imam Abou Hanifa, chief of one of the four orthodox sects among the Mahometans, to implore the intercession of this saint. Then he sent a messenger with letters and orders to Mouſike, who was come from Transoxiana; which messenger he order'd to be accompany'd by Nemedee, Deroga [1] of Khivah [2], that this Nemedee might have the care of the government of Carezem in the absence of Mouſike, and till his return to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan.

Timur order'd the Sultan Mahmoud Can, and the Mirza Caleb Sultan, accompany'd by several great Emirs and a good number of troops, to make inroads in the neighbouring places. They hasten'd to obey this order, pass'd by Hille, and went as far as Meschad Nedgef [3],

[1] Deroga is the particular governor of a town.

[2] A town south of the Gihon, in the kingdom of Carezem.

[3] A place in Irac Arabi near the Euphrates, where Huſſein, grandson of the false prophet Mahomet, was slain by the soldiers of Yezide, son of Muavias. To this place they go in pilgrimage from all parts of Asia,

but

Book V. but instead of attacking that holy place, they paid their devotions there: then they ravag'd Hille and Vaset, and return'd to court laden with booty.

Timur took the road to Chehrezour and Calghi; and leaving the care of the baggage and main of the army to the great Emirs, he order'd 'em to march slowly behind, while no one shou'd separate from his Toman or company. The emperor made haste, accompany'd by the Mirzas Miran Chah, Charoc, and Calil Sultan: but while they were on their march, the Courdes were so rash as to attack those who were separated, tho at ever so small a distance from the army, and rob 'em. Timur being inform'd of their boldness, plac'd soldiers in ambuscade round the roads; and as soon as these villains appear'd, our men sallying out of their ambuscades, seiz'd 'em, and hang'd 'em upon the spot on the chesnut trees which grew in the roads. As to these chesnut-trees, I have heard it reported by very credible persons, that one year they produce chesnuts, and the next gall-nuts *; which appearing so very extraordinary, I thought fit to mention it. Timur being arriv'd at the river of Jagatou, the empress Serai Mulc Canum, Canzade, and the other wives of the Mirzas, with their children, among whom was the Mirza Oulouc-Bec, came to meet his highness, and kiss'd his feet at Sineper, congratulating him on his conquests, and sprinkling upon him precious stones and pieces of mony. After having offer'd their presents,

* I believe the author is mistaken, supposing the oaks which produce gall-nuts alternately with acorns, to be chesnut-trees, which are very uncommon in Syria.

they

they decamp'd, and being arriv'd at Arziaret, encamp'd there. The Cherifs, doctors and principal lords of the empire of Iran, cloth'd with scarfs of Ihhrane which they wear in the mosques, came as far as this place to meet Timur, who gave 'em a handsom reception. They staid twenty days at this place; and the baggage and remainder of the army soon arriv'd. And as the most learned Imams, and doctors were assembled in this place, Timur, who was extremely desirous of being enlighten'd upon any questions of religion, invited 'em to dispute upon some point of doctrine, for the better clearing up of the truth: he employ'd himself in this exercise as long as he continu'd at Acziaret. Afterwards he gave leave to the Mirza Rousten to return to Chiraz, with order, as soon as he shou'd arrive there, to send to court Hassan Yandar, and Jasan Jagadaoul. Chap. 34.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Timur sends the Mirza Charoc to Arzendgian.

DURING Timur's stay in Syria, Bajazet, sirnamed Ildurum or the Thunder, the Ottoman emperor, thro the instigation of Sultan Ahmed Gelair and Cara Youlef Turcoman, who had fled for refuge to his court, brought an army into the field; and to revenge himself for the ruin of Sebaste, he march'd to besiege Arzendgian, which he made himself master of, having routed Taharten. Moobel, Taharten's lieutenant, was kill'd in the battel; and Bajazet sent the disconsolate wives and children of Taharten to Brousia; and then return'd

Book V. turn'd himself. When Timur was departed from Aeziaret, had pass'd by Oudgian *, and was encamp'd at Hechtroud, that is to say, the eight rivers, he receiv'd advice that Bajazet was again marching towards the east; upon which he order'd the Mirza Charoc forthwith to fall upon the Ottoman, and make him repent of his boldness; he appointed the Emirs Soliman Chah, Chamelik, and other chiefs of Tomans, and colonels of Hezares, to accompany the Mirza. He then sent orders by the Emir Mezrab, to the Mirzas and Emirs who were gone out to make inroads in Georgia, and had stop'd in Mencoul, to depart directly to join the Mirza Charoc, which they accordingly did. The Mirza being set out from Avenic, and arriv'd at Nevine, met the Cheik Ali, nephew of Taharten, who brought advice that Bajazet, fearing the success of his bold undertaking, had besought Taharten to intercede for him with Timur, that he might obtain pardon for his hostilitys, on condition of his future obedience; that he wou'd send ambassadors with letters to make a treaty of peace, and a sincere alliance between the two empires, that so the Mussulmans might live quietly; and that he promis'd that if the peace shou'd be concluded by the intercession of Taharten, he wou'd send back his wives and children, whom he had carry'd to Brousa. The Mirza Charoc sent the Cheik Ali to the emperor, to give him an account of this affair; and staid himself some time where he was. Timur having decamp'd from the eight rivers, went to Oudgian, and staid some days in the Kiochk of Argoun.

* A town of Azerbijana near Tauris.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXV.

Arrival of the second empress Touman Aga, and the young princes, from Samarcand.

WE have said before, that when the army decamp'd from Damascus, orders were sent to the empress Touman Aga to repair to court with her children. As soon as the princess receiv'd that letter, she hasten'd thither. When she arriv'd at Bocara, she went to visit the tombs of the saints, and among others that of the Cheik Seifeddin Bacrezi, whose intercession she besought. She cross'd the Gihon at Amouye, and passing the desart, came to Merou; and then going thro the desart of Bigen, she went to Mechhad of Tous, where she visited the tomb of the great Ali, making vows, and distributing alms. When she was arriv'd near Oudgian, Timur went to meet her, and had the pleasure of seeing and embracing his dear children the Mirzas Ibrahim Sultan and Sad Vaccas. He return'd thanks to God for his favors, and afterwards gave audience to the empress Touman Aga, and his daughter the princess Beghis Sultan, as also his cousin Sadekin Aga, who paid their respects to him. After having staid several days at Oudgian, Timur took the road to Tauris, hunting in his way. When he was arriv'd there, he went into his imperial palace, where he inform'd himself of the affairs of all his people, and did justice to those who had been oppress'd by his officers. Then the Coja Ali Semnani arriv'd from Herat, and the Coja Seifeddin from Sebzuar; they saluted the emperor,

peror, and made their presents. Timur gave 'em a place in the Divan, in consideration of their services.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Timur marches into Georgia, and to Carabagh Arran.

TIMUR having staid some days at Tauris, resolv'd to march into Georgia: he went to encamp at Comtoupa, where he order'd the Coja Ismael Cavasi to be hang'd before the market-place of the camp, to punish him for the tyrannys he had exercis'd upon the people. He afterwards crois'd the river Araxes, and went to encamp with all the army at Nakchivan. And as the castle of Alengic was near Nakchivan, he was desirous to see that strong place, which had been taken by his soldiers in so short a time; and carrying with him the empresses, with the princes his sons, and his favorite Emirs, he carefully examin'd the place, and return'd to his camp.

About this time Taharten arriv'd at court, where on his knees he presented Bajazet's letter, gave an account of his repentance, and begg'd pardon for him; which he did with so much eloquence, that he appeas'd the emperor's wrath, and obtain'd his desire. Timur staid some days at this place, during which time he sent an ambassador into Georgia, to Malek Ghourghin, to demand the tribute of him. Then the Mirzas, Pir Mehemed son of Omar Cheik, Sultan Hussein and Aboubecre, with the Emirs who had been sent to Mencoul, to join

the

the Mirza Charoc, arriv'd at court, and saluted the emperor. The army decamp'd from the meadow of Nakchivan, went to the defile of Chahboz, and enter'd into the mountains. Timur being arriv'd at Gheuktcheytonkez, had a desire to take the diversion of hunting; and when the circle began to close as usual, they took a very great number of stags. After this chace they encamp'd, and the Mirza Charoc return'd with his Emirs, and had the honor to salute the emperor at that place. Afterwards they departed; and when they were encamp'd at Chemkour[a], which is a delicious place, Idecou, son of Coja Seifeddin Berlas, arriv'd there from Kirman; he kiss'd the imperial carpet, and made his presents. The commissary, whom Timur had sent into Georgia to receive the tribute impos'd on Malek Ghourghin, likewise return'd to the same place. That prince sent with him his own brother, loaded with curious presents, among which were horses and animals proper for the chace; he also sent the tribute impos'd on him. He had an audience of the emperor, by the intercession of the great Emirs; and having offer'd his presents, related the subject of his embassy. He said that the king his brother had resolv'd to continue obedient to the laws of the emperor of the Mussulmans; that if he had committed any fault, he sincerely repented of it; and if his highness wou'd pardon him, he wou'd not let one opportunity slip of rendring him his services; that he wou'd faithfully pay his annual tribute, and always keep troops ready to march where his highness shou'd please to order em-

Chap. 26

[a] A town in Georgia, long. 82, lat. 42.

Timur

Timur pardon'd Maleh Ghendge, and look'd upon his brother with a favourable eye, and giving him a vest, permitted him to return home. He order'd him to acquaint his brother that he forgave him, and would quit this country, on condition that he kept within the bounds of his duty; that he treated the Musulmans of Georgia civilly, and protected them from all insult and oppressions; and that he sent him every year, which he shou'd send directly to the imperial camp.

Then Timur sent to Samarcand Emir Gelon, son of Acbouga, with other Emirs, to serve under the Mirza Omar, in quality of lieutenant-general in the government of Transoxiana. The army departed from this place, and arrived at the camp at Carabultopa, where they received advice that the Mirza Meheme Sultan, who had orders to return from Samarcand to court, was arrived at Nichabour, and that the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, his lieutenant-general, was dead. Timur was sensibly touch'd with this news, and melted into tears, because of the good services he had always receiv'd from that faithful servant.

CHAP. XCVII.

Timur passes the winter at Carabagh. Arrival of the Mirza Meheme Sultan at Samarcand.

AFTER a month's stay at Carabagh Timur departed; and having passed by Ghendge and Berdaa, went to encamp at Carabagh Arran the 22d of Rabiulakher, which answers to the year of the Serpent, the fifth

Dec. 12. 1401.

in the middle of Sagittarius. They built houſes of reeds for Timur and the Mirzas his ſons; and within the incloſures they erected tents and pavillions. And as Timur's intention was to make war in Capchac in the ſpring, the face of the pavillions was turn'd towards Derbend; and every one took up his winter-quarters, after Timur had diſtributed the mony in his treaſury among the ſoldiers and Emirs. But at this time ambaſſadors arriv'd from Capchac: they obtain'd an audience by the interceſſion of the great Emirs, and on their knees aſſur'd the emperor of their Can's ſubmiſſion and perfect obedience. The reſpectful terms they us'd appeas'd his anger, who granted 'em pardon, and aſſur'd 'em of his friendſhip. Chap. 37.

Then advice was brought that the Mirza Mehemed Sultan had paſs'd by Ardebil, and was arriv'd at Actam, at the head of his army. The Mirzas Miran Chah, Charoc, and others, accompany'd by all the great Emirs, haſten'd to meet him: they croſs'd the bridge of the Araxes, and join'd the Mirza on the bank of the river Agloue. The Mirzas embrac'd their brother with tenderneſs and affection, teſtify'd their joy, and congratulated him on his happy arrival. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan went to caſt himſelf at the emperor's feet, with the ordinary ceremonys. Timur embrac'd him, diſcours'd with him on the fatigues and length of his journy, and gave him a thouſand benedictions. The Mirza offer'd his preſents, as did alſo the Emirs of his court. For joy of this happy arrival the emperor made a great feaſt for ſeveral days, where the empreſſes and ladys appear'd with extraordinary ſplendor. Timur particularly diſtinguiſh'd the Mirza Mehemed Sultan; he plac'd a crown of gold on his head, and gave him a belt of the ſame met-

Book V. tal, with nine ſets of Arabian horſes, with ſaddles of gold. When the feaſt was over, Timur again took upon him the care of the public affairs; and the firſt thing he did was to finiſh the proceſs againſt the Mirza Eskender, whom the Mirza Mehemed Sultan had bound for a fault he had committed: he was interrogated in a full Divan, and being caſt, receiv'd the baſtinado appointed by the laws of Yaſa; but at length his chains were taken off, and he ſet at liberty.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Timur ſends troops to make inroads in divers places.

WE have before remark'd, that the Sultan Ahmed Gelair, for fear of Timur's troops, had fled from his city of Bagdad for refuge into Natolia to Bajazet. Upon the rumor of Timur's march, the ſame Sultan departed from Bajazet in the neighborhood of Cæſarea in Cappadocia, and went towards Chaldea, which is call'd Irac-Arabi: he paſs'd by Calat-Erroum, and along the banks of the Euphrates; he went to Hit, and thence to Bagdad, which city he endeavour'd to rebuild, tho entirely ruin'd; and he got together all thoſe of his party who were diſperſed, and wander'd about as vagabonds in the deſarts. Timur being inform'd of this, reſolv'd to exterminate 'em before they ſhou'd be able to gather to a head: to which purpoſe he held a council with the Mirzas and Emirs, and order'd four bodys of the cavalry to march each a different route. The Mirza Pir Mehemed, ſon of Omar Cheik, had

had orders to go towards Loreſtan, Couzeſtan and Vaſet: the Mirza Aboubecre, with ſeveral Emirs of Tomans, was to depart for Bagdad: the Mirzas Sultan Huſſein and Calil Sultan were order'd to go with ſeveral Emirs into certain places of Chaldea; and the Emir Berendac was nam'd to march with a good troop, to pillage Gezire, and endeavor to exterminate the rebels. And as the Courdes had dar'd to commit inſults againſt our army, on its return from Bagdad, and had rob'd ſome of our ſoldiers who were ſcatter'd; the emperor order'd that the firſt of theſe robbers they met ſhou'd be deſtroy'd without mercy. Chap. 38.

Tho it was winter, and the cold exceeding violent, becauſe of the ſnow, ſo that it was impoſſible to paſs without laying felts before one; yet the Emirs readily obey'd their inſtructions. This execution was begun upon the Courdes robbers, who, forc'd by the ſnow and violence of the cold, were come down from their mountains, and had encamp'd in the plains of Derbend Tachi Catoun: an infinite number were put to the ſword, ſome wou'd have fled into the mountains, but were hinder'd by the ſnow and cold, and conſtrain'd to ſubmit and beg quarter, which was not granted, becauſe their own wickedneſs had brought upon 'em the wrath of Timur.

The Mirza Aboubecre, having the Emir Gehancha for his lieutenant-general, took the road to Bagdad, and blocking up the ways on all ſides, arriv'd there in the evening, when the Sultan Ahmed leaſt expected him. The Sultan was ſo ſurpriz'd and preſs'd, that he caſt himſelf into a boat in his ſhirt, paſs'd the Tigris, and accompany'd by his ſon the Sultan Taher, and

Book V. ſome officers of his houſhold, took the road to Hille. Our troops repos'd themſelves that night at Bagdad; and next morning, when they were aſſur'd of the Sultan's being gone to Hille, the Emir Gehan Chah was detach'd in purſuit of him, and went as far as Hille; but as the Sultan, who had caus'd the bridge to be broken, was gone towards the lower part of the Euphrates, into the iſles of Khaled and Malek, Gehan Chah wou'd not march ſo far, but ſtaid at Hille, and ſent a horſeman to give advice of it to the court.

The Mirzas Sultan Huſſein and Calil Sultan paſs'd by Chepchemal, and pillag'd Mendeli, from whence the Emir Ali Calander, who was governor of it for the Sultan Ahmed, fled, paſs'd the river, and having got together ſome fugitive troops, poſted himſelf on the bank of the Tigris. The Mirza Calil Sultan ſent by the upper part of the river the ſon of Gehanghir Berlas, at the head of five hundred brave men, with orders to ſwim over the river, and attack 'em in the rear, while himſelf, with his army, lay in their view to amuſe 'em. This detachment croſs'd the Tigris, attack'd the enemy's rear, while the Mirza's troops ſwam over the river, charg'd the enemy on both ſides, and having defeated 'em, pillag'd and brought 'em away priſoners of war, after having burnt alive their commander, who had had the boldneſs to defend himſelf.

The Mirza Pir Mehemed, with his lieutenant-general the Emir Solyman Chah, pillag'd at Doubendar the hords of Saki and Fili. He was join'd by the Mirza Rouſtem, who, according to his inſtructions, was come from Chiraz to paſs the winter at Chuchter: and they went together

ther towards Abada[1] and Vaſet. The Cheik Avis, a Courde, offer'd himſelf to be their guide, and advis'd 'em to ford the Tigris at Coupeſer; they afterwards march'd all night, and came to Mabedia, where they viſited Sidi Ahmed Kebir. From thence they march'd two days journy, to plunder the Arabians of Abada, from whom they brought away great ſpoils of horſes and camels. They went no farther; but repaſſing the Tigris, return'd to Chuchter, the government of which the Emir Solyman Chah confirm'd to Doucom, and that of Dezfoul to Mehemed Adjab Chir, as likewiſe that of Haviza to Temour Coja, and that of Couzeſtan with its finances to Chamſeddin Dehdar; but by way of retaliation he exacted of 'em great ſums of mony. Then the Mirza Rouſtem departed, in order to return to Chiraz. Chap. 38.

All the Mirzas and Emirs, who were gone to make inroads into divers parts, ſtaid the whole winter in Chaldea, where they ſeveral times beat the enemy, and brought away a great quantity of booty; and in the ſpring they took the road to the imperial camp; and being all join'd at the bridge of Cales near the mountain Dgebelhamri, twelve leagues from Bagdad, and four from the dome of Ibrahim Lic, they march'd together to court, to give an account of what they had done.

[1] A town in Arabia, frontier of Chaldea, on the Perſian gulf, near Baſra or Baſſora.

CHAP. XXXIX.

The causes which oblig'd Timur to return to make war on Bajazet the Ottoman emperor.

AS Cara Youſef, prince of the Turcomans, had begun afreſh to commit diſorders in the Muſſulman country, robbing all paſſengers of whatever quality, and even inſulting the great caravan which goes yearly to Hedgiaz and Mecca[8]; and afterwards fearing the juſt indignation of our monarch, was fled for refuge to the country of the Ottomans, which was a ſure aſylum to all the robbers of Aſia: Timur, who made it a point of conſcience to quell the diſorders which affected the Muſſulmans, reſolv'd to make war upon Bajazet. This prince receiv'd the news with indignation, and all the people of Natolia were ſo ſeiz'd with fear, that the principal men of the ſtate, as well lawyers as Cherifs, waited upon him, and gave him the following advice.

The Ottomans counſel to Bajazet.

"The prince who deſigns to march into our "country, is ſo formidable and powerful, that "he has deſtroy'd all who have refus'd to obey "him. Whatever his armys undertake, they "eaſily accompliſh: and they have never yet at-"tack'd a province, city or fortreſs, which they "have not ſoon reduc'd. It is impoſſible, "mighty emperor, to execute ſo great deſigns "without the favor of God; which makes us "preſume that to wage war with ſuch an enemy,

[8] Every Mahometan kingdom ſends yearly a caravan for the pilgrims to Mecca.

"je

" is againſt the rules of prudence. We believe it Chap. 39.
" beſt to act with him in the ways of peace and
" mildneſs; and that your highneſs ſhou'd uſe
" all your efforts to do what he deſires of you,
" and to maintain a good correſpondence with
" him."

The fear which had poſſeſs'd Bajazet made all this appear reaſonable to him. He wrote a letter to Timur, full of ſubmiſſion and obedience, which he ſent by a Cadi of the law, accompany'd by an eloquent Emir skilful in negotiations, who went in quality of ambaſſadors to our conqueror. They arriv'd in the imperial camp at Carabagh Arran; and by the interceſſion of the Mirzas and great Emirs were admitted to an audience: they fell on their knees, and having kiſs'd the imperial carpet, preſented their letters, and gave an account of the ſubject of their embaſſy. The letter imported, "That Bajazet's letter to Timur.
" ſince by the infinite favor of the great ruler
" of heaven and earth, your highneſs has been
" rais'd to the throne of the empire of Aſia,
" we willingly reſolve to be entirely obedient
" to you: and if for the time paſt we have
" acted contrary to our duty, we aſſure your
" highneſs that we will repair the fault by our
" zeal in embracing all opportunitys of paying
" our hoqiage and ſervices."

Timur having heard the ambaſſadors harangue, and read Bajazet's letter, anſwer'd 'em in theſe terms. "Inaſmuch as we have been inform'd, Timur's anſwer to Bajazet's ambaſſadors.
" that your maſter wages war with the infidels
" of Europe, we have always caſt off all de-
" ſigns of marching into his country with our
" army, not being willing to conſent to the
" deſtruction of a Mahometan country, which
" will cauſe a great deal of joy to the infidels.
" But there can be nothing more diſagreeable to
" us,

Book V. "us, than to hear that he grants a protection
"to Cara Youſef Tuscoman, the greateſt rob-
"ber and villain in the whole earth, who pil-
"lages the merchants, murders paſſengers on the
"high-ways, and commits a thouſand other in-
"ſufferable diſorders: and what is moſt danger-
"rous is, that this wretch reſides in the midſt
"of the Muſſulman country, where he is as a
"wolf among the ſheep; and the evil he does
"is a thouſand times worſe than what a ſtran-
"ger cou'd do, tho he was the moſt powerful
"monarch in the world. If your maſter has
"a real deſire to remove the cauſes of our quar-
"rel, and keep a good correſpondence with
"us, he muſt reſolve upon one of theſe three
"things; either firſt, to put Cara Youſef to
"death as a criminal, after a legal proceſs;
"or ſecondly, to ſend him to us bound in
"chains, that being convicted of his crimes,
"he may receive the puniſhment due to 'em;
"or thirdly, that he at leaſt expel him out
"of his dominions. On theſe conditions we
"will maintain a friendſhip with your maſter
"as far as poſſible, and give him proofs of it
"by the powerful ſuccours we ſhall ſend him,
"to carry on the war againſt the infidels more
"vigorouſly."

The ambaſſadors receiv'd the emperor's an-
ſwer with all poſſible marks of reſpect. Then
his highneſs took horſe to follow the diverſion
of the chace; he paſs'd the river Araxes, and
the plain of Actam was choſen for the place
to hunt in. This vaſt country was ſurrounded
as uſual; and the circle growing leſs, the em-
peror and the Mirzas enter'd, and with their
lances ſhew what game they pleas'd. Timur
permitted Taharten and the Ottoman ambaſſa-
dors to enter the circle with the Mirzas: ſeve-

ral

ral officers of the houſhold, as Mehemed Azad, Teuckul Baourtchi, and others, had the ſame honor; and they ſlew a prodigious number of beaſts. In the mean while the circle preſs'd cloſer, and there were five or ſix ranks of ſoldiers behind one another: and then the Mirzas and Emirs came out of the circle, and order'd the kettledrums to be ſounded. The beaſts, terrify'd at this noiſe, fell upon one another in ſuch great numbers, that they form'd a kind of mountains. Then all the cavalry were permitted to kill and bind the beaſts; and the chace was ſo great, that every one took five or ſix with his own hands. Chap. 39.

After this hunting, Timur return'd to the camp; and in few days made a moſt magnificent feaſt, in which he did particular honors to the Ottoman ambaſſadors, gave 'em caps of gold, and belts; and told 'em that he wou'd take up his winter-quarters in this place, and at the ſpring ſet out for the frontiers of Natolia, where he wou'd wait the arrival of the ambaſſador whom he ſhou'd ſend to their maſter, that if he brought a reaſonable anſwer, he ſhou'd be glad; if the contrary, the ſword ſhou'd determine who was in the right. Then Timur ſent with 'em, in quality of ambaſſador, Bayazid Tchempai Eltchikede, with a letter to Bajazet; he gave 'em a numerous attendance, and then diſmiſs'd 'em all. The tenor of the letter was as follows.

Timur's letter to Bajazet.

"After the uſual compliments, we declare "to you, that if what your ambaſſadors have "ſaid be ſincere and true, it is requiſite that "what we have propos'd concerning Cara Youſef Turcoman ſhou'd be immediately put in "execution; and that you ſend to us forthwith "one of your Emirs you can moſt confide in,

"to

Book V. "to confirm with an oath the articles of a treaty of peace between us. After that, by ambassadors and letters a good correspondence shall be maintain'd between us; so that the Muſſulmans shall no longer fear any insult from either of us: otherwiſe you may expect to ſee our army enter your country, and ruin your monarchy. Safety be to him who follows the right way."

CHAP. XI.

Timur digs the river of Berlas.

IT is a common obſervation, that the grandure of princes is known by the monuments which remain of 'em after their death. Never any potentate left ſo many of theſe marks of power as Timur. Some antient prince had dug a canal into which the Araxes was brought; but this canal was at length overflown, and its banks demoliſh'd. While Timur was hunting in theſe quarters, he by chance caſt his eyes upon this beautiful relique of antiquity; and at the ſame time his ambition, and the deſire he had to immortalize himſelf, excited him to repair this canal. To this purpoſe, he croſs'd the Araxes, and regulated the manner in which this work ſhou'd be executed: the Tavatchis diſtributed the work among the Emirs, who were to take care that the ſoldiers wrought at it. This work was carry'd on with ſo much vigor, that in a month two entire leagues of the canal deep enough for a boat to ſwim in, were dug. The place where it diſcharges it ſelf into the Araxes is call'd Kiochke Tchenghichi; and the ſpring

head is at a place nam'd Sureapil. Timur gave the name of Nehri Berlas, that is, the river of Berlas: and on its banks have ſince been built ſeveral towns, villages, mills, vineyards, gardens and pleaſure-houſes. The Timur employ'd almoſt all his time in war, with deſign to render himſelf maſter of Aſia, uſing all the means of policy, which ſeconded by fortune, hath facilitated to him the conqueſts of this great empire, by a chain of almoſt incredible victorys; yet this prince, the better to tranſmit his memory to poſterity, has erected ſo many ſtately edifices and other famous monuments, that this canal, with all its beauty, ought to be accounted one of his leaſt undertakings, ſince if compar'd with the others, 'tis but as a rivulet to the ocean. Chap. 41.

CHAP. XLI.

Timur departs from Carabagh for the plains of Chemkour.

THE ſun was now in Piſces, and the ſpring was advancing, when the emperor was as much reſolv'd upon marching into the Ottoman country, the prince whereof was his enemy, as he was ſet againſt it by the conſideration of the religious war which Bajazet at that time ſo zealouſly maintain'd againſt the infidels. His heart being agitated by two different motives, he remain'd in ſuſpence. The vaſt extent of the Ottoman empire, the number and valor of its troops, who were perfectly skill'd in war, and prepar'd to defend themſelves, did not a little contribute to keep up his irreſolution. Moreover, our troops, having been employ'd

Book V. employ'd for three years in attacking place
fighting battels, and making inroads upon sev
ral enemys, were so fatigu'd, that the Em
and generals fear'd they wou'd be dishearten
by this new enterprize; yet they dar'd not d
cover their sentiments, for fear of being thoug
guilty of cowardice or weakness. They jud
it most proper to reveal their mind to Chamse
din Almaleghi, who for his great wit, eloquen
and clearness of thought, had obtain'd so mu
access to Timur, that he cou'd declare his se
timents at any time, without being in the le
thought ill of. The Emirs hereupon addres
themselves to him, and unanimously before
him to lay hold on some favorable opportuni
to make known to his highness their thoughts
his march into the Ottoman country; the
conjur'd him to let him know the consequence
it, and advise him to think seriously on it, be
fore he began it; and they even engag'd him
apprize Timur of the astrologers opinion, th
in the campain against the Ottomans, there a
pear'd in the heavens an inevitable misfortun
attending the Zagataian army. Chamseddin wil
lingly undertook this commission, and represen
ed the Emirs sentiments to Timur, which we
confirm'd by the prediction of the stars. Ti
mur having heard him, order'd Moulana Ab
dalla Lesan, one of the most famous astrologers
of the court, to be call'd before him; and to
take away all fear from the Emirs, he interro
gated him in public, and order'd him to declare
freely the different aspects of the planets, and
the judgment which might be form'd from them.
Abdalla hereupon deliver'd the following pre
diction: "It appears by the Ephemerides of

Admirable prediction of an astrologer.

"the present year, that the ascendant of this
"empire is in the highest degree of strength,
"and

and that of the enemy in the lowest degree of weakness. A comet will appear in Aries; and an army which comes from the east, will make an entire conquest of Natolia, the prince of which will be taken prisoner. Chap. 41.

The 13th of Regeb 804, Timur departed from his winter-quarters, and went to encamp in a meadow dependent of Carabagh, Arran. April 3. 1402.

The 7th of Schaban 804, which answers to the year of the Horse, and is the first day of the Gelalian year, he departed from Carabagh Arran for Chemkour; and in the mean while the Mirza Mehemed Sultan cross'd the river of Cyrus, and advanc'd along its banks. Then Timur sent Moulana Obaid Allah Sedre to Ispahan to guard the imperial treasure there; he sent to Chiraz Moulana Cotobeddin Garini, to regulate the expences of the Divan, and the revenues of the kingdom of Fars: and this monarch having pass'd by Berda and Ghendge, went down to the plains of Chemkour. They staid here some days, that the cattel might graze, and then they march'd towards Alatac. April 27.

When the army was encamp'd at Tabadar, which is on the frontiers of Georgia, on the 24th of Ramadan 804, which answers to the 18th of the month Ourdibehicht 324 of the Gelalian epocha, a son was born to the Mirza Charoc under the horoscope of Cancer. The emperor return'd thanks to God, and nam'd the prince Mehemed Dgiouki: the empresses, Mirzas, and great Emirs congratulated his highness and the Mirza Charoc on this happy birth, and the princess Canzade was appointed his governess. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who had pass'd the river of Cyrus, pillag'd the inhabitants of the mountain Alburz Couh; and then return'd to the camp at Tabadar. June 13. Birth of Mehemed Dgiouki.

When

Book V. When the army was on their march, Timu order'd the empreſſes, and the Mirza's wive to return home with the young princes; and the were conducted by Cohlugadgi. They ſtaid Tauris the reſt of the ſummer, and towards a tumn they went to Sultania. Timur at his a rival at Mencoul, not being willing to do an thing againſt the rules of policy, ſent a ſecon ambaſſador to Bajazet, with a letter in theſe term

Timur's letter to Bajazet.

"After the uſual compliments, we give yo "advice, that tho we are on our march to me "you, yet our word is the ſame as we have b "fore declar'd: if you conſent to what we d "ſire, and put into the hands of our lieutenan "the fortreſs of Kemac, which has been a "ways ſubject to the countrys under our obedi "ence, we will let you peaceably enjoy the king "dom of Natolia, that you may continue th "war againſt the enemys of the Muſſulmans "and we will not refuſe the ſuccour which yo "may expect on that account. Do what yo "think beſt for your good."

CHAP. XLII.

Taking of the caſtle of Tartoum.

TIMUR having been inform'd that there was a ſtrong place in thoſe quarters, nam'd Tartoum, in which were two hundred Georgians who refus'd to pay tribute, and inſulted the Muſſulmans and paſſengers; and that the prince who commanded 'em was abſent, and had left in his place a lieutenant nam'd Ghurdgibec: his highneſs commanded the Emirs Chamelik, Cheik Noureddin, and others, to attack the place, and take it at any rate. They accordingly

gly came before it; and ſent to acquaint the enemy, that if they wou'd willingly ſurrender, and pay the tribute, they ſhou'd have quarter: but they refus'd ſo to do, and truſting to the ſtrength of the caſtle, prepar'd to defend themſelves. Our ſoldiers made the great cry, Alla Ecber, and Salli Alla Mehammed [1]; and having inveſted the place, they gave ſeveral aſſaults, diſcharging infinite ſhowers of arrows. The beſieg'd vigorouſly defended themſelves for five days; and the ſixth the place was taken: our men put all the Georgians to the ſword, and having overthrown the walls, they rac'd the place, even to the very foundations. The governor, who eſcap'd, came to the foot of the throne to beg pardon; and obtain'd quarter for his life. Chap. 22.

Timur ſtaid at Avenic till the return of the ambaſſadors he had ſent to Bajazet. When two months beyond the time agreed on were paſt, and he had no news from the ambaſſadors, he grew impatient. "In truth, ſaid he, extraction "is a ſtrange thing. Whatever mildneſs we uſe "with regard to Bajazet, in order to preſerve "Natolia, as being the frontiers of the Muſſulman country, and hinder as far as we are "able its being deſtroy'd by our troops; yet "the Turcoman blood of this ignoble perſon "won't permit him to deal civilly with us, "and preſerve peace and friendſhip between us. "He does not ſend back our ambaſſadors, but "carrys his hatred and hoſtility ſo far, that we "are conſtrain'd to enter his country with an "army, tho we have no deſire to ſeize by force "on his dominions and effects. But this is the

[1] That is to ſay, God is the moſt great, and God bleſs Mahomet.

"reſult

Book V. "reſult of providence, whoſe depths we are not
"able to fathom: and we know not whether
"the effects are deſign'd for good or evil till
"they happen."

Timur ſent back to Sultania the ſecond empreſs Touman Aga, with the Mirza Sadvaccas ſon of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan; and he afterwards continu'd his march towards Natolia. When he was arriv'd at Erzerom, he was join'd by the Mirzas and Emirs who had paſs'd the winter in Courdiſtan and Chaldea, where they had pillag'd and exterminated the enemys, as we ſaid before, and had departed thence in the ſpring, with great quantity of booty, by the road of Coulaghi, and the mountain of Sournatai.

CHAP. XLIII.

Taking of the caſtle of Kemac. Arrival of ambaſſadors from Bajazet.

THE caſtle of Kemac is one of the moſt noted in Aſia; it is ſituate upon a high ſteep rock, and is ſurrounded with a defile in form of a labyrinth. At the bottom of its walls are gardens and parterres of flowers on the bank of the Euphrates: and no prince has ever taken it by force. Several poets have compar'd it to the terreſtrial paradiſe, becauſe yearly for three days together, little birds, as big as ſparrows, and unfledg'd, fall out of the air; the inhabitants gather 'em up, ſalt 'em, and preſerve 'em in pots. If they don't take 'em in three days, their wings grow large enough to fly away.

The

The Mirza Mehemed Sultan beſought the emperor to honor him with a commiſſion to conquer this place; which having obtain'd, he departed with the Emirs of Tomaus and Hezares, with all the arms and machines neceſſary for a ſiege. Timur being arriv'd at Arzendgian, ſent the Mirzas Aboubecre, Caſil Sultan, Sultan Huſſein, and Eskender, with the Emirs Gehan Chah, Cheik Noureddin, and Berendac, to join the Mirza Mehemed Sultan; which they had no ſooner done, than they beſieg'd the place in form. The ſiege continu'd ten whole days, during which our ſoldiers ſtop'd the water which flow'd into the place. The eleventh night they made rope-ladders, on which the Mecrit ſoldiers, who run upon the ſteepeſt mountains like roe-bucks, got to the top of the mountain; and when they were there, they fix'd cords, which they let down to the bottom. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan order'd a number of brave men, whoſe names he wrote down, to mount by theſe cords; which they did, arm'd with their cuiraſſes, during the darkneſs of the night. The beſieg'd perceiving 'em defended themſelves, and caſt down great ſtones upon 'em. Alicher, nephew of the Emir Abbas, and others, miſs'd the ſteps, and fell. The next morning our ſoldiers mounted to the aſſault, at the ſound of drums and kettle-drums; and the wild-fire in pots were caſt with machines from both ſides: our men alſo attack'd 'em with arrows and ſtones; and every one gave marks of the greateſt valor. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan us'd all his endeavors to encourage his ſoldiers. The Mirza Aboubecre did wonders; and his officers firſt ſcal'd the walls, and erected their horſe-tail. At the ſame time the others mounted on all Chap. 43.

Book V. sides, and enter'd the place, of which they made themselves masters.

Timur having advice of the taking of this place, departed from the meadow of Arzendgian, and came before the castle of Kemac, the government of which he gave to prince Taharten, because it was no more than seven leagues from Arzendgian.

From thence he began his march in earnest for the conquest of the Ottoman empire: and as several peasants and laborers were retreated into caverns and steep places, he sent Emirs to attack 'em. But these men having at a distance perceiv'd the number of his troops, were seiz'd with fear: so they came up to 'em, and with submission beg'd quarter; which was granted 'em. The army being encamp'd at Sebaste, Bayazid Tchempai Eltchik arriv'd there from the Ottoman Porte, accompany'd by fresh ambassadors from the emperor Bajazet; he gave an account to the emperor of his negotiation, and presented the answer to the letter he had writ to the Ottoman. This answer, which was very haughty and arrogant, made appear that fate had resolv'd the ruin of this monarchy: and Bajazet, to excuse his not surrendring up the castle of Kemac, alledg'd reasons very unsatisfactory to Timur's council.

The Ottoman ambassadors being admitted to audience thro the intercession of the princes of the blood, they kiss'd the imperial carpet; offer'd their presents, which consisted of ten horses of great price, several animals proper for the chace, and divers other raritys; and on their knees declar'd the subject of their embassy. The emperor having heard 'em, fell into a great passion, refus'd their presents, and thus address'd him-

himself to the person who had been the speaker: Chap. 44.
"If it were not an infamous action for princes
"to put to death an ambassador, I wou'd this
"hour separate your head from your body."
Yet having a little moderated his fury, he said:
"When fortune ceases to be propitious, counsel
"becomes useless; for tho we had no intention
"to hurt your country, yet we are constrain'd
"by that faithless prince's manner of acting, to
"make war upon him. Had he sent Cara Yousef
"to me, and deliver'd up the castle of Komao
"to my lieutenants, he might have remain'd
"quiet in his kingdom. God be thank'd, this
"castle has been reduc'd to obedience by the
"valor of our soldiers. Tell him from me, that
"since he has refus'd to attend to my counsel,
"and has carry'd his obstinacy so far, he must
"prepare himself like a brave man to sustain the
"attacks of our ever-victorious army."

CHAP. XLIV.

Timur reviews his army.

TIMUR having resolv'd to attack Bajazet in his own dominions, order'd the troops rendezvous in the plain of Sebaste to pass in review: he posted himself upon an eminence examine their ranks, arms, and countenance. hen any squadron pass'd before him, the esp in advanc'd, fell on his knees, and holding his orse by the bridle, made his compliment his highness generally in these terms: "Our lives shall always be employ'd in the service of our great emperor: we will not leave a plant or shrub in the enemy's lands; but we'll sack

Book V. "Natolia, and deſtroy the Ottoman." Timur anſwer'd theſe compliments, by encouraging 'em always to behave themſelves like brave men, rather to acquire honor, than in hopes of a reward.

Thus all the army march'd one after the other by Tomans, Hezares and Couchons, with great ceremony. But when the troops of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, which came freſh from Samarcand, paſs'd by, Timur admir'd their beauty, order and magnificence: for as good order in an army is the ſole and primary cauſe of victory, this Mirza had divided his into ſeveral bodys, which had each a ſtandard of a particular color, that they might rally when at a diſtance from each other, and be known in the heat of a battel. A certain number of ſquadrons had their ſtandards and enſigns red; and likewiſe their cuiraſſes, ſaddles, quivers, belts, lances, bucklers, clubs, and other arms, of the ſame color. Another body of the army was yellow, and another white: there were likewiſe violet and other colors in the ſame order. One regiment had all coats of mail; and another cuiraſſes. The Mirza having made his troops paſs in this pompous manner, paid his compliments to the emperor.

The review laſted from break of day till after noon, when Timur went to prayers. He order'd the Ottoman ambaſſadors to be conducted thro all the ranks: they admir'd the arms and beauty of the equipages; and were ſeiz'd with fear at the ſight of this great multitude of ſoldiers, having never ſeen any thing like it. Next day Timur gave preſents to the ambaſſadors, and at the audience of leave made the following ſpeech to 'em: "Tell Bajazet, that be-
"cauſe he employs the whole ſtrength of his empi-

" empire to make war on the infidels, we are Chap. 45.
" ſorry we muſt be conſtrain'd to conduct our
" army into his country; that notwithſtanding
" all our reaſons to make war with him, we
" are yet willing to adjuſt matters with him,
" and pardon him. He need only reſtore to us
" the officers belonging to prince Taharten,
" whom he hath ſeiz'd, and ſend to us one of
" his ſons, whom we will regard as our own
" child, and treat with more courteſy than he
" has ever receiv'd from his father. On theſe
" conditions the empire of Natolia ſhall re-
" main unmoleſted; the war ſhall ceaſe; and
" the inhabitants of his country ſhall continue
" in peace and tranquillity, and have reaſon to
" praiſe their prince's clemency, on whom the
" merit of this action ſhall fall."

CHAP. XLV.

Taking of the caſtle of Harouc.

AFTER the Ottoman ambaſſadors return, the ſpys who had orders to give advice of every thing which paſs'd, inform'd the emperor that in thoſe quarters there was a caſtle nam'd Harouc, into which a great number of peaſants were retreated, having fortify'd the place, with deſign to make an obſtinate defence. The Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Berendac were order'd to ruin this fortreſs: they departed at the ſame time, and being arriv'd before Harouc, they caſt into it ſo great a quantity of wild-fire, that they made the inhabitants retreat from their walls, and no one dar'd ſhew their heads. In the mean while the ſappers

Book V. work'd with a great deal of briskneſs, and ſoon caſt down the walls. A general aſſault was immediately given, and all the peaſants put to the ſword.

CHAP. XLVI.

Timur marches to Cæſarea in Cappadocia, and to Ancora.

WHEN the army was encamp'd in the neighborhood of Sebaſte, the guides brought advice that the road of Tocat was full of foreſts, the paſſages of which are extremely narrow; that Bajazet was arriv'd at Tocat with a numerous army, and had ſeiz'd on the paſſages of the river [1]. This oblig'd Timur to turn towards the ſouthern ſide of Natolia: He took the road to Cæſarea in Cappadocia, and ſent before Ali Sultan Tavachi to hinder the troops going into the city. Timur was ſix days in his march from Sebaſte to Cæſarea, where he ſtaid ſome time, and granted quarter to the inhabitants, as well the criminal as the innocent. Some fled for refuge into caverns and caves; whom the ſoldiers perceiving, pillag'd their effects, becauſe of their being ſo ſuſpicious. As it was the ſeaſon for reaping the corn and pulſe in that country, the ſoldiers had orders to gather enough for the ammunition appointed for 'em. Timur nam'd the Mirza Aboubecre, and the Emir Cheik Noureddin for leaders of the

[1] The river of Czel-Irmac, which falls into the Euxine or black-ſea; and paſſes by Amaſia.

ſcouts

scouts: and he departed for Ancora, arm'd with his cuiras and helmet. He march'd three days on the bank of the river nam'd Youlgoun Soui; and the fouth he encamp'd at Kircheher [a], where he had advice that Bajazet's army had been seen. Chap. 46.

Hereupon he gave orders for the army to march that way and encamp; and round the camp to dig a trench, which shou'd be fortify'd with bucklers and palisadoes: Timur sent the Emir Chamelic with a thousand horse to gain intelligence. This Emir being favor'd by the night, advanc'd about two leagues towards the enemy's cavalry; and at break of day he discover'd he was near Bajazet's camp: so he hid himself in an ambuscade to wait a good opnity. As soon as the enemy's scouts appear'd, he fell upon 'em; and a bloody skirmish ensu'd. Bajazet was very much surpriz'd, to hear that a handful of Tartars had dar'd attack his scouts so near his camp; and cou'd not refrain from expressing his sorrow at it to his Emirs: whereupon he decamp'd at sun-rise, and took the road to Kircheher. Chamelic sent a courier to Timur to give him an account of the skirmish, and of Bajazet's march. Then Timur sent Elias Goja, Sainte Maure, Mourad, and others, to the number of sixty, to gain intelligence of Bajazet: and the Emir Chamelic return'd in the evening to the imperial camp.

At break of day, Timur deliver'd his sentiments to the Mirzas and Emirs in the following manner: "There are, says he, two "different opinions with relation to our con- "duct in the present conjuncture: one is, that

[a] A city between Cæsarea and Ancora, long. 66, 30. lat. 39.

Book V. "we wait the enemy here, to give time to our "ſoldiers and horſes to repoſe themſelves from "the fatigues of a long journy; the other, "that we march into the midſt of his country, "and ravage it, which will oblige him to pur- "ſue us with expedition: and ſo we ſhall de- "ſtroy his army, which for the moſt part con- "ſiſts of infantry." He reſolv'd upon the laſt, and order'd his army to march. He left in the camp the Mirza Sultan Huſſein with two thouſand horſe; and he ſent before to Ancora [1] the Emirs Berendac, Beſteri, and other captains of companys, with orders to ſhut up the paſſage againſt the enemys they ſhou'd meet: ſome infantry were order'd to march with 'em, to dig wells in thoſe places where they were to encamp at night. Theſe Emirs march'd according to order, and were follow'd by Abderrahman Tavachi at the head of the infantry. Thoſe who had been ſent out the preceding day to gain intelligence, met a party of the enemy, whom they put to flight, cut off the head of one, and took another priſoner.

In the mean while the emperor Bajazet's ſon advanc'd at the head of a thouſand horſe towards our camp, to obſerve our motions; he paſs'd the night near our army without being perceiv'd, and laid in ambuſcade in a defile. In the morning, when our men return'd from making inroads, he attack'd 'em; and as they were but ſixty in number, he had certainly defeated 'em, tho they fought bravely, and always advanc'd towardss our camp, had he not perceiv'd the ſquadrons of the Mirza Sultan Huſſein, who

[1] A great city in Natolia, the ſame as Angburia, long. 63. lat. 43.

were

were come to their assistance: so he was constrain'd to abandon 'em, and retreat. Chap. 46.

The Emirs and infantry, who had taken the road to Ancora, acquitted themselves exactly of their orders. The cavalry march'd as far as the city, pillaging all the country: and the infantry who follow'd 'em, dug wells in the road, to get water for the rest. Timur finding the way so good, went in three days to Ancora, and encamp'd near it with all his army. An Emir, nam'd Yacoub, was governor of the fortress for the Ottoman emperor: and the garison consisted of several of the bravest men in that country, who were resolv'd to defend themselves to the last. Next day Timur took horse, and rode round the city to view it. Then he gave orders for the water of a rivulet which runs into the city to be cut off, and the walls to be sapp'd, while the sappers shou'd be back'd as usual. Some of our brave men even scal'd a bastion which looks upon the rivulet, and almost made themselves entire masters of the town: but advice was brought from our scouts, that Bajazet was advancing with design to fall upon our army in the rear, and was but at four leagues distance. On this Timur forthwith order'd the siege to be rais'd, and that those who were mounted on the bastion shou'd come down fighting: and they forthwith decamp'd.

The army march'd not far that day, but encamp'd, leaving the river behind 'em. Then a trench was dug round about the camp, and fortify'd with bucklers and palisadoes, fires being made all the night. There was a little fountain at the foot of a hill near the passage of the enemy's army: and as the Ottomans had no other water than this, Timur sent a great body of soldiers to destroy this fountain, and corrupt the water. When

Book V. When night came, Timur enter'd his closet a
usual, to humble himself before God, and b
seech him to give him the victory; when in th
most devout manner he offer'd up the followin
prayer: "O Lord, who art the great creato
"of the universe, and my particular benefacto
"it is of thy grace alone that I hold the victo
"rys I have obtain'd during the whole cour
"of my life: for what am I? Does not th
"union betwixt my soul and body depend o
"thy will? And thus, Lord, what thou ha
"done for me, redounds to thy glory; an
"thou art the conqueror and the triumphe
"On this occasion therefore I beg the continua
"tion of thy favor, which thou hast never ye
"refus'd me: why then shou'd I despair?"

CHAP. XLVII.

*Timur ranges his army in order of battel, t
fight Bajazet.*

TIMUR having spent the night in prayer
at break of day gave orders that th
drums shou'd be beat, and that every one shou'
march out of the entrenchments with their arms
to prepare for battel. Then he rang'd his army
in order. The left wing was commanded b
the Mirzas Charoc and Calil Sultan, who ha
for their lieutenant-general the Emir Solyma
Chah; and the vanguard of this left wing wa
led by the Mirza Sultan Hussein, who had unde
him Ali Sultan. The right wing was under th
command of the Mirza Miran Chah, who ha
for his lieutenant-general the Emir Cheik Nou-
reddin: the vanguard of this wing was given to
th

the Mirza Aboubecre, whose lieutenant was the Emir Gehan Chah. Chap. 47.

The main-body consisted of a vast number of the greatest lords in Asia: forty colonels at the head of their regiments were on the right, and as many on the left. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan was general of the whole body; and before him was carry'd the great staff, on whose top was a red horse-tail, and upon that a half-moon: he had for his lieutenants-general the Mirzas Pir Mehemed, Omar Cheik, Eskender, and other princes his brothers; with the Emirs Chamseddin Abbas, Chamelic, Elias Coja, and others. Timur commanded the body of reserve, compos'd of forty compleat companys well arm'd, with which he design'd to succour that part of the army which shou'd have most need of assistance. He order'd several ranks of elephants to be posted at the head of the whole army, as well to intimidate the enemy, as to serve for trophys of the spoils of India. They were cover'd with the most splendid trappings, and as usual arm'd with towers on their backs, in which were plac'd archers and casters of wild-fire, to spread terror and disorder wherever they shou'd go.

Bajazet also took care to range his army in order of battel. The right wing was commanded by Pesir Laus an European, his wife's brother, with twenty thousand cavalry of Europe, all arm'd in steel from head to foot, so that nothing cou'd be seen but their eyes. Their armor is fasten'd below the foot by a padlock, which except they open, their cuiras's and helmet can't be taken off.

The left was led by Mussulman Chelebi son of Bajazet, and compos'd of the troops of Natolia. The main-body was under the command

mand of Bajazet himſelf, having for his lieutenants-general his three ſons Mouſſa, Aiſa, and Muſtafa. The moſt skilful of his five ſons, nam'd Mehemed Chelebi, and ſirnam'd Kirichtchi, was at the head of the rear, and had for his lieutenants Balfouh Pacha, Ali Pacha, Haſan Pacha, Mourad Pacha, Aidbe, and Pachadgic, with a great number of brave captains.

Thus the Ottoman advanc'd in good order, and well equip'd, full of ardor to come to blows with our Tartars, who were not leſs deſirous of that than himſelf.

About ten in the morning, the infantry with their bucklers before 'em poſted themſelves on the neighboring hills. The drum was beat for the battel to begin, and the great cry Souroun made, at the ſound of the large trumpet Kerrenai.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Timur gives Bajazet battel, and gains the victory.

THE two armys rang'd in order of battel came in view of each other, being reſolv'd either to conquer or die. The drums and kettle-drums were beat; and Timur got off his horſe to go to prayers; following the counſel of the Santon Abdalla Euſari: then he remounted, and gave orders for attacking the enemy.

The Mirza Aboubecre, at the head of the vanguard of the right wing, began the battel by a diſcharge of arrows on the enemy's left wing, commanded by Muſſulman Chelebi, Bajazet's eldeſt ſon. The Emirs Gehan Chah and

and Cara Oſman did wonders, breaking thro the left wing. Kirichtchi, the moſt valiant of Bajazet's children, perform'd very noble actions; but when he had prov'd the ſtrength and intrepidity of our ſoldiers, he found it impoſſible to reſiſt 'em, and ſo took up a reſolution to fly with his troops. The Sultan Huſſein, who commanded the vanguard of our left wing, advanc'd vigorouſly upon the enemy's right, of whom he made a cruel ſlaughter. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan on his knees beſought Timur to give him leave to enter the field of battel; and our monarch perceiving our left wing had advanc'd too far, ſent this Mirza to back it. He accordingly march'd thither at the head of all the Behaders[1] whom he commanded; and ruſhing full ſpeed into the midſt of the Ottoman army, he broke their ranks, and put 'em into great diſorder. The Europeans on the other hand, falling upon our men, gave marks of a prodigious valor and invincible courage. Each party ſometimes repuls'd its adverſary, and were as often repuls'd by him: but at length our ſoldiers had the advantage by the death of prince Peſir Laus, as alſo by the ſlaughter of the infantry of the enemy's right wing. The Mirzas Pir Mehemed, Omar Cheik and Eſkender, with the Emirs Chamelic, Cheik Noureddin and Berendac, chas'd the enemy's infantry from the hills where it was poſted. Timur perceiving the enemy begin to give way, order'd the Mirzas and Emirs to fall upon the Ottomans with all the army. Theſe generals accordingly advanc'd ſword in hand: and quickly made ſo terrible a ſlaughter, that the great

Chap. 48.

[1] The Behaders are the braveſt men of the army, as the forlorn-hope are among us.

battel

Book V. battel between thoſe of Iran and thoſe of Touran, commanded by Rouſtem and Eſfendiar, was nothing in compariſon to it. Part of the Ottoman army was put to the ſword, and the reſt fled.

While the Mirza Mehemed Sultan routed the enemy's right wing, ſix companys belonging to this Mirza aſcended a hill, which properly was their poſt. Bajazet, obſerving their ſmall number, attack'd 'em at the head of his main-body, and having chas'd 'em from that poſt, drew up his own men there. Our ſoldiers having join'd the Mirza, rally'd; and being ſtrengthen'd with ſeveral regiments, return'd with deſign to attack Bajazet's main-body. The Ottoman emperor having carefully examin'd from the hill the diſpoſition of his army, and perceiving the diſorder, or rather defeat, of his two wings, was ſeiz'd with fear. And as ſeveral of his ſoldiers came to him, who had fled out of both his right and left wing, Timur advanc'd thither himſelf with the Mirza Charoc, and enter'd into the midſt of the enemy. The Mirza Miran Chah, with the Emirs of the right wing, and the Mirza Sultan Huſſein, with the Emir Solyman Chah, and others of the left wing, haſten'd thither likewiſe; and at the ſame time all the troops, falling upon Bajazet, ſurrounded him with his army, like beaſts in the circle of a chace. The Ottoman defended himſelf like a brave hero, and skilful warrior: he maintain'd his ground all the day, notwithſtanding the miſerable ſtate he was reduc'd to; and when night was come, he deſcended from the hill, and fled. Our ſoldiers diſcharg'd a ſhower of arrows upon him, and ſlew ſeveral of his men, while himſelf eſcap'd from that danger. Several of our brave warriors purſu'd him ſword in hand, killing

every one they met; and as the sun was in the sixth degree of Leo, it was so hot, that most of those who fled dy'd of thirst, there being no water in the place where they went to rest themselves. Chap. 49.

After the battel Timur return'd to his camp, and gave thanks to God for this glorious victory. The Mirzas and Emirs on their knees congratulated him, and sprinkled upon him gold and precious stones. This victory happen'd on friday the 19th of Zilcade 804, which answers to the year of the Horse. July 1. 1402.

CHAP. XLIX.

The taking of the Ottoman emperor, who is brought in chains before the throne of the conqueror.

BAJAZET cou'd not fly so swiftly, but that he was overtaken by our brave men, who went in pursuit of him. The Sultan Mahoud * Can seiz'd him, bound him as a prisoner, and sent him under a good guard to Timur, to whom he was presented at the hour of sun-set, with his hands bound, by the great Emirs. Timur perceiving him in this condition, cou'd not stifle the tenderness of his heart; but was mov'd with compassion, and taking pity on the misfortune of so great a prince, order'd his hands to be unbound, and he to be brought before him with respect. When Bajazet was admitted to the chamber of audience, Timur went to receive him at the door of his tent, with great ceremony; and causing him to sit down by him, he deliver'd himself to him after this manner.

* Grand Can of Zagatai.

"Tho

Book V.

Timur's speech to Bajazet.

" Tho accidents in this world happen thro
" the will of God, and no one, how powerfu
" ſoever, can conduct 'em as he pleaſes; yet it
" may be juſtly ſaid, that you are the ſole cauſe
" of the misfortunes which have befallen you.
" They are thorns which your-ſelf have planted,
" and a net which you have wove. You have let
" your feet ſtray beyond their bounds, and have
" conſtrain'd me to march againſt you, to re-
" venge my ſelf for your inſults. I cou'd not
" reſolve upon any thing, becauſe I knew that
" your troops were always at war with the infi-
" dels. I have us'd all poſſible ways of mildneſs;
" and my intention was, if you had hearken'd
" to my counſels, and conſented to a peace, to
" have given you powerful ſuccours, both of
" mony and troops, to carry on the war for reli-
" gion with greater vigor, and to exterminate
" the enemys of Mahomet. To prove your
" friendſhip, I entreated you to deliver up the
" fortreſs of Kemac, and to ſend back the family
" and officers of Taharten; as alſo to drive
" out of your country Cara Youſef Turcoman,
" and ſend to my court an ambaſſador who
" might be confided in, to confirm the treaty
" of peace between us; but you haughtily re-
" fus'd to grant theſe ſmall trifles, and contin-
" nu'd in your ſtubborneſs till affairs were drove
" to an extremity. Every one knows, if God
" had favor'd you with the victory, as he has
" me, in what manner you deſign'd to have
" treated me and my army. Notwithſtanding
" all this, to return thanks to God for my good
" fortune in this battel, I will neither treat you
" nor your friends ill; and you may reſt ſatisfy'd
" as to that point."

Bajazet's anſwer to Timur.

Bajazet, full of confuſion, confeſs'd his fault in theſe terms: " I have indeed done ill in not

" follow-

" following the counſels of ſo great an emperor, Chap. 49.
" and have likewiſe receiv'd the puniſhment I
" merited. If your majeſty is willing to pardon
" me, I ſwear that neither my ſelf nor children
" ſhall turn aſide from the paths of obedience to
" your orders."

Timur then gave him a ſplendid veſt, and comforted him by kind promiſes, and by treating him as a great emperor. Bajazet perceiving Timur's generoſity, remonſtrated to him, that his children Mouſſa and Muſtafa were with him in the battel; that his heart being tenderly affected to 'em, he beſought him to order that ſearch might be made after 'em; and if living, that they might be brought to him: adding, that this wou'd be an addition to the obligations he ſhou'd be under to him during the remainder of his life.

Then the emperor order'd the Tavatchis to ſearch every where for Bajazet's children: they found only Mouſſa, whom they brought to Timur, who gave him a veſt, and ſent him to his father, for whom he had order'd a royal pavilion to be erected near his own, commanding Haſan Berlas and Bayazid Tchempai to keep guard at the gate, and furniſh Bajazet with every thing he ſhou'd want. Timur, in uſing Bajazet after this generous manner, imitated the great prophet Mahomet, who, after the conqueſt of Mecca, return'd thanks to God, and thus addreſs'd the inhabitants: " How do you think I ſhall uſe you
" at this time?" They anſwer'd in the proverb: " You are a generous brother, and the ſon of a
" generous brother: and the generous man par-
" dons when it lies in his power." Mahomet ſaid to 'em, " I tell you the ſame that Joſeph
" told his brethren, who had miſus'd him, I

Timur treats Bajazet with honour and reſpect.

Book V. " have nothing to reproach you with; may God
" pardon you, for he is infinitely merciful."

CHAP. L.

Timur orders troops to make inroads in divers parts of the Ottoman empire. He sends relations of his victory to the citys of Iran and Touran, with orders to make publick rejoicings.

TIMUR then decamp'd, and went down to the meadow of Ancora, the governor of which place, nam'd Yacoub, came out to cast himself at his feet, and beg his pardon, after having deliver'd up the castle to the officers of the court, who resign'd it to Ali Sultan Tavachi. Then the commissarys of the Divan began to receive the tribute impos'd on the inhabitants of conquer'd places, as a ransom for their lives.

Timur sent the Mirza Mehemed Sultan northwards to the city of Prusa [a] in Bithynia, the seat of the Ottoman empire; and he was accompany'd by the Mirza Aboubecre, and the Emir Gehan Chah, Cheik Noureddin, Sevindgic, and others, with their Tomans. The emperor order'd the Emir Cheik Noureddin to stay at Prusa, and seize on all the treasures of Bajazet, and the riches of that city. He likewise commanded the Mirzas and Emirs to ravage all the country as far as to the banks of Isara Yaca [b], otherwise

[a] Call'd Brousa by the Turks; it is situate at the foot of mount Olympus; and was the seat of the Ottoman empire, before the Turks took Adrianople.

[b] A shole towards Europe.

nam'

nam'd the defile of Alexander. He alſo ſent the Chap. 50.
Mirza Eskender with ſeveral Emirs towards Iconium [3], Akcheher [3], Caraiſcr [3], Olaya [3], and Satalia [4].

Afterwards Timur order'd an account of his victory, and the conqueſt of the Ottoman empire, to be drawn up by Moulana Chamſeddin Munchi, and ſent into all the kingdoms of his empire, that public rejoicings might be made. One letter was diſpatch'd to the empreſſes at Sultania; another to the Mirza Omar at Samarcand; another to the Mirza Pir Mehemed Gehanghir at Cabul and Zabul in India; another to the Mirza Rouſtem at Chiraz, the ſeat of the kingdom of Perſia; and others into Turkeſtan, Cachgar, Cocian, Bodakchan, Coraſſana, Carezem, Mazendran, Tabareſtan, Ghilan, Azerbijana, Irac-Arabi, Irac-Agemi, Kirman, Kidget-Mecran, and the maritim countrys. The couriers who carry'd theſe letters had each of 'em a guide. On the arrival of one of them at Yezd, the Coja Cayaſeddin Sehar Semnani, who had reſided there to receive Timur's revenues, built a magnificent chappel in the middle of the great ſquare, which he nam'd the chappel of victory.

The Mirza Calil Sultan had orders to go with his troops to Samarcand, and from thence to the frontiers of Turkeſtan, and to take care of the limits of the kingdom; he was accompany'd by the Emirs Mobacher and Dolet Timur Tavachi. As the Emir Acbouga, governor of Herat, was dead, the Emir Mozrab had orders to repair to that place, and accompany the Mirza as far as Coraſſana, where he ſhou'd ſtop.

[3] Famous citys of Roum. [4] A town of Caramania.

Book V. Timur departed from Ancora, and in six days arriv'd at the fortress of Sourihhissar, the walls of which place he ascended, and observ'd the neighborhood with circumspection. He sent the Mirza Charoc to Ghulhissar [a], Estanous [b], and Ketir [c], with ten Tomans of the left wing. The emperor afterwards went in two days to Khioutahia [d], a delightful town, as well for the pureness of the air, and the charming taste of the fruits, as for the beauty of its pleasure-houses, and the number of its fountains. As this place exceedingly pleas'd him, he staid here a month, and granted quarter to the inhabitants, on paying the accustom'd ransom to his commissarys, who at the same time seiz'd on the goods which Temour Tach had laid up for a long time in this place. As soon as Timur was arriv'd there, he sent the Emirs Chamelic, Abdelkerim, and Hadgi Seifeddin, with several captains of companys, to Kiarada [e], Coja Eili [f], and Montecha [g].

Timur, being highly pleas'd with the conquest of Natolia, and the taking of the Ottoman emperor prisoner, resolv'd to make solemn feasts and rejoicings, to recreate himself after the fatigues of war. The most beautiful ladys of the court were at these diversions, where the best wines of Asia were drank, and the musicians perform'd extraordinarily. In the mean while the troops sent out to make inroads,

[a] Towns of Roum towards the north.
[b] A town of Roum northwards, long. 62. lat. 43.
[c] Or Chioutaya, a noted city of Roum, long. 61. lat. 41.
[d] A town of Roum near Rhodes.
[e] A province of Rhodes.
[f] A province near Satalia, which has a town of the same name.

plunder'd and ravag'd all Natolia. The meaneſt Chap. 51.
ſoldier became in a manner a great lord by the booty he had gain'd; and he who before had not a ſingle horſe, was now maſter of ſeveral ſtables throng'd with 'em. The whole army return'd thanks to their Creator, who had ſo enrich'd 'em. Timur diſtributed the treaſures of Temour Tach among the Emirs, which were in the cuſtody of the commiſſarys; and he reſerv'd nothing for his own uſe, to ſhew 'em that he fought rather for them, than for himſelf.

CHAP. LI.

The continuation of the hiſtory of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who had been ſent to Pruſa in Bithynia.

THE Mirza Mehemed Sultan being departed from Ancora for Pruſa, according to the emperor's order, made ſo much haſte in the five days he was marching, that of the thirty thouſand horſe he had, but four thouſand arriv'd with him at Pruſa. Yet he cou'd not get there ſoon enough to execute the deſign he had in hand; for Muſſulman Chelebi had got there before him, and fled with all the treaſures belonging to his father, which he cou'd take along with him. The principal inhabitants of the city alſo fled with their effects and familys, ſome to mount Olympus, otherwiſe nam'd Kechich Daghi, at the foot of which the city of Pruſa is ſituate; and others to the ſea-ſhore. Our ſoldiers purſu'd 'em, pillag'd and brought 'em away bound. The grand Cheik Chamſeddin Mehemed Jazari, with the chief men of Pruſa,

Book V. was met in the plains of Karya, by the Cherifs Mehemed Bocari, and Chamſeddin Fanari, and others, who were gone out to make inroads; they pillag'd the Cheik, and brought him with his ſon to the Emir Cheik Noureddin. Bajazet's wife and two daughters, who had hid themſelves in a houſe in the town of Yenicheher [1], were taken; as was likewiſe the daughter of the Sultan Ahmed Gelair, king of Bagdad, whom Bajazet had demanded in marriage for his ſon Muſtafa, and who ſtaid at Pruſa with her attendants, while her father return'd to Bagdad from the country of the Ottomans, to which he had fled for refuge from our troops.

As for Cara Youſef; as ſoon as our army arriv'd in the neighborhood of Cæſarea in Cappadocia, he fled from Pruſa to Hille, and from thence to the deſart of Arabia.

After Pruſa was reduc'd under the emperor's obedience with very little reſiſtance, the Emir Cheik Noureddin enter'd the caſtle, and ſeiz'd on what was left of Bajazet's riches, among which were a great deal of ſilver-mony, veſſels and furniture of gold and ſilver, pearls and precious ſtones, rich ſtuffs, ſplendid habits, and other curioſitys which had been laying up together a long time. Ali Semnani and Seifeddin Touni, Bitikchis or ſecretarys to the imperial council, wrote an inventory of theſe riches.

When they had carry'd away the wealth of the place, the city and caſtle were pillag'd by the ſoldiers; and afterwards the houſes were ſet on fire, which being built of wood, were ſoon conſum'd.

Burning of the city of Pruſa.

[1] Four leagues from Pruſa, and ſix days journy from Conſtantinople; the ſame as Yenicheh.

As

As ſoon as the troops which had been left be- Chap. 51.
hind were arriv'd, the Mirza Mehemed Sultan march'd to the ſea-ſhore, and ſent to Nice [*] the Mirza Aboubecre with ten thouſand men; which is one of the moſt famous citys of Natolia, the air and water being very wholeſom. Near it is a lake two days journy in circumference, whoſe water is exceeding ſweet and agreeable. This city is ſituate near the Thracian Boſphorus.

Timur ſent the Emir Sevindgic with a great body of the army to Kianende [†], and along the ſea-ſhore; and this Emir pillag'd all that country. The Mirza Aboubecre being come to Nice, march'd as far as the ſea, ſlaying and plundering all he met. Muſſulman Chelebi was there with ſeveral peaſants: but having again perceiv'd the fury of our ſoldiers, he found it was impoſſible for the Ottomans, in ever ſo great numbers, to reſiſt 'em: ſo he embark'd, and croſs'd the ſea. *A ſeaſonable retreat*, ſays the proverb, *is ſometimes as good as a victory.* Having paſs'd the Boſphorus, he went to Sara Yaca; and his wife and effects fell into the hands of our ſoldiers. After the pillage of Nice, our ſoldiers ruin'd that town, and went as far as Yenitche, ravaging every thing, and making the people ſlaves. The Mirza Aboubecre ſent advice of the taking of Nice to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, aſſuring him that all the country was reduc'd under the emperor's obedience, and that Muſſulman Chelebi was fled with great difficulty into Europe. The Mirza receiv'd this

[*] A city of Bithynia, famous for the firſt general council held in it: long. 58. 35. lat. 43.
[†] A town on the gulf of Nice.

news at his camp in his meadow of Micalidge, of which he ſent word to the emperor, as alſo of the ſtate of other affairs, by a hundred men, who immediately departed. He alſo ſent by the ſame perſons a Choncar, which is a very large bird of prey, beſides ſeveral other preſents of great price. The Mirza Aboubecre alſo ſent a Choncar by Ac Sultan.

Between Pruſa and Kioutahia, which are two days journy from each other, is a mountain full of very cloſe trees, above four leagues in length, into which ſeveral peaſants had fled for refuge: they attack'd the Mirza's meſſengers in a defile with advantage. Our men, tho far inferior to 'em, ſtood their ground; and thro Timur's good fortune, Mehemed Couroumichi Yeſouri, Ibrahim Ahmed, Facreddin, Mehemed Calander, and Keſer, defended themſelves with ſo much bravery, that a great ſlaughter enſued: and the enemy were conſtrain'd to retreat, and let 'em paſs by. They had the honor to ſalute the emperor at Kioutahia, and offer their preſents, after having given him an account of all that had happen'd.

The Emir Cheik Noureddin having ſeparated the gold and precious ſtones from the other riches of Bajazet's treaſury, of which he had taken poſſeſſion, deliver'd 'em to Chamſeddin Almaleghi, whom he ſent to Timur under a convoy of ſeveral brave men. Chamſeddin carry'd all to his highneſs at Kioutahia. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan being return'd from Micalidge, took up his quarters at Pruſa, where he was join'd by the Mirza Aboubecre, who was come from making inroads. The Emir Sevindgic alſo came there, after having pillag'd the villages on the ſea-ſhore, and ruin'd Kianende. Then the Mirza Mehemed Sultan decamp'd with all his troops,

troops, and went down to the meadow of Ye- Chap. 52.
nicheher, contiguous to that of Prusa, where the Mirza Aboubecre, with the emperor's permission, marry'd Bajazet's eldest daughter.

CHAP. LII.

Account of the Mirza Sultan Hussein, and the Emir Solyman Chah, who were gone out to make inroads.

THE Mirza Sultan Hussein, and the Emir Solyman Chah, who were gone out to make inroads in the southern parts of Natolia, plunder'd Kepec a Turcoman prince, and took the towns of Akcheker and Caraiser, in which places the Emir Solyman Chah establish'd governors to defend the inhabitants from insults. He plac'd Tcherkes Soutchi in Akcheker, impos'd a tax on the towns for the ransom of the inhabitants lives, and plunder'd every one who oppos'd him. He pillag'd the town of Tchaker Boulagh, and the hord of Caoumi Hamid; and seiz'd on so many horses, camels and sheep, that the soldiers were not able to bring 'em away. After having taken the town of Chehermata, he stop'd at Iconium: he took the tribute of Gane[1] from the soldiers he had made prisoners, which he sent to Timur. The Seid Coja, son of Cheik Ali Behader, went to the country of Aidin, which he ravag'd, killing all the enemys he met as far as the sea-shore. Bajazet's treasure was carry'd upon mules and camels to Kioutahia, where it was presented to Timur by the

[1] The tribute due to a prince from captives.

Emir

Book V. Emir Cheik Noureddin, with Bajazet's family and his beautiful slaves, who were good dancers, cou'd sing well, and play finely upon music. The generous emperor sent to Bajazet his wife, nam'd Destina[6], daughter of Laus an European, with his daughter and all his domestics; but he was desirous that that princess who till then had been tolerated in the Christian religion, even in Bajazet's seraglio, shou'd embrace Mahometanism. The Cheik Chamseddin Mehemed Jazari, who had been carry'd away prisoner of war, was likewise presented to the emperor. They brought to court the Emir Mehemed, son of Caraman, who had for twelve years been kept in chains by Bajazet. Timur honor'd him with a vest and belt, and gave him the government of all the provinces of Caramania, with Iconium, Larenda, Aksera'i, Anzarya, Alaya[7], and their dependences; and thro the protection of our monarch all these provinces remain'd without opposition in the hands of this Emir, and after him in his children.

CHAP. LIII.

Timur departs from Kioutahia.

AFTER Timur had staid a month at Kioutahia in the delights of banquets and plays, he departed from thence, and was join-

[6] The European romances call her Roxana, and say Timur kept her for his own use; the truth of which the author denies.

[7] Citys of Natolia.

in his way by the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who had left the Emir Chamſeddin Abbas with the baggage at Cheherno *, and was ſet out with the Mirza Aboubecre, the Emir Gehan Chah, and Sevindgic Behader, to return to court, where he kiſs'd the ground before the emperor, and offer'd his preſents. Chap. 25.

* Or Yenicheher.

Timur, who as emperor was oblig'd to take care both of church and ſtate, iſſu'd out a ſevere order that the brave Sainte Maure and his brother Mourad ſhou'd be put to death, for ſeveral crimes they had committed; and that even his ſon and other brothers ſhou'd be ſought for, and treated in the ſame manner: which order was immediately put in execution.

The Mirza Mehemed Sultan, with the Mirza Aboubecre, and the Emirs of his court, return'd to join the baggage, which had been left at Pruſa and Cheherno. Timur march'd towards Tangouzliq, paſs'd the mountain of Alcountach, and encamp'd in an agreeable meadow near it. He then gave orders that the Coja Firouz, prince of Iſra Yaca, ſhou'd be put to death; and he afterwards made preparations for feaſts and banquets, with muſic and dancing; and the wine was ſerv'd about by the moſt beautiful damſels of the country. Timur invited Bajazet to theſe entertainments; that as he had taſted the bitterneſs of his wrath, he might alſo partake of the ſweetneſs of his friendſhip. Bajazet was conducted into the aſſembly with great honors, and Timur did every thing he cou'd to pleaſe him: he ſpar'd neither careſſes, nor expreſſions of kindneſs and affection; and in fine, he even granted him the inveſtiture of the kingdom of Natolia, which he had poſſeſs'd before his diſgrace: then the crown was plac'd on his head, and the ſcepter put into his hand, with the

Book V. the patents usually given to princes for their governments. After this feast Timur departed, and continu'd his road towards Tangouzliq.

CHAP. LIV.

Timur dispatches couriers into divers countrys. The arrival of several ambassadors.

TIMUR sent the doctor Bedreddin Ahmed, son of the Cheik Chamseddin Mehemed Jazari, into Egypt, in quality of ambassador to the Sultan Farrudge son of Barcoc; the subject of whose embassy was compriz'd in this letter.

Timur's letter to the Sultan of Egypt.

"By the grace of the Almighty, the empire "of Natolia is now reduc'd under our autho- "rity, and join'd to our dominions. Our will "at present is, that the mony which is coin'd "at Grand-Cairo, and throughout all Egypt, "have our inscription; and likewise that the "prayer of the Coutbe be made in our august "name, and with our titles. We will also that "without delay you send Atilmich to our court: "and if, inspir'd by your evil genius, you don't "readily execute these orders, we let you know, "that at our return from the Ottoman country, "which will be shortly, we shall march to "Grand-Cairo at the head of our ever-victo- "rious army. And that you may not pretend "ignorance, we send you this ambassador, "whose merit you are sufficiently acquainted "with."

Octob. 25. 1402.

Bedreddin departed with full instructions the first of Rabiulevel 803, accompany'd by several couriers, who carry'd relations of the conquest of Natolia into Syria, with orders to make public

public rejoicings. Moulana Omar conducted the ambaſſador as far as Satalia, where he embark'd for Alexandria, from whence he was to go to Cairo; and Omar return'd after they had ſet ſail. Chap. 14.

Timur likewiſe ſent two ambaſſadors to Conſtantinople, vulgarly nam'd Eſtanbol, to the Tecour, or Greek emperor, to ſummon him to pay the tribute and cuſtoms. He afterwards ſent two meſſengers to find out Muſſulman Chelebi, Bajazet's ſon, who had fled to Iſra-Yaca, and reſided at Ghuzelhiſſar[1], which his father had built over-againſt Conſtantinople. Theſe meſſengers had orders to tell him that he muſt repair to court forthwith, or at leaſt ſend ſome mony to Timur; otherwiſe the army wou'd immediately croſs the ſea to ſeek him, which he wou'd have cauſe to repent. Some time after, the ambaſſadors who had been ſent to the Greek emperor return'd, accompany'd with two others, who came to make their maſter's ſubmiſſion to Timur. They had the honor of an audience; and having notify'd the Tecour their maſter's reſpects and obedience to his highneſs's orders, they declar'd his conſent to pay an annual tribute, and the cuſtoms, and to do every thing he cou'd deſire of him. At length the ambaſſadors offer'd their preſents, which conſiſted of gold florins, and ſeveral curioſitys. Timur impos'd on 'em the tribute he thought reaſonable; and they confirm'd it by a ſolemn treaty. Afterwards he gave 'em veſts, and permitted 'em to return home.

Embaſſy to the emperor of Conſtantinople.

[1] A town in Europe, built by Bajazet. There is another of the ſame name in Natolia, near Tire, on the river Mendouras.

When

When Timur was arriv'd at Boulouk [a], h
was join'd by the meſſengers he had ſent to Mu
ſulman Chelebi; and with them came the Che
Ramadan in quality of ambaſſador, with ſev
ral preſents of animals, horſes and florins. Th
ambaſſador, who was a very illuſtrious perſo
having been prime miniſter to Bajazet, and gra
Cadi of the empire, brought a letter from h
maſter to Timur in theſe terms. "I have t
"honor to call my ſelf your highneſs's ſerva
"If you have had the goodneſs to pardon
"father, and have done him the honor to gr
"him a place in your imperial aſſembly, acco
"ing to his rank; I have all the reaſon in t
"world to confide in your highneſs's boun
"and whenever you ſhall order it, I will co
"to the foot of your imperial throne, and p
"form the dutys of a faithful ſervant in wh
"ever you ſhall pleaſe to command me."

Timur receiv'd the letter and the ambaſſado
ſpeech very graciouſly, and return'd the follo
ing anſwer. "All that ought to have happe
"in this affair has happen'd: fate has execu
"its project. We have pardon'd all that
"paſs'd: and ſo your maſter need only co
"here without any fear, that there may rem
"no more animoſity between us, but tha
"may give him ſome marks of my favo
Then Timur preſented a belt and a cap of g
to the ambaſſador, and diſmiſs'd him.

Advice was afterwards brought that the S
tan Mahmoud Can, titular emperor of Zag
who by Timur's order was gone to make
roads in the Ottoman country, had been ſe
with a violent diſtemper at Ketchic Bourlo

[a] A town of Natolia, long. 61. lat. 40.

and had pass'd from this world into the other! at which news Timur was very much afflicted. Chap. 55.

In the mean while the Emirs ravag'd the maritim countrys of Natolia. The Emir Chamelic pillag'd Ketchic Bourlough, Acyaca, and Satalia, situate on the sea-shore. The Cheiks Ali Seblai and Hadgi Selduz were slain. The provinces of Mentecha and Teke Eili were afterwards ruin'd; and the Emirs return'd to court laden with booty. During autumn Timur lay encamp'd at Tangouzliq, to which place the Seid Coja return'd, after having pillag'd Aidin. As it was exceeding hot, and the air infected at Tangouzliq, several soldiers fell sick and died; and even Seid Coja was near the point of death, but the joy he conceiv'd at the good reception his highness gave him, reliev'd him to his health.

In this place is a fountain, whose water petrifys when it stagnates; and some soldiers, who being ignorant of its effects, had drank of it, lost their lives. A petrifying water.

CHAP. LV.

Timur regulates the winter-quarters.

TIMUR held a council with the Mirzas and great Emirs touching the distribution of the winter-quarters: he appointed a town to each colonel, and sent orders to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan to pass the winter at the town of Magni Siah [1] in the province of Serhan Eili *. This Mirza departed from Prusa to Micalidge, * Or Saroucan Eili.

[1] Long. 60. lat. 40.

where

Book V. where he ſtaid ſeveral days; from whence he march'd to Balikiſra, which he pillaged, and there camp'd in a meadow. In the night he was attack'd by Elias Soubachi at the head of a number of peaſants, of which Vefador had given advice, tho too late; for the enemy came to ſurprize our camp, while part of the ſoldiers were gone to make inroads, and the others were aſleep in the camp without any precaution. The Mirza immediately took horſe, and fell out of the camp; and the Emir Gehan Chah with the other Emirs having join'd him, they fell upon the enemy, and having ſlain ſeveral and conſtrain'd the reſt to fly, they encamp'd in that meadow, till the Mirza's equipage arrived there. The Emirs Gehan Chah and Sevindgi were ſent from this place to the town of [illegible] to pillage it. The Mirza after that went to Magni Siah, where he paſs'd the winter; this town is ſituate at the foot of a mountain, watered by many rivulets, the waters of which are wonderfully good, and the air is ſweet, even in winter.

The Mirza Charoc, with the troops of the left wing, had the province of Ghermyan for his winter-quarters; and he encamp'd between Olouc-Bourlough and Ketchic-Bourlough.

Timur departed from Tangouzlic, and marched to Dougourlic, a town full of goods and all ſorts of delicious fruits, to the inhabitants of which he granted quarter on the payment of a tribute for their ranſom. Then he croſs'd the river of Mendouras * on a bridg which Bajazet Ilderim had built, and encamp'd on the other ſide

* Or Madre, a river which paſſes by Tire in Natolia, Aidin, and falls into the Archipelago.

where

where he gave audience to the Emirs Mehemed and Esfendiar, sons of the Emir Mehemed prince of Mentecha, who made him a present of a thousand horses. Timur, after giving 'em an honorable reception, presented 'em with a vest, a belt and a crown. Esfendiar follow'd the court, and Mehemed consented to pay the tax, and return'd to the place of his residence, with the receivers Elias Coutchin, Firouz Chah, and Mirouz Chah Cherbetdar. Timur being arriv'd at Ghuzelhissar, staid there some days till the entire payment of the ransom was made. Near this place was a mountain, in which two hundred peasants had fortify'd themselves: these rash fellows slew and pillag'd our soldiers, who were gone out to fetch in wood and forage. Timur being inform'd of this, resolv'd to attack 'em in the night. Several of our soldiers who were engag'd, invested the mountain, and at break of day fell upon these villains, whom they cut in pieces, and afterwards return'd to the camp. The doctor Abdelgebbar Carizmi fell sick, and died in this place. Chap. 15.

Timur departed some days after from Ghuzelhissar, and went to encamp at Ayazlic, where he staid several days: he order'd 'em to pay the tribute for their ransom, and establish'd a governor, and a comptroller of the finances. From thence he went to encamp before Tire, one of the most noted citys of Natolia, the inhabitants of which he oblig'd to pay the ransom for their lives: and those who were gone with the Emir Mehemed prince of Mentecha, to receive the sums these people were tax'd at, return'd loaded with ready mony, jewels and divers curiositys, and bringing with 'em several horses and other beasts, from this Emir; all which they presented to Timur.

In the mean while the emperor was inform'd that there was an exceeding ſtrong place on the ſea-ſhore, built of free-ſtone, ſurrounded with the ſea on three ſides, and on the other with a deep ditch, entirely built with lime and mortar, from the foundation to the top; that it was inhabited by Europeans, and nam'd Ezmir or Smyrna; that the Greeks eſteem it a holy place, and go in pilgrimage thither with great devotion; that near it is another fortreſs on the ridge of a mountain, alſo nam'd Ezmir, but inhabited by Muſſulmans, who inceſſantly wage war with the others, becauſe of the difference of their religion; and as the Smyrna of the Chriſtians is ſurrounded by the ſea on three ſides, the Europeans ſupply 'em with ammunition and all neceſſarys, looking upon this place as of great importance, ſeeing it is at the extremity of Aſia and of the Muſſulman country; that it had never been taken by any Mahometan prince, nor paid tribute to any; that Amurat Bajazet's father, had ſeveral times appear'd before it at the head of a formidable army, but to no purpoſe; and that Bajazet had laid ſiege to it ſeven years in vain; that this place, as ſtrong as that of Kaiber*, very much molested the Muſſulmans, whoſe blood was always running into the ſea like torrents.

* A place celebrated in the oriental romances.

CHAP. LVI.

Timur besieges Smyrna, and takes it.

WHEN Timur was inform'd of the state of Smyrna, his zeal for religion inspir'd him with the thoughts that it was his duty to deliver the Musulmans from troubles, by exterminating their enemys. Whereupon he sent thither the Mirza Pir Mehemed, son of Omar Cheik, the Emir Cheik Noureddin, and others, to summon 'em forthwith to embrace the Musulman religion, according to Mahomet's order; which if they shou'd be so fortunate as to do, they shou'd be well treated, and partake of his favours; and if they would leave their obstinacy, tho they still remain'd Christians, and pay the tribute, he wou'd fix the sum, and order the receit: but if they undertook to defend themselves, he won'd order 'em all to be put to the sword.

The Mirzas and Emirs being arriv'd before Smyrna, sent an ambassador to invite the inhabitants to turn Musulmans, as well by menaces as promises: but as they were predestin'd to perish, it all prov'd in vain. Mahmous, the governor, had sent to demand succours of all the European princes, so that there was assembled a great number of the bravest Christian captains, or rather a band of desperate wretches, who had laid up ammunitions in the place. Our generals sent advice of all this to Timur, who resolv'd to march thither in person. He left the baggage at the foot of the mountain of Tiaq; and tho it was winter, and great rains had fallen,

Book V. yet he took horſe that he might acquire the merit of this religious war. He arriv'd at Smyrna on ſaturday the ſixth of Jumaziulevel 805, and ſent orders to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who was in his winter-quarters at Magni-Siah, to repair to him. The ſame order was ſent to the Mirzas Miran Chah and Aboubecre, as alſo to the Emir Gehan Chah and others.

Dec. 6. 1402.

At Timur's arrival before Smyrna, the drums and kettledrums were beat, and the great cry made by the whole army. The place was immediately attack'd on the land-ſide; and each general order'd the ſappers to work, and the machines and battering-rams to be got ready over-againſt his reſpective poſt; while arrows were ſhot, and pots of wild-fire thrown upon the gates of the caſtle. The Emir Chamelic built in the midſt of the water, great ſcaffolds with three feet, near one another, on which they laid planks: and from the two ſides of the caſtle, to the place where the foot of the ſcaffolds touch'd the ground, they made an even way, which they ſecur'd on each ſide, ſo that the ſoldiers might fight upon it with ſafety, as if they were on land. The Muſſulmans, arm'd with their bucklers, mounted the ſcaffolds, from whence they gave aſſaults upon the caſtle: and as the way was ſhut up to the ſea-ſide, it was impoſſible to bring any ſuccour to the beſieg'd.

In the mean while the Mirzas Mehemed Sultan and Miran Chah arriv'd, having left the baggage at Magni-Siah under the conduct of the Emir Chamſeddin Abbas: which re-inforcement did not a little ſerve to forward the ſiege. Then Timur order'd a general aſſault. The Emirs of Tomans, and the colonels of Hezares, advanc'd with their troops, againſt their

their respective posts; and the assault lasted from morning till evening, and from evening till morning, wherein the bravest men of both sides perform'd actions of the greatest valor. If the attack was carry'd on with resolution, the defence was equally so. The battering-rams and other machines beat down the walls and towers; and the dauntless besieg'd never ceas'd throwing pots of naphtha and wild-fire, arrows and stones. In the mean while it rain'd in such abundance, that a second deluge seem'd approaching; notwithstanding which, the indefatigable Timur was always giving orders to his generals, and exciting his soldiers. After the sappers had done undermining, and prop'd up the bastions and courtines with stakes, they put in a great number of fascines done over with naphtha; which having set on fire, the walls on a sudden fell down, and with 'em several of the besieg'd, who were thereby destroy'd. The Musulmans forc'd the enemy to quit the breaches, and then enter'd the place, returning thanks to God, and crying out, *Victory!* A few escap'd slaughter by casting themselves into the sea, and swimming to the vessels; while others were drown'd. After our soldiers had put the inhabitants of Smyrna to the sword, they raz'd the houses, as well of the city as of the castle, casting their arms and movable goods into the sea. There were come from certain parts of Europe great ships nam'd Caraca, with two masts, and some with more, which brought over soldiers and arms to succour the Inhabitants. When they were come near the place, and beheld the town and castle in ruins, they were struck with fear, and anchor'd. Timur order'd that some of the Christians heads shou'd be thrown into these ships, which the flingers of wild-fire ac- Chap. 56.

Book V. cordingly did. The mariners seeing their companions heads, return'd in fear, and frustrated of their hopes. From the beginning of the siege to the ruin of the place there pass'd but two weeks; which very much astonish'd the men of that country, who were acquainted with the strength of the place; and especially Bajazet. Every one acknowledg'd that Timur was the greatest and most formidable monarch that ever appear'd in Asia. The author of this history in his travels afterwards pass'd by the walls of Smyrna, which then belong'd to the Musulmans; and one of his companions having related to him the history of this place, the author expresst himself in these words: "Smyrna hath been ruin'd by "Timur in less than two weeks, tho the Ot- "toman emperor in vain besieg'd it seven years; "judge from hence the power and conduct of "each of 'em."

CHAP. LVII.

Second arrival of ambassadors from Bajazet's sons.

DURING these transactions the Che Ramadan, who came once before in quality of ambassador to Timur from Musul Chelebi, arriv'd here again; and being admitted to an audience, offer'd large presents of hor and other animals, curious stuffs, and florins gold; and with abundance of submission the following speech: "I take the liberty "represent to your highness, that since you ha "been pleas'd to pardon the emperor Baja "and load him with honors and favors, eve "

" one is freed from the fears he was in, and Chap. 17.
" even hopes for advancement thro your high-
" ness's benevolence. The prince Mussulman
" my master, who looks upon himself as one of
" the meanest servants of your court, and is re-
" solv'd to obey the orders with which you
" shall honor him, with all imaginable sincerity,
" waits with impatience for an opportunity to
" give you the true marks of his respect, and
" his desire to expose his life in your highness's
" service, to whom may God continue ever-
" lasting glory and prosperity."

The ambassador having ended his speech, Timur was touch'd with compassion for the deplorable condition to which Mussulman was reduc'd: he confirm'd him in the principality of all the country of Isra Yaca [1], for which he issu'd out patents, which he seal'd as usual with his red hand; he honor'd the ambassador with a magnificent vest, and a horse richly caparison'd, with a saddle of gold; and having given him a vest wove with gold, a crown, and a belt for Mussulman Chelebi, he dismiss'd him.

About the same time arriv'd an ambassador, nam'd Cotobeddin, from Issa Chelebi, another of Bajazet's sons: being admitted to an audience, he kiss'd the earth, and made his presents; which Timur having accepted, the ambassador deliver'd his message, declaring his master's respect, and obedience to whatever his highness shou'd order. Then he return'd, after having receiv'd the usual honors, and the testimonys of friendship for his master.

Timur afterwards gave orders to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan to besiege the castle of Fodgia [2],

[1] Isra Yaca is Turky in Europe.
[2] A town on the gulf of Smyrna.

Book V. ſituate on the ſea-ſhore, a day's journy from Smyrna, becauſe ſeveral European Chriſtians had retreated thither. The Mirza immediately departed, and encamp'd before it; and was about to beſiege it in form, when the governors of the place ſtruck with terror at the name of Timur, came out to caſt themſelves at the Mirza's feet; and with ſubmiſſion and obedience gave conſent to pay the tribute, provided quarter was granted the inhabitants. The Mirza agreed to their propoſal, impos'd a tribute on 'em, and nam'd commiſſarys to receive it; after which he return'd with his Emirs and troops to Magni-Siah, where he had left his baggage.

CHAP. LVIII.

Timur departs from Smyrna.

AFTER the deſtruction of Smyrna, and the extirpation of the enemys of the law, Timur took care to reſtore peace and quiet to the Muſſulmans who inhabited the other caſtle, giving 'em veſts, bucklers, cuiraſſes, bows and arrows, ſabres, lances, and all ſorts of arms, to enable 'em to carry on the war of religion in theſe frontiers againſt the Europeans, and hinder the Grecian Chriſtians ever paſſing into Aſia this way; and he order'd 'em to build a ſtrong citadel near the place where Smyrna ſtood.

After Timur had deliver'd the Muſſulmans from the continual inſults they receiv'd from the Chriſtians of Smyrna, loaded 'em with favors, and ſuccor'd 'em with arms and mony, he departed from this country, and went to encamp

at Ayazlic, where he was join'd by the Emir Solyman Chah, who had departed from Ancora to make inroads, return'd by Efouac, and join'd the Mirza Charoc at Caraigadge; but he came alone to court, and after his audience went back to join the said Mirza. Chap. 58.

Embassy from the prince of Chio.

An European nam'd Soba, prince of the island of Chio [1], in which mastich grows, having heard by credible persons of the great valor and power of Timur, sent him several presents by an ambassador, whom he order'd to acquaint him that he was one of his meanest servants, willingly consented to pay the tribute, and was ready to obey his highness's orders, hoping Timur wou'd design to give him some marks of his clemency. The ambassador being arriv'd at the imperial camp, was admitted to an audience, where he made an harangue in the form his master had instructed him. Timur handsomly receiv'd the king of Chio's offer of service, promis'd protection to him and his subjects; and after having fix'd the sum for a tribute, made a peace with him: he gave a vest to the ambassador, whom he honor'd, and permitted to return home.

Timur then sent the Mirza Eskender, son of Omar Cheik, and Ali Sultan Tavachi, to plunder the country of Bezem; they enter'd the capital of it, and having taken the ransom for the inhabitants lives, return'd to the imperial camp.

After this Timur decamp'd from Ayazlic, and being arriv'd at Tangouzliq, he was join'd by the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who had left his winter-quarters at Magni-Siah, and having taken the road of Alicheher before the rest, came

[1] An island in the Archipelago.

to

Book V. to court with a ſmall number of his domeſtics. Timur order'd him to march at the head of the troops of the right wing by the road of Ancora, and rejoin the imperial camp at Cæſarea. This Mirza ſtaid at Tangouzliq till all his troops had join'd him. Timur departed from thence for Sultanhiſar; he order'd a great number of peaſants, who were got together in the neighboring mountains, to be put to the ſword; and he gave the towns of Chiouta, Tangouzliq, and Caraeheher, as well as the demeſn of the province of Ghermyan-Eli, to Yacoub Chelebi, to whom the principality of theſe provinces fell by right of ſucceſſion. This Yacoub had formerly fled from Bajazet into Syria, after the conqueſt of which kingdom he follow'd Timur's court. The emperor iſſu'd out his patents to this purpoſe; and honoring him with a veſt and belt, left him in this place, the principality of which remains in the hands of his children to this day.

The court took the road of Olone-Bourlough, where it was join'd by the Mirza Charoc, who was come from his winter-quarters. As this place had not yet ſurrender'd, Timur gave orders that it ſhou'd be attack'd. It was taken in a very ſhort time: and as the Emir Gelaleddin had been ſlain by an arrow, all the men were put to the ſword, and the women carry'd away captive, after the razing of the place.

CHAP. LIX.

Taking of the towns of Egridur and Nasibine.

IN the province of Hamid-Eili is a lake of ſweet water, five leagues in length, and four in breadth, into which ſeveral rivers fall, and go out again by other paſſages; and round it are kitchen-gardens, orchards, and cultivated lands. On the bank of the lake ſtands a town nam'd Egridur, built of free-ſtone; three of its ſides are ſurrounded by the lake, and the fourth by the mountain. This lake is nam'd Falac Abad by ſome hiſtorians. Near the town, in the midſt of the lake, are two iſles; one nam'd Ghuliſtan, and the other Naſibine: in the latter, which is exceeding large, is built a fortreſs with houſes and gardens. The people of the neighboring places had convey'd thither their mony and beſt effects; and abundance of ſoldiers were got into it, who had laid up ſtores of all ſorts of ammunition, believing themſelves ſafe, becauſe of the lake which ſurrounds the place. Timur being inform'd of all this, conceiv'd it wou'd redound to his honor to conquer this place: whereupon he order'd the baggage to be conducted by the road of Akcheher.

About this time Bajazet falling ſick, Timur order'd ſeveral skilful phyſicians of his court, as Moulana Azeddin, Maſaoud Chirazi, and Moulana Gelaleddin Arab, to attend him with the ſame care as they wou'd uſe towards himſelf: and Bajazet was conducted with the baggage,

Timur

Book V.

Feb. 28. 1403.

Timur departed from Olonc-Bourlough, and in two days and one night arriv'd at Egridar the 17th of Regeb 805 in the morning. Next day the Mirzas and Emirs march'd towards the walls of the town: some ascended the mountain, while others attack'd the gate by the foot of the mountain; they gave assaults on all sides, and soon made themselves masters of the town, which they enter'd in a furious manner, and put most of the inhabitants to the sword, a few only escaping to Nasibine in boats.

Then Timur caus'd floats to be made of the skins of oxen and horses, on which the Mirzas and Emirs croſt over to attack Nasibine, which they surrounded, ordering the drums to be beat, and the great cry made. The inhabitants were surpriz'd, not imagining they cou'd have been besieg'd by water. The governor Cheik Baba, perceiving he was unable to defend himself, went out, and besought the Mirzas to intercede for him. They brought him to Timur, before whom he kiss'd the ground, submissively begging pardon and quarter. Timur order'd that he and his family shou'd follow the army. Thus Nasibine was taken by our troops, who brought to the camp all the riches they cou'd find, which Timur distributed among 'em.

Then Mobacher's son arriv'd from the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, to give notice that this prince was fallen sick. Timur was exceedingly griev'd, and sent a skilful physician to him immediately, to discover the true state of his illness, and bring him back certain advice of it.

The court at length decamp'd, and march'd toward Akcheher; they met the troops of the left wing, and the Mirza Charoc's camp. This prince made a feast for Timur, and offer'd his presents; as did likewise the Sultan Hussein and the

the Emir Solyman Chah, who strove to excel each other in entertaining the emperor. At this time the Emir Mehemed Caraman came to court from Iconium; and under the name of a ransom, he presented such vast sums of silver money, curious stuffs, and great numbers of horses and camels, that it was believ'd he did more than he was able, considering the small extent and power of his country: upon which Timur distinguish'd him by several honors, and confirm'd him in his principality. As the emperor had before deliver'd him from prison, where he was detain'd by Bajazet, and had restor'd to him his father's estates, so he again join'd other countrys to his demesns, and dismiss'd him: after which the court departed, and continu'd its march. Chap. 60.

CHAP. LX.

The death of the Ottoman emperor Bajazet, and of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, Timur's grandson.

THE world is so inconstant, that we may rather look upon it as a continual destruction, than an agreeable habitation, since there is nothing of a certain duration but God: a melancholy instance of which we find in Bajazet, who died of an apoplexy at Akchehen on thursday the 14th of Chaban 805; at whose death Timur was so extremely affected, that he bewail'd the misfortune of that great prince with tears. He began to reflect how providence often baffles human projects; for he had resolv'd, as soon as he had finish'd the conquest of Natolia, to raise the March 23, 1403.

dejected

Book V. dejected spirit of Bajazet, by re-establishing him on the throne with greater power and magnificence than he had before been possess'd of; but fate had otherwise order'd it.

Timur being got to the frontier of Akcheher, Dané Coja arriv'd from the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, with advice that doctor Farrudge had given some medicine to the prince, which had had an ill effect; and that the vapors having got into his brain, he was fallen into a delirium. This news very much afflicted the emperor, who dispatch'd away Dané Coja post, to acquaint the Mirza that he wou'd soon be with him.

Timur encamp'd at Akcheher, where he comforted Bajazet's officers by several largesses bestow'd upon 'em. He made a present to his son Mousa Chelebi of a royal vest, a belt, sword, and a quiver enrich'd with precious stones, a load of gold, and thirty horses: he likewise gave him his letters-patent seal'd with the impression of his red hand; and then dismiss'd him, telling him that the coffin of the deceas'd emperor his father was laid by his orders in the tomb of the Cheik Mahmoud Hairan at Akcheher; and that it shou'd be convey'd to Prusa with all the pomp and magnificence us'd to the greatest kings, to be inter'd in the mausoleum, which he had built there himself.

Timur then left the baggage, and departed from Akcheher, for the place where the Mirza his grandson lay sick. On his way thither he learnt that the hord of Turcomans nam'd Dogot, whose chiefs were Kezerbei and Ibrahim, had revolted, and were entrench'd in a mountain near the great road, hoping to defend themselves there. Some troops being order'd against 'em, they block'd up all the avenues, and invested the mountain; and then attacking the Durgots with

the

their arrows, they fled. Our soldiers pursu'd Chap. 6.
'em sword in hand, slew several on the spot, pillag'd their horses, camels, oxen and sheep; and made their wives and children slaves, to serve as an example to mutineers.

The sixteenth of Chaban, Timur met Dolet Coja son of Eltchi Bouga, who gave advice that the Mirza's sickness increasing, his life was despair'd of. This oblig'd Timur to hasten his march; and being come to the place where he was, he went up to his bed-side, where finding him very ill, having lost his speech, he became very disconsolate. Timur order'd the Mirza to be put in a litter, and departed the same day. When they had march'd three days journy, and were come near Caramiar*, they encamp'd; and here the great and mighty prince, the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who was but nineteen years old, pass'd from this life into the other, on the 18th of Chaban 805, which answers to the year of the Sheep, the sun being in the last degree of Pisces. Thus died this great prince, who tho but a child in a manner, had already obtain'd more victorys, and perform'd greater actions of valor, than many famous heroes recorded in history.

March 25.

March 27. 1403.

* A city long. 70. lat. 38.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXI.

Mourning for the death of the Mirza Mahemed Sultan: and the translation of his coffin.

THE natural love which fathers bear towards their children, was not the only motive that afflicted Timur for the death of the Mirza; but the great things which this young prince's virtue promis'd, were the principal cause of his excessive grief: he flung his crown aside, and quitted his throne, rent his clothes, and cast himself upon the ground in the most surprising transports of grief. This caus'd a great change in his temper: and in this delightful season of the spring, instead of being cheerful, the princes and lords of the court cloth'd themselves with hair-sacks, and black and blue habits, with felts about their necks. The ladys did the same; and they sprinkled earth upon their heads, and fill'd their bosoms with stones: they would take no rest but upon chaff and ashes, instead of bedding; and nothing cou'd be heard in the court but groans and lamentations, especially from the princess Canike, wife of the deceas'd, who was so overcome with sorrow, that she often fell into swoons, and lost her senses.

Such is the stated course of affairs in this world; we shou'd not place our confidence in it, for those who do, will at last repent: but we belong to God, and must return to him. Timur order'd the Mirza's coffin to be convey'd in a litter to Avenic by two hundred horsemen, commanded by seven Emirs; and that

that when they arriv'd there, Quaisel and Chop-Ourdoucha shou'd lay the corps in a new coffin, and carry it to the tomb of the prophet Caidar in the town of Sultania; from whence it was afterwards to be translated to Samarcand: and he likewise gave order that the other five Emirs shou'd stay at Axenic with a litter and an empty coffin, whose covering shou'd be nail'd up.

After their departure Timur return'd to the camp, and then set out from the meadow of Akcheher to continue his journy. The grief was beyond comparison; and not only the courtiers, but even the soldiers of the army, never ceas'd from weeping. When they had march'd some days journy in this condition, the principal Emirs and ministers of state came to the emperor, and falling on their faces, remonstrated to him, that all the soldiers of the army continu'd in such excessive grief, that nothing was ever like it; that the continuation of this grief did not become the majesty of so august a court; that it was better he shou'd arm himself with patience, and endeavor to comfort his royal heart. They at last persuaded Timur, tho with great difficulty, to compose his mind, and live after his usual manner; so he gave orders for every one to leave off their mourning-habits, as being of no advantage to the deceas'd.

CHAP. LXII.

Arrival of ambassadors from Egypt.

WHEN Timur's ambassadors, whom we before mention'd, were arriv'd at Grand-Cairo, they found a handsom reception. Far-

Book V. rudge, ſon of Barcoc, ſirnam'd Elmalekennaſer, king of Egypt and Syria, having been inform'd of all that had paſs'd between Timur and Bajazet, whom he had eſteem'd the moſt powerful prince in the univerſe, was now convinc'd that it wou'd be wrong to think of dealing with Timur upon any other foot than that of an entire ſubmiſſion and perfect obedience; and he repented of the difficulty his father and himſelf had made of ſending back Atilmich. He hereupon held a council with the principal perſons of ſtate; and with their approbation releas'd Atilmich out of priſon, admitted him to an audience, treated him in an honorable manner, and made divers apologys for what he had done. He caus'd the mony to be coin'd, and the prayers read in the auguſt name and titles of Timur; and ſent back Atilmich, with two ambaſſadors, Ahmed and Acta, beſeeching Atilmich to be his interceſſor at the court. Farrudge order'd his ambaſſadors to make known to Timur his repentance for his former faults, his conſent to pay the annual tribute, and what he had done in relation to the mony and the public prayers. He ſent as a preſent, by the ſame perſons, abundance of gold and ſilver mony, precious ſtones, belts, Alexandrian ſtuffs, ſwords of Cairo, horſes of a fine breed, and other curioſitys.

As ſoon as they enter'd the frontiers of the Ottoman country, Atilmich ſet out before 'em for the court; and having the honor to ſalute the emperor, he inform'd his highneſs of the affairs of Egypt, and of the Sultan and people's fears. The ambaſſadors ſoon arriv'd at court; and being admitted to an audience, declar'd to the emperor the intentions of the Sultan their maſter, and offer'd their preſents.

Timur

Timur was again pleas'd to shew his clemency to the king of Egypt, and spake to 'em as follows. "I know that Farrudge lost his father "when very young; which will make it my "glory to take care of this young prince, and "be to him as a father. If he continues firm in "his obedience, which is the only way of secu-"ring himself, we will give him testimonys of "our benevolence, and grant him succours, "with which he may preserve his kingdom, "provided he zealously continues in the service "of the two holy citys of Mecca [a] and Me-"dina." He afterwards presented vests, belts, and crowns to the ambassadors, and permitted 'em to return home; giving 'em a crown, a royal mantle, and a belt enrich'd with pretious stones, for the Sultan Farrudge their master, to whom he promis'd his protection. Chap. 63.

CHAP. LXIII.

Timur marches against the Caratatars, or black Tartars.

CARATATAR is a nation of Turks, which Hulacou Can [b] listed into his army when he was sent into Iran by Mangou Can emperor of the Moguls. Hulacou being establish'd on the throne at Tauris, and having experienc'd the malice of this wicked people, oblig'd 'em to reside with their familys in the fron- A. D. 1256.

[a] All Mahometan princes take upon 'em the title of the servants of the two citys of Mecca and Medina.

[b] Brother of Mangou Caan, and grandson of Genghis Can the great.

Book V. A. D. 1320.

tiers of Natolia and Syria. When by the death of the grand Can Abousaid *, there remain'd no longer in Iran any absolute emperor of the race of Genghiz Can, this people revolted, and divided themselves into fifty-two hords, every hundred chusing a particular residence, being all resolv'd to live independent. When Bajazet, after the reign of Cadi Burhaneddin at Sebaste, was become master of this kingdom, he enroll'd 'em in the Ottoman army, and gave 'em a residence in his empire: and as there were no great taxes or tribute to pay in these parts, these Tartars enrich'd themselves, and became exceeding powerful. But Timur, who design'd to make 'em change the place of their residence, and to fix 'em in the colonys of Gete, that they might repeople that country, treated their chiefs in an honorable manner when they came to salute him: he gave 'em robes wove with gold, belts and swords of gold, with several largesses. As no one insulted 'em in the least manner during the whole course of this war, but suffer'd 'em to continue quiet in their hords; this sufficiently denoted that they were in obedience and subjection, or at least ought to have been so.

When the ambassadors of Egypt arriv'd at court, Timur staid three days among the Caratatars; and after having held a council, and maturely deliberated about the ways of bringing his enterprize to perfection, he resolv'd to remove 'em out of that country, and conduct 'em into Transoxiana. But as there were between thirty and forty familys of 'em, he order'd the Mirzas and Emirs to surround 'em, each on their respec-

* Son of Codabende king of Persia, and of the race of Genghiz Can.

tive

tive ſides, ſo that none of 'em might get away, but not to do 'em the leaſt damage. Accordingly the Emir Gehan Chah, with the Emirs of the right wing, and the troops of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, took the road to Tocat and Amaſia. The Emir Solyman Chah, with thoſe of the left wing, march'd by Cæſarea and Sebaſte: Timur went by the plains of Amaſia and Cæſarea, the reſidence of the Caratatars; and he ſent the Mirza Charoc, with the Sultan Huſſein, to cut off their paſſage, and hinder any one's flight. Chap. 53.

The emperor having paſs'd the bridge of Kircheher, after ſeveral days march, arriv'd at the country of the Caratatars, whoſe chiefs he order'd to be call'd before him. There came two of 'em, Akhi Tebarec and Murvet: they kiſs'd the ground before the emperor, who gave 'em a handſom reception, preſented 'em with veſts and belts wrought with gold, and ſwore he wou'd never do 'em the leaſt harm. "It is a long while, "ſays he, ſince your anceſtors came out of the "country of Touran, which was their antient "reſidence, into theſe foreign lands, by the or"ders of the emperors our predeceſſors. As "all that vaſt country is at preſent govern'd by "one maſter, God having brought it under my "obedience, you ought to look upon this op"portunity as very fortunate to you; and re"turn from hence, with your wives, children, "ſlaves, cattel, and other riches, under the "convoy of our ſoldiers, to the country of your "anceſtors, where you may paſs your life agree"ably under the ſhadow of our protection."

? I believe it ſhou'd rather be Acſara.

The chiefs return'd thanks to Timur, and assur'd him that they were ready to obey his orders with pleasure; that they look'd upon it as a piece of good fortune to be under his protection; and that they were resolv'd to spend their lives in his service. Timur order'd they shou'd be divided into companys and regiments, and distributed among the Emirs of the Tomans. Being thus made to decamp with their cattel, they began their march; they were prohibited buying any sheep or horses, that they might be less embaras's'd in the roads, and that if they shou'd endeavor to fly, they might the better be prevented.

CHAP. LXIV.

Timur returns from Natolia.

TIMUR was highly pleas'd with his conquest of Natolia, of which he was become the absolute and sole monarch, without any opposition, and with the love of all the people; which great affair he had brought about by the strength of his arms and the valor of his soldiers, at the same time that he won the hearts of the people by his good conduct. This vast conquest, by the divine assistance, was finish'd in less than a year; and thro-out all Asia Timur's name was stamp'd on their coins, and the prayers were read with his august titles.

For these reasons his majesty resolv'd to return to the seat of his empire; he caus'd the great standard to be display'd, and began his march with all the army. He sent orders to the empresses Serai Mulc Canum, Touman Aga, Tchelpan

pan Mulo Aga, and Canaade, mother of the deceas'd Mirza Mehemed Sultan, to come and meet him as far as the borders of Avenic. This new emperor of the leſſer Aſia, being arriv'd at Cæſarea in Cappadocia, the inhabitants fill'd with fear, conceal'd themſelves in caverns: whereupon he ſent Ali Sultan Tavachi, with a good troop of ſoldiers, in ſearch of 'em; who having found 'em, they defended themſelves againſt him, and ſhot him with an arrow in the Vena-cava, of which he dy'd upon the ſpot. Yet theſe rebels being vanquiſh'd and taken, Mehemed, brother of Ali Sultan, caus'd 'em all to be put to the ſword, to revenge his death. Chap. 64.

Afterwards Timur departed for Sebaſte, where he confer'd ſeveral honors upon Cara Oſman [1], and ſent him back into his principality. From thence he went to Arzendgian, where Taharten, like a faithful ſervant, offer'd his preſents to the emperor, of horſes, cattel, and other things, nine of each ſort. Taharten follow'd the court two days journy; and then Timur, honoring him with a royal veſt, permitted him to return home. He ſent back the meſſenger who had brought advice of the empreſſes departure from Sultania, with orders that the princes ſhou'd haſten, that ſo they might arrive at Avenic before the ladys. Timur being come to Erzerom, was join'd by the Mirzas Oluc-Bec, Ibrahim Sultan, Mehemed Gehanghir, Aidgel, and Sadvaccas, his grand-children; he tenderly imbras'd 'em, and was over-joy'd to ſee 'em; but he cou'd not refrain from tears at the ſight of the Mirzas Mehemed Gehanghir

[1] Made governor of Sebaſte by Timur when he Maleſis; he was ſon of the Cadi Burhaneddin, prince of Sebaſte.

and Sadvaccas, because of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan their father's death.

CHAP. LXV.

The manner in which the death of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, son of Gehanghir, was made known to Canzade his mother.

THE empresses who were set out from Sultania, made preparations at Tauris for mourning for the Mirza Mehemed Sultan: they cloth'd themselves in black, and then came to Arenic, according to the emperor's orders. When they were inform'd that Timur was near the place, they acquainted the princess Canzade with the death of her dear son: upon which she was so transported with grief, that she swoon'd away; and being a little recovered, she tore her clothes, and twisting her hair about her fingers, began to pluck it off by degrees: she spit blood, and tore her lovely cheeks with her nails: she swoon'd away the second time, on seeing all the ladys, whose heads were cover'd with black mantles, and who cou'd utter nothing but crys and lamentations.

Timur being encamp'd, they began their crys afresh; and nothing was to be seen more dismal than this court, which at other times was the gayest and most magnificent of all Asia. He order'd that to moderate the princess's affliction, the empty coffin, nail'd down very strongly, and fasten'd with a lock, shou'd be presented to her: she twisted her self round it, crying and groaning: "My eyes, said this disconsolate princess, were continually looking towards the

"public

" public road, in expectation of some news of Chap. 5.
" my dear child; which wou'd have been the
" delight of my soul. I did not expect this cru-
" elty from fortune, this fatal dagger, which
" thus breaks my heart at the sight of this cof-
" fin. O deplorable condition! O wretched
" Canzade! O unfortunate prince! thou wast
" design'd for the throne of the empire of Iran;
" but merciless fate has snatch'd the sceptre from
" thy hands. It is not without cause that a tor-
" rent of blood gushes from my eyes, and I make
" the earth red with my tears; since, my dear
" son, thou hast thus pierc'd my heart in thy
" tendereſt age."

After this excess of mourning, Timur judg'd it proper to do something for the spiritual good of his soul, which lives as well in the other world as it did in this: he gave alms among the poor, and provided a funeral banquet. The Cherifs, doctors, grandees and nobles of all Asia assembled together for this ceremony: they sat down according to their rank at the emperor's table; and a Hafiz, with a Nazer, the lecturers, read over the Alcoran several times. The banquet was serv'd up by the emperor's stewards: and the Mirza's brass-drum was beat, at which the ladys, the Emirs, and soldiers, as well masters as servants, on a sudden made a great cry, and wept bitterly; and then the drum was broke to pieces, according to the custom of the Moguls.

The doctors and Imams, who came from Tauris, Sultania, Cazuin, and other places, to salute the emperor at his return, and pay their compliments of condolence, endeavor'd in several conferences to comfort him and the princess: they forgot not any of Mahomet's counsels on this occasion, and strove to incite 'em to patience, assuring 'em that the deceas'd were tormented

Book V. mented by the lamentations of their living relations, and that it was hurtful to their souls. By the force of their eloquence, they perſuaded the emperor to arm himſelf with patience againſt the aſſaults of affliction caus'd by ſo ſad a misfortune. Timur then permitted an order to be iſſued out for leaving off the mourning-habits, black ſcarfs, hair-ſacks, and other marks of grief. He loaded the doctors with favors and honors, and after having given 'em veſts, ſent 'em back to their reſpective reſidences.

The end of the fifth book.

BOOK VI.

A war in Georgia. Timur's return from a campain of seven years. The defeat and pursuit of Eskender Cheikh, prince of the race of the antient Persians. Timur's departure for the conquest of China. His death at Otrar, near the river Jaxartes, and his interment at Samarcand. The strange revolutions which happen'd after his death. The Mirza Calil Sultan his grandson, son of Miran Chah, usurps the crown; and the ruin of that prince occasion'd by his prodigality, and passion for a woman.

CHAP. I.

Timur marches into Georgia.

TIMUR-BEC's greatest ambition being to merit the happiness promis'd to those who wage war with the infidels for the advancement of religion; and Ghourghin king of Georgia, having fail'd in the prin-

Book VI. principal article of the treaty made the preceding year, which was to have come at a fix'd time to cast himself at the emperor's feet, and beg pardon; his highness took up a resolution to march again into his country. To this end, he departed towards Mepcoul, where he receiv'd the submissions of Malek Issa prince of Merdin[1], who repenting of his fault in not coming before to pay his homage, and knowing he should be ruin'd if he lost Timur's favor, confidently set out to come to court; where he presently address'd himself to the Mirza Charoc, whose protection he besought. This Mirza brought him to the throne, where with his head uncover'd, like a criminal, he beg'd pardon on his knees. Timur having reprimanded him, forgave his fault and comforted him by his kind promises. This prince brought the tribute for several years past, which he paid exactly, and made abundance of handsom presents. The emperor gave him a crown, a royal vest, and a belt set with precious stones; and as an addition to the former favors conferr'd on him, his daughter was betroth'd to the Mirza Abouberer, and so he had the honor to be ally'd to Timur.

At the same time Yoram grandson of Acbouga, a Georgian prince, came to pay his homage to the emperor, and made several presents of curious animals and fine horses; being introduc'd by the great Emirs, with Custendil brother of Malek Ghourghin, king of Georgia who was at war with him. There came also the lords and princes of all the neighboring places, to pay their respects, and offer their pre-

[1] A strong city and a principality, near the Tigris, in Mesopotamia.

sent

sents. Timur receiv'd 'em with all manner of civility according to their birth and quality; he assur'd 'em of his favor, and presenting 'em with vests, sent 'em back to their respective countrys. Chap. 2.

CHAP. II.

The government of Chiraz a second time given to the Mirza Pir Mehemed, son of Omar Cheik; and that of Ispahan to his brother the Mirza Rouſtem.

IN the neighborhood of Mencoul, Timur again inveſted the Mirza Pir Mehemed, ſon of Omar Cheik, in the government of the royal city of Chiraz, capital of Perſia; for which he diſpatch'd out his letters patent; and made the Mirza ſet out for that country, after having given him a veſt and a belt, and nam'd for his miniſters Lutfallah, ſon of Beyan Temour, ſon of Acbouga, and Tchel-Panchat Berlas[1].

Then he diſpatch'd orders to the Mirza Rouſtem at Chiraz to come to court. The meſſenger found him in the ſummer-quarters of the palace of Caſrizer, and deliver'd his commiſſion. The Mirza immediately ſet out, and being arriv'd at Canſar, a place dependent on Gurbadecan, he receiv'd a pacquet from court, by which he learnt that the emperor had given him the government of Ispahan[2], ordering

[1] Two old men of great experience and truſt.

[2] Capital of Hircania or Irac-Agemi, where the king of Perſia at preſent reſides.

Book VI. him to send his baggage thither, and go to Ouroudgerd to rebuild the fortress of Ormyan. The Mirza Pir Mehemed, who was sent to Chiraz, also arriv'd at Cansar. These two brothers tenderly embrac'd each other, and entertain'd themselves with conversation on the present state of affairs; and afterwards they separated, and took their respective roads. The Mirza Pir Mehemed departed for Chiraz; and Roustem, having sent a lieutenant to govern Ispahan in his absence, went with expedition to Ouroudgerd, the fortress of which he rebuilt and repeopled the city.

CHAP. III.

Timur sends the Mirza Aboubecre to rebuild the city of Bagdad, and gives him the government of Irac-Arabi and Diarbekir.

WHEN the court was arriv'd in the neighborhood of Cars[1], Timur order'd the princes his children, and the great lords of the state to come before him; and then made the following speech to 'em. "The war which "the inhabitants of Bagdad have heretofore "undertaken against us, having been obstinately "continu'd by them, has been the cause of the "desolation of their state, our vengeance having drawn upon 'em a total ruin. Nevertheless, if we consider that this is one of the "principal citys in the Mahometan world, the "the knowledg of the law deduces its origi-

[1] A city of Armenia near Georgia.

fro

" from thence, and that the doctors of other Chap. 2.
" countrys have drawn from this source the
" most sacred parts of religion, and the most
" useful learning; it wou'd be a crime utterly
" to destroy this famous city: wherefore we
" design to re-instate it in its former flourish-
" ing condition, that it may again become the
" seat of justice, and the tribunal both of reli-
" gion and laws."

The emperor's speech being universally applauded, he entrusted the execution of this commendable project with the Mirza Aboubecre, giving him the government of the provinces of Irac-Arabi, as far as Vaset, Basra, Curdistan, Merdin, Diarbekir, Oirat, with all their dependences; and appointing for the great officers of his court the Emirs Payende Sultan, Pir Hussein Berlas, Sevindgic, Sultan Sendget, Hadgi Seifeddin, Dolet Coja Einac, and others, with a great body of the army. Timur order'd the lords of Irac-Arabi to obey him, and mark'd out his road by the province of Diarbekir: he strictly enjoin'd him to exterminate all the disturbers of the public peace, who remain'd in that country, and to be in Irac-Arabi in the autumn, when the equinox renders the air more temperate. The emperor likewise instructed him to begin with ruining Cara Youlef Turcoman, who had made himself master of Irac-Arabi; and afterwards to encourage and comfort the inhabitants of the country, that they might rebuild their houses, and cultivate the lands; and in fine to employ all his care in restating Bagdad in its former splendor, that the following year there might depart people enough out of that city, to form a caravan for Mecca.

With

With regard to Cara Youſef Turcoman, and his uſurpation, we muſt know that that prince, for fear of our troops, fled into the country of Roum or Natolia; but when our army arriv'd at Cæſarea, he again fled from thence into Irac-Arabi, where having aſſembled all the Turcoman hords, he ſtop'd at Payan-Hit. The Sultan Ahmed Gelair at that time went out of Bagdad, and retir'd to the Sultan Taher his ſon; but the Aga Firouz, in whom the Sultan Taher repos'd the care of his affairs, excited a jealouſy in his maſter: whereupon he held a council with his father's Emirs, Mehemed Bei governor of Ormi, the Emir Ali Calander, Mirzayh and Fatrac Chah, who likewiſe fear'd the Sultan Ahmed, and unanimouſly agreed to revolt; and having paſs'd the bridge during night, they encamp'd on this ſide the river. When the Sultan Ahmed was inform'd of it, he broke down the bridge, and marching along the bank of the river, ſtop'd in preſence of his ſon and the Emirs: he ſent an expreſs to Cara Youſef to come and join him; which Youſef having done, they paſs'd the river together. The two armies being rang'd in order, a battel enſu'd, in which the Sultan Taher was vanquiſh'd: he endeavor'd to fly; but coming to a brook, and deſiring to make his horſe leap over it, he fell with his horſe and armor, and periſh'd.

The Sultan Taher having been thus puniſh'd for his revolt againſt his father, his Emirs and troops diſpers'd; and the Sultan Ahmed, becoming jealous of Cara Youſef, went to Bagdad. Cara Youſef came out of Hille with his army to the gates of Bagdad, and took the city. The Sultan Ahmed hid himſelf to ſave his life, but was perceiv'd by one nam'd Cara Haſſan, who aſſiſted him in making his eſcape during the night.

night; and taking him upon his shoulders brought him to a place near five leagues distance. On their way they met a man who had an ox, which the Sultan mounted, and went to Tecrit with Cara Hassan. Sheik Omar Cheik, governor of that place, made a present of forty horses to the Sultan Ahmed, with what money, arms, stuffs, and belts he was able. The Sultan was join'd in this city by several of his officers, as the Cheik Mactoud, Dolcay, Jadel, and others. From Tecrit he went to Damascus, while Cara Youssef became the peaceable possessor of Irac Arabi. This digression was necessary for the better understanding of the history.

When Timur therefore made the Mirza Aboubecre depart for Bagdad, he sent orders to the Mirza Roustem at Ouroudgerd, to join Aboubecre before Bagdad, and march with him against Cara Youssef. The Emirs Toukel, Arab Bouga of Hamedan, Tastum Soufchi of Dinavend, Chah Roustem of Sendgian and of Dimaver, had likewise orders to march to Bagdad with the Mirza Roustem. The Mirza Aboubecre arriv'd at Arbele, and caus'd the governor Abdalla, and the other chiefs of the rebels to be seiz'd and sent bound to Courha, with a present of Arabian horses, the sale of which he gave to the Sultan. At this place died Bayendor Sultan Berlas; and the Mirza Aboubecre having left the baggage, march'd with expedition against Cara Youssef. The Mirza Roustem departed from Ouroudgerd, according to orders, and having taken the road to the mount of Hamrin-Lic, he pass'd to Bagdad, and join'd the Mirza Aboubecre in the neighborhood of Hille.

CHAP. IV.

Timur's arrival at the frontiers of Georgia.

TIMUR having decamp'd from the neighborhood of Cars, enter'd Georgia. After having pass'd thro Armenia, the Chaik Ibrahim prince of Chirvan, as a faithful servant was gone before to make inroads into the enemy's country, and had already seiz'd on some passages and defiles. Malek Ghourgin, king of Georgia, heard with a great deal of surprize of the march of the imperial standard. Fear excited him to send ambassadors to court with several presents; and the subject of the embassy was comprized in this speech.

"There is no comparison, great Sir, between you and me, who am your slave, and it is very astonishing that you should have propos'd to march against so mean a subject as I am, who am absolutely resolv'd to behave my self as your faithful servant and upon the first order I shall receive from you to severe whether to send in money, or to march at the head of my troops in your service, I will not fail of acquitting my self faithfully and readily. I have not the confidence to come down directly to cast my self at the foot of your throne, for fear has too far seiz'd my heart; but if your highness shall please to grant me a short reprieve, till my fear is blown over, I will run to kiss your feet, as the prince of Mardin, and other governors have done: and I shall have the honor to prostrate my self before you, and receive your orders as a slave, acknowledging this favor as an excess of your bounty."

Timur

Timur wou'd not hearken to what the ambaſſadors ſaid, nor accept their preſents: he told 'em, that their maſter's affair was no ways like that of the other princes, who were Mahometans, because the intereſt of religion pleaded for them, and render'd their faults more pardonable; but he being a Chriſtian, ought not to expect the ſame favor; that if he was deſirous of life, he muſt come directly to court, but if the grace of God ſhou'd not grant him ſufficient aſſiſtance to enable him to embrace the Mahometan religion, he wou'd impoſe the tribute* of the Carage on him, leave him once more the principality of his country, ſend him back contented, and ſuffer his ſubjects to live in peace, without fear of being either murder'd, pillag'd, or made ſlaves; and thus his honor and reputation wou'd remain unblemiſh'd. He likewiſe told 'em, that the emperor of Conſtantinople, as a Chriſtian, was on the ſame footing with him; that if Ghourghin had come to court, he wou'd have learnt how that prince had been treated, and what favors he had receiv'd; and that he ought to judge of his own caſe by the others: but if their maſter made the leaſt difficulty of coming, none of his excuſes ſhou'd be accepted of. At length the ambaſſadors were diſmiſs'd. Chap. 4.

About this time Beyan Coutchin, governor of Tauris, came to court with the comptrollers and great officers of Azerbijana: they offer'd their preſents, conſiſting of a great number of horſes, animals, and other things. Ali Chatani, chief of the Divan of Coraſſana, for the Coja Ali Semnani, came alſo to offer his pre-

* A tribute which the Mahometan princes exact from the Chriſtians or Jews who inhabit their dominions.

sents, which were distributed among the officers.

The season for the corn-harvest in Georgia approaching, it was requisite that the Georgians should be hinder'd from reaping and carrying it in; whereupon Timur order'd the Emir Ghaik Nouradin, and other Emirs, to enter the enemy's country forthwith; in effect, they chas'd out all the inhabitants, and destroy'd every thing with fire and sword; they reap'd all the corn and pulse, which they ground into meal, and so return'd laden with spoils to the imperial camp.

CHAP. V.

The taking of the famous castle of Corman in Georgia.

THERE is a steep mountain in Georgia, a hundred and fifty cubits high, situate between two very deep defiles: on the south of it is a rock, which surpasses it in height, and which they ascend with ladders and cords. There is but one way to this mountain, and that very narrow and crooked; besides, the precipices which surround it hinder an army from encamping and besieging it. The Georgians had fortify'd this mountain on all sides, having built houses upon it, and a gate at the very extremity, with cisterns to preserve rain-water. It was commanded by a Georgian prince nam'd Pral, who had under him thirty great Gihaours, and a strong garison; they were not apprehensive of any scarcity, their cisterns being full with water, their cellars furnish'd with delicious

cious wines, and the place ſtor'd with ſwine and sheep. Chap. 33.

Timur being appriz'd of the importance of this place, reſolv'd to take it, notwithſtanding the great difficultys which wou'd attend the ſiege, as it was in the midſt of the enemy's country, and wou'd require a great number of ſoldiers to carry it on, who wou'd not be able to find victuals and even water enough for 'em. Every one was ſurpriz'd at this undertaking, and believ'd it impoſſible to take the place; unleſs the ſole fear of Timur, who deſign'd to go thers in perſon, ſhou'd ſeize the hearts of the beſieg'd, and make 'em ſurrender: but God had otherwiſe order'd it.

The imperial ſtandard arriv'd before the caſtle of Cortene on the 14th of Muharrem 806. The inhabitants immediately ſent to ſalute the emperor, offer him their preſents, and aſſure him of their ſubmiſſion; but ſeeing their flatterys cou'd not hinder the place being attack'd, they confided in the ſtrength of their walls, and declar'd war by a diſcharge of arrows and ſtones. Timur at the ſame time order'd the Emirs to take their poſts round about the place; the Emir Chamelic was fix'd on the ſide of the gate, having orders to build ſconces over-againſt it; two other Emirs had likewiſe orders to erect two ſconces in different places. This was done, that if the ſiege ſhou'd laſt too long, a garriſon might be put in 'em, to incommode the place. Chamelic finiſh'd in three days one of theſe ſconces capable to contain three thouſand men; which excited the admiration of the whole army. Aug. 13. 1403.

Timur encamp'd behind the fortreſs in a place proper to build battering-rams and other machines, and order'd a platform of ſtone and wood, which is call'd Meljour, to be built between his

Book VI. camp and the caſtle, ſo high that it ſhou'd command the place, tho the Georgians had imagin'd that the height of their mountain wou'd have preſerv'd 'em from all manner of inſults. This work was not finiſh'd in leſs than a week;

Aug. 20. and on the 21ſt of Muharrem, a Mecrit, nam'd Bikidgek, who was skilful in marching over mountains, found means during night to get unperceiv'd upon a rock, ſouth of the caſtle; there he caught a goat, and carry'd it to the very top of the rock, where having kill'd it, he plac'd it for a ſignal, and then deſcended without being ſeen by the Georgians. Next day Bikidgek related his adventure to the emperor, who applauded him, and gave orders for ſome very ſtrong cords to be made of raw ſilk and thread, and ladders to be made of the cords: and then four Mecrits immediately aſcended this rock, and drew up the ladders with long cords. On

Aug. 22. the 23d of Muharrem this deſign was executed: they mounted by an arch, which a goat could ſcarcely paſs. A tree having grown out of the very ridge of this rock, they faſten'd the ladders to it, when they had drawn 'em up. The Emir Chamelic ſtaid at the bottom of the ladders, and made fifty of the braveſt Turks of Coraſſana aſcend, whoſe names he took down in writing: Argoudae was one of 'em. The Georgians were faſt aſleep while theſe things were paſſing. At break of day a Coraſſanian cried out with a loud voice, Allah Ecber, and bleſs'd Mahomet. Mahmoud, an officer of the Mirza Charoc, at the ſame time ſounded his trumpet; and the Georgians ſurpriz'd at the alarm given 'em by the watch, ran to their arms to defend themſelves. Timur took horſe, paſs'd the defile, and ſtop'd over-againſt the rock, which our brave men had mounted: he

order'd

order'd the brass drum to be beat, and the great cry Souroun made thro-out the whole army. Chap. 5.

In the mean while, the way to the place by the rock being very narrow and dangerous, no more than three persons being able to march in front, one of our brave warriors march'd foremost, holding his buckler before him; he was sustain'd by two others, who advanc'd with him, but an arrow struck him in the mouth, which made him fall backwards, and the enemys seiz'd on his buckler. Abdalla Sebzuari advanc'd sword in hand, and slew some Georgians, till being mortally wounded in ten or twelve places, he fell down thro weakness. The Turk Mahmoud fell upon the enemys with a heavy club, with which he broke the leg of a very considerable Oznaour. In fine, of the fifty men who had mounted to the assault, several arriv'd at the gate of the castle, where a bloody skirmish ensu'd. Some also continu'd to attack the place from the Meljour before mention'd, so that the gate was broke, and the troops enter'd the castle.

This conquest happen'd the 23d of Muharrem, after a siege of nine days. The besieg'd begg'd for quarter on their knees: but most of the Oznaours or officers were precipitated from the walls; the governor, Tral, was bound and carry'd to the imperial camp with the whole garison, of whom not one escap'd. At the same time the Toughe[1] and standard of Mahomet was erected upon the walls; and the Muezins repeated the prayers of the Alcoran on the top of the church, and made the cry Yaan, which is

Aug. 22.

[1] A standard on whose top is a horsetail.

us'd to call the Mahometans to prayer. This conqueſt deſerves to be recorded in hiſtory; and it is reported that the great Mahmoud Subectekin never gain'd ſo conſiderable victorys over the infidels of India, as our conqueror did over thoſe of Georgia. Timur order'd [illegible] all the gariſon to be beheaded, and their wives and children carry'd away captive; and he gave Tral's wife as a preſent to the Cheik [illegible] prince of Chirvan.

Timur afterwards order'd the machines, and Meſjour, which had been erected against the place, to be burnt; and he return'd to his camp, where he heap'd honors and favors on Bikiguch and the other brave men who had firſt mounted the rock; he order'd mony out of his exchequer to be diſtributed among 'em, and gave 'em robes, ſabres, belts, horſes, mules, tents, umbrellas, young women, camels, furniture, and even gardens and villages in their reſpective countrys. He inveſted Mehemed Touran, ſurnam'd the King of Bauran, who was one of the principal lords of Coraſſana, in the government of the place, aſſigning him a good gariſon of Coraſſanians; he gave him the revenues of the neighboring countrys, and enjoin'd him to preſerve theſe frontiers for the Muſſulmans, and not permit the Georgians to gain any more footing in the country; he order'd him to convert the church into a moſque, and build a niche inſtead of the altar, and in lieu of bells and croſſes, to eſtabliſh Muezins and readers of the Alcoran, according to the Muſſulman law.

CHAP. VI.

Relation of what past at sundry times.

DURING these transactions, the doctor Cotobeddin Carini came to court with all the great officers of Chiraz; he offer'd several presents of the finest stuffs, Arabian horses, mules for riding, and furniture, as pavilions, tents, umbrellas, and other curious things. Afterwards Hadgi Muzaffer arriv'd from the Mirza Rouſtem, and made his preſents. The Cola Muzaffer Nehauni alſo came from Iſpahan, and preſented a great quantity of mony, pearls, precious ſtones, horſes, ſaddled mules, ſtuffs, tents and pavilions, as likewiſe droves of horſes and mules of carriage, with arms, and veſſels and boxes of gold and ſilver. Timur diſtributed all theſe preſents among the princes and lords of his court.

About the ſame time Ideeou Berlas and Ahmed Daoud, who had been ſent to Kirman, to receive and take care of the imperial treaſures, as alſo Seifel Mulouk Hadgi Abdana, receiver-general, return'd to the Imperial camp: they had an audience of the emperor, who gave em a handſom reception, and to whom they offer'd their preſents after the uſual manner; they were accompany'd by the principal inhabitants of Kirman, and among others by Moulana Zyaddin Serradge, the Cheik Sedreddin, who were both Cadis, the Seid Hamza, and the Cheik Mahmoud Zendghi Adgem, author of the book call'd Dgiouch or Khouroueh, which treats of

the

Book VI. the exploits of the glorious Timur; but this learned author had the misfortune to fall from off the bridge of Teflis, which is built over the river Cyrus, and be drown'd: his son, who continu'd that work after his father's death, paid his respects to the emperor, who receiv'd him with a great deal of kindness, and comforted him by his favors for his father's death.

Youssef Gelil, Deroga of the city of Yezd, and Cayaseddin Salar Semnani, receiver-general of the revenues of the same city, as well as the commissarys of the Divan of Yezd, came also to court; as did all the great officers, and governors of the several provinces and citys of Georgiana and the two Iracs, who paid their homage at the foot of the imperial throne, and offer'd their presents, which consisted of the greatest curiositys of all Asia.

CHAP. VII.

Timur marches to Abkhaze.

AFTER the taking of Cortenes, Timur summon'd the lords to a diet, where he made a magnificent banquet, and distributed his favors among the officers, according to their ranks. He then took up a resolution to march to Abkhaze: he order'd the Emirs Cheik Noureddin, Chamelik, and others, to go out before with several squadrons, to ravage and lay waste Georgia, as far as Abkhaze, which is the northern frontier of that kingdom. They accordingly began their march; but as the ways were full of woods, the soldiers were oblig'd to cut down the trees to open a passage; and the

ruin'd every thing they met with in the countrys of the Armenians and Georgians. They were follow'd by the imperial standard, and Timur soon after enter'd into the middle of Georgia, where he plunder'd seven hundred towns and villages, laying waste the cultivated lands, ruining the monasterys of the Christians, and razing their churches to the very foundation, which were built of marble and free-stone. Chap. 4.

But the Georgians having abandon'd their houses, were retir'd into caverns situate among rocks and high mountains, which they had ascended by ladders, which they drew up after 'em; and had fortify'd themselves in these caverns. Timur order'd a sort of boxes to be tied with chains, in each of which he plac'd several persons arm'd: these boxes were let down from the top of the mountain with great cords to the level of the caverns, where our dauntless soldiers attack'd the enemys with their arrows, and advanc'd to the mouths of the caverns with their swords and lances. They made their way into 'em notwithstanding the number of the enemys, and the advantage of their post; and tho in some of these caverns there were near a hundred Georgians, yet they leap'd out of their boxes into them, where they put all to the sword, making themselves masters of their spoils, and acquiring the merit of the Gazie. They punctually fulfil'd the Alcoran, which enjoins us to treat the enemys of the Mussulman religion with rigor; and they rooted up and burnt the trees, making black rock every where.

The 14th of Rabiulevel 806, the Emirs and troops rejoin'd the imperial camp: next day they all pursu'd the chace, and took a great deal of game. Timur hunted the day after, and continu'd to ruin the country, slaying all the Georgians he met. Octob. 12. 1403.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Timur returns from Abkhaze. The taking of Tauris. His return.

SEVERAL Georgian lords, who were slaves in Timur's army, having sent advice to king Ghourghin that this conqueror had render'd himself master of the country as far as Abkhaze, and that there remain'd no bulwarks either of Armenia, or of the Armenians; that prince was seiz'd with fear, because this advice came from men of his own nation: whereupon he immediately sent ambassadors with presents to Timur. The remonstrance the Georgian slaves made to Ghourghin on this occasion resembles the counsel the bishop of Nedgeran gave to his own people in the time of Mahomet. There goes a tradition that the inhabitants of Nedgeran being come to Medina, were so stubborn and proud as to dispute with Mahomet, and not receive the instructions he would have taught em. Then the lord Ali, with Mahomet's daughter Fatima, and two grandsons Hassan and Hussein, came to the assembly to dispute with the Christian bishop: but this doctor being surpriz'd at what he saw, far from disputing, said, "The men I now behold have their faces irradiated: if they shou'd beseech God to remove the mountains of the place, he wou'd assuredly grant their request; and if they shou'd be suffer'd to offer up their prayers against the Christians, not one of em would remain alive." These words of the bishop struck terror into the Christians, who consent-

ed to pay the annual tribute; after which they return'd to Nedgeran, because their bishop had on this occasion seen the ladys of Mahomet's family transform'd into angelical beautys. It seems as if some such vision had engag'd the Georgian slaves to write thus to Malek Ghoursinn.

When the ambassadors of the king of Georgia were arriv'd at court, they address'd themselves to the generals of the army, and besought 'em to intercede for them, humbly remonstrating that their master was perfectly submissive and obedient; beseeching 'em to employ their good offices to appease Timur's wrath, and obtain pardon for their master, who would not fail of sending immediately to court all his riches and curiositys, and likewise the annual tribute: and even promising, that he should send to the imperial camp, whenever he had orders so to do, the troops which should be requir'd of him.

This discourse touch'd the Emirs, who introduc'd the ambassadors into Timur's presence, who gave an account of the subject of their embassy as usual; and the generals having found a favorable opportunity, on their knees related to Timur Malek Ghoursinn's propositions, and spake to him as follows.

It is certain, that your highness's intention in all your wars is only the increase and honor of the Mahometan religion; we see that God has bless'd your zeal in such a manner, that the Mussulman law has never before arriv'd at so high a pitch of glory in these countrys; for former emperors, and the most powerful Sultans of antiquity, accounted themselves happy when the Georgians gave only a few marks of their respect and obedience, either by sending a yearly present of horses,

"or by furnishing a small number of troops,
"when their occasions requir'd 'em in some
"war: and on these conditions the Georgians
"liv'd freely in Persia and the Mussulman
"kingdoms. But at present, thro' your high-
"ness's great power, they esteem themselves
"happy, even in being shut up within the in-
"most parts of their kingdom, as long as they
"have quarter granted 'em for their lives. The
"Mussulmans have enter'd their capital city,
"and enjoy themselves there, as if they were
"the masters of 'em. And thus, if your high-
"ness will grant 'em quarter on paying the
"tribute, and exactly obeying your orders, they
"will become faithful servants, and acquit
"themselves of their duty with entire submission
"and sincerity."

All the Emirs cou'd say, was not able to abate the emperor's zeal for the continuation of the Gazie; which oblig'd these lords to propose the affair to the doctors of the law and to the Muftis, who unanimously declar'd in the imperial council, that since the Georgians consented to pay the tribute, and not to injure the Mussulmans, they were oblig'd by their law to grant 'em quarter, without doing 'em any further harm either by slaughter or pillaging. According to the conclusion of the doctors, and in condescension to the prayers of the Emirs, Timur granted this favor to the Choik Ibrahim, one of the intercessors; and nodded to him, a token that in respect to him he condescended to the request of king Ghourghin. He sent back the Georgian ambassadors between hope and fear: and afterwards he spent several days in these quarters in the diversion of the chace, till the return of the ambassadors, which happen'd soon. When they came back, they brought with 'em

'em a thousand gold medals struck in the name and august titles of Timur, with a thousand horses, and great quantitys of curious stuffs, as also vessels of gold, silver and chrystal, and a very fine balass ruby, of a beautiful color, weighing eighteen Medicales, there being few which weigh so much. They presented the whole, and oblig'd themselves by an oath to pay the rente.

Then Timur prepar'd to return home; he decamp'd, and after some days march arriv'd at Tefis, having ruin'd all the churches and monasterys in the neighboring parts. When he had gone two days journy beyond the river of Cyrus, he resolv'd to march to Carabagh to rebuild the town of Bailacan: he sent out before with some of his favorite lords, and having pass'd by Barda, encamp'd near Bailacan, where he was join'd a fortnight after by the army and baggage, who also encamp'd there.

CHAP. IX.

Timur orders the town of Bailacan to be rebuilt.

THE Alcoran remarks, that the rebuilding of places is one of the most glorious actions which princes can perform in this world, and which conduces most to the good of society. When the army decamp'd in autumn, Timur was incited to take up his winter-quarters at Carabagh: where, not to lose time, and to keep the troops in action, he resolv'd to rebuild the town of Bailacan, which had been a long time ruin'd, so that it was inhabited only by insects, serpents, owls,

Book VI. owls, ſerpents and ſcorpions. Tho' the ſeaſon was very cold, and the rains continually incommoded our ſoldiers, yet Timur ſoon after his arrival gave orders to the engineers and architects to draw the plan of the town, which ſhould conſiſt of a wall, a ditch, four market-places, and a great number of houſes, baths, caravanſeras, ſquares, gardens, and other commodious places. They laid the foundations, and having mark'd 'em with lines, the emperor divided the work among the ſoldiers, under the inſpection of the Chahzades[1] and Emirs. They wrought with ſo much diligence, that the buildings which were of brick, were finiſh'd in a month: the circumference of the walls was two thouſand four hundred cubits of large meaſure, the thickneſs eleven cubits, and the height fifteen; the ditch was thirty cubits broad, and twenty wide: at each corner of the place was a great baſtion, and in the middle of each courtine was a gallery with battlements, and a machine to caſt ſtones. In fine, this prodigious undertaking, which the greateſt emperors of antiquity were never able to finiſh in a year, was compleated in a month, notwithſtanding the exceſſive cold and rains: the readineſs with which Timur's orders were obey'd, was abundantly more ſurprizing than the execution of ſo vaſt a project. Never prince carry'd a more majeſtic and terrible air in his wrath; nor yet a more ſweet and agreeable one, when he was pleas'd to beſtow his favors.

Timur gave the government of Bailecan, Berdaa, Gheudgeh, the country of Arran, Armen Georgia, and Trebizond, to the Mirza

---

[1] Chahzade, or Mirza, is the ſon or grandſon of a king or emperor.

Sultan

Sultan. He honour'd Celabeddin his brother, Chan-nam'd Beirem-tobe, with the particular govern-ment of the south of Bailacan, and gave him what principally renders a country flourishing, but much as it makes the land fruitful, and nou-rishes the animals and vegetables, Timur form'd a design of cutting a canal, thro which to con-vey the waters of the river Araxes into Bailacan. He issued out his orders to that effect, and the principal lords prepar'd themselves to put them in execution. The Tavachis divided the ground the canal was to take up among the soldiers, which was six leagues in length, and fifteen cubits in breadth. The whole was finish'd in about a month; and it is one of the most magni-ficent monuments of Timur's grandeur and power.

CHAP. X.

Timur sends lieutenants and deputies into all the provinces of his empire, to administer the affairs of particular persons, and to distribute his justice and favours among the people.

DURING Timur's stay at Bailacan, the principal lords of Transoxana came to court with all possible magnificence, where an assembly of the most learned men was held. The emperor himself was very curious in hearing the chief questions of the law explain'd, and the distinction between positive commands and those which contain only matter of advice propos'd the most sublime and profitable controversies.

Book VI. One day the converſation fell very à propos upon Mahomet's advice, wherein he tells us that God orders the princes of this world to practiſe juſtice and beneficence: the people Timur attended to what was ſaid, and ſeriouſly reflecting on it, would not ſuffer this queſtion to be ended by diſcourſe only, but reſolv'd to acquire the merits of it by practiſing good works; and then he ſpake to 'em as follows.

"Kings have always taken the counſel of doctors, when they excite 'em to do good, and ſtrive to turn 'em from evil: how comes it then that you are ſilent, and neglect to tell me what I ought to do, and what I ought to omit the performance of?"

Then all the learned men modeſtly made anſwer, that his highneſs did not ſtand in need of the counſels of perſons of their condition; but that on the contrary, others ought to learn how to conduct themſelves by imitating his example.

Timur told 'em, he did not approve this ſort of compliments, by which they might expect to gain his favor; and that what he had ſaid was neither thro vain-glory or intereſt: "For thro the "protection of God, ſays he, I am too great a "lord in this world, to ſtand in need of ſuch "trifles; but my deſign in this reſults from the "reflection I have made, that each of you "coming from a different kingdom, muſt without doubt be inform'd of the affairs which "paſs there, and of the good or bad conduct "of the Derogas, and commiſſarys of the Divan. "Communicate therefore to me what you know, "and tell me whether the governors and officers obſerve juſtice and the commands of the "law as they ought; that being inform'd of "the evils they commit, I may remedy 'em, "and deliver the weak from oppreſſion."

Imme-

Immediately all the doctors freely declar'd their sentiments, applauding the emperor's intention; and they represented to his highness the condition the affairs of their respective provinces were in. Whereupon this just emperor made choice of the most learned among 'em, and those who were most versed in the laws of their country; and he nam'd an intendant to go with each of 'em, to whom he gave a full power to make laws or to dispense with 'em, always approving whatever he shou'd do in relation to justice and the observation of the laws; so that right might be administer'd to those who were oppress'd thro out all the kingdoms and provinces of his empire; likewise permitting these intendants to take out of the revenues of the imperial treasury of each country, what sums had been extorted from poor persons by violence against the ordinary rules, and to restore the same to 'em; and also to punish the tyrants in an exemplary manner: moreover they were order'd to register exactly every thing that shou'd pass during their commission, and at their return to give an account of it; that by this means the causes of vexation being entirely rooted out of the empire, the people may live in quiet and tranquility. Then Timur made this memorable speech.

"My heart hath always been set upon the "enlarging the limits of my vast empire: but "now I take up a resolution to use all my care "in procuring quiet and security to my subjects, "and to render my kingdoms flourishing. I "will that private persons address their re- "quests and complaints immediately to my "self; that they give me their advice for the "good of the Mussulmans, the glory of the "faith, and the extirpation of the wicked dis-

" turbers of the publick quiet. I am unwilling
" that at the day of judgment my poor op-
" press'd subjects shou'd cry out for vengeance
" against me. I am not desirous that any of
" my brave soldiers, who have so often expos'd
" their lives in my service, should complain
" gainst me or fortune; for their afflictions
" touch me more than they do them. Let
" none of my subjects fear to come before me
" with his complaints; for my delight is that
" the world shou'd become a paradise under my
" reign, knowing that when a prince is just and
" merciful, his kingdom is crown'd with blessings
" and honors. In fine, I desire to lay up a
" treasure of justice, that my soul may be happy
" after my death."

This speech of Timur, in which there is much to be admir'd, was taken down by a lord who was present at the assembly, and who wrote at the bottom of it these words of the Koran, *We give testimony only to what we have seen.* After this the whole assembly lifted up their hands to heaven, and offer'd the following prayer: "O God, who art the lord both of " this world and of the next, grant an ever- " lasting reign to this just prince; hearken to " his righteous petitions: and as thou hast sub- " jected the universe to him, after a long and " prosperous reign in this world, let him reign " with thee in glory in the other." A

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

Continuation of the history of the princes who were gone into Irac-Arabia.

THE Mirza Rouſtem having join'd the Mirza Aboubecre near Hille, as already mention'd, theſe two princes, who were the Rouſtem and Eſfendiar[1] of the age, paſs'd the river together, and met Cara Youſef Turcoman[2] over-againſt the town of Sib, on the banks of the river Nahrelganam, below Hille. They had then but three thouſand men, while Cara Youſef had entrench'd himſelf on the other ſide of the river with a numerous army, ready to give battel: and as the Mirza Rouſtem, being eldeſt, ought to have had the firſt rank, the Mirza Aboubecre prudently adviſed him to take his poſt in the main-body; but the Mirza Rouſtem anſwer'd him, that he was only come to bring ſuccours according to the orders given him; that it was better to ſeparate the army into two bodys, that they might each command one, and ſo attack the enemy on both ſides. In effect, the Mirza Rouſtem croſs'd the water, and attack'd Cara Youſef with all imaginable reſolution; and the Mirza Aboubecre did the ſame on his part; the attack was brave on our ſide, and as vigorouſly ſuſtain'd on the other. In the battel, Yar Ali, brother of Cara Youſef, was ſhot off his horſe with an arrow, and our men immediately

[1] Two famous heroes mention'd in the oriental romances.
[2] Prince of the Accoyunlus, or white ſheep.

cut off his head. The Emir Seyindgic distinguish'd himself bravely on this occasion, and contributed very much to the defeat of the enemy. Cara Yousef fled into Syria with some of his domestics; but his subjects, who consisted of between ten and fifteen thousand familys, his oxen, sheep, and camels were pillag'd by our soldiers. Some of the Mirza Rouſtem's men brought Cara Yousef's wife, the queen of the Turcomans, to him in chains. She was the mother of Eskender and Elpende, and was attended by the ladys of her court, and her relations.

Our princes also vanquish'd Noayr, who was absolute commander of all the Arabian tribes of the desart: and they likewise defeated several other princes of these quarters, who till that time had never submitted to any conqueror.

During the rebuilding of Bailacan, Sarek and Cotluc Coja, sons of the Dervich Buke, Aboubecre and Acbirdi Uzbec, officers of the Mirza Rouſtem, carry'd the happy news of these victorys to court, where they presented to Timur the head of Cara Yousef's brother.

After the causes of the disorders which Cara Yousef and other rebels had occasion'd, were remov'd, the Mirza Aboubecre employ'd himself particularly in rendring this country as flourishing as ever; he encourag'd the people, and oblig'd 'em to cultivate the lands: and he caus'd the city of Bagdad, which was almost ruin'd, to be rebuilt.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

Arrival of the Mirza Omar from Samarcand. Continuation of what happen'd during the building of Bailacan.

THE first of Jumazilulevel 806, the Mirza Omar, ſon of the Mirza Miran Chah, whom Timur had recal'd from Samarcand to take upon him the government of Azerbijana, arriv'd at the imperial camp before Bailacan, where he had the honor to pay his reſpects to his highneſs. At the ſame time came likewiſe to court a Circaſſian officer, the ſon of Toumen, with the head of Malek Azeddin king of Lor Coutchec, who had revolted: this officer brought advice that Malek had been flea'd, and his skin, ſtuff'd with ſtraw, hung up in public view, to ſerve as an example to all future diſturbers of the common tranquillity. Nov. 25. 1403.

Timur about this time reſolv'd to perform an act of juſtice on the perſon of the famous doctor Moulana Cotobeddin Carmi, who was come to court with the other officers of the Divan of Chiraz, becauſe of his having tax'd the inhabitants of Fars at his departure from that place, at the ſum of three hundred thouſand Dinars Copeghi, under pretence of a preſent to the emperor. Moulana Saed, a doctor of the ſame country, who accompany'd him, accus'd him to Timur in a private audience, where the emperor had order'd him to give him what light he was able in relation to the affairs of Fars. This tyranny having highly offended his majeſty, he immediately paſs'd judg-

Book VI. ment upon Cotobeddin, and issu'd out an order to the Cheik Dervich Allahi to bind his hands, and placing the fork'd branch about his neck, to send him in that manner to Chiraz, with the sum he had extorted from the inhabitants, to be restor'd to those who had paid it. Argoun, intendant to Cotobeddin, was condemn'd to be hang'd because of the troubles he had brought on the people at his master's order. A declaration was also publish'd to inform the people of the destruction of these tyrants, in revenge of the wrong they had receiv'd: after which the intendancy of the finances of Chiraz was given to Coja Malek Semnani. The emperor order'd Moulana Saed to return to Chiraz, to declare to the inhabitants of Fars, that what Moulana Cotobeddin had done was not by his order; in proof of which Argoun was hang'd as soon as they arriv'd at Chiraz.

The following friday, the inhabitants of the city and neighboring villages being assembled in great multitudes in the old mosque, Moulana Cotobeddin was expos'd with his hands in fetters, and the fork'd branch about his neck at the foot of the preaching-chair, which was of free-stone. Moulana Saed mounting the chair, told the people what the great Timur had order'd him, in allusion to the words of Cojah Mahmud Fakih. "If this kingdom, says he, has "been ruin'd, don't impute it to the emperor; "for Cotobeddin is only in fault." All the people applauded what he said, and prais'd Timur, so that the mosque echo'd out their acclamations. The sum of three hundred thousand Dinars Copeghi, which Cotobeddin had extorted in the space of two months, was entirely re-imburs'd, according to the registers of the Cadis

Cadis, notarys, and Emirs of the kingdom, to those from whom it had been taken. Chap. 13.

Thus justice was done in the person of one of the greatest lords of the kingdom, which ought to eternize the memory of Timur's equity. After this the Mirza Pir Mehemed, son of Omar Cheik, took off Cotobeddin's fetters, and fork'd branch, and sent him back to Samarcand.

CHAP. XIII.

Timur passes the winter at Carabagh-Arran. Relation of what happen'd there.

WHEN Ballacan was entirely rebuilt, Timur march'd towards Carabagh, where he had already given orders for Corias, or thatch'd houses, to be built, to pass the winter in. Being come to this place, he went down into the imperial Coria; and the Mirzas and Nevians quarter'd in those appointed for them, as did also the officers and domestics in theirs. Never was there seen before so magnificent a camp of such vast extent. The Mirza Roustem came by the road of Coulaghi and Sunatai, according to the orders he had receiv'd to repair to the Couroultai or diet, which was to be held at Carabagh, to invest the Mirza Omar in the government of the kingdom of Huiacou Can.

In the mean while, on advice of the revolt of Eskender Cheik, who with Timur's permission was return'd to his principality of Demavend and Firouz Couh, Solyman Chah had orders to go to Rei to observe Eskender's motions. The Mirza Roustem was sent to assist Solyman in this affair; and they had orders, that if Eskender shou'd

Book VI. shou'd be so happy as to return forthwith to his obedience, to give him a handsom reception; but on the contrary, if he continu'd obstinate in his revolt, they shou'd draw together all the infantry of Com, Cachan and Derghuzin, and pursue and exterminate him wherever they cou'd find him. The Mirza Roustem and the Emir Solyman Chah immediately departed to execute this order.

Then the Emir Cheik Ibrahim, king of Chirvan, prepar'd a great banquet to regale the whole court; he made a present to Timur of several pearls, beautiful women slaves, handsom boys, cuirasses, belts, arms, and a thousand led-horses: he also made fine presents to the empresses, princes, and chief persons of the state, and did what he cou'd to discover some marks of his affection to all the lords.

About this time Nour Eloued, son of the Sultan Ahmed Gelair, about eighteen years of age, having been born during the war, was brought from Irac-Arabi. The venerable Cherif Seid Bereke then also arriv'd at court: the pious Timur went out of his tent to meet him. The Santon having perceiv'd him, flung off his turbant, and paid his compliments of condolence on the death of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan. Timur embrac'd him, and wept a long time with him.

The doctors, Imams, and lawyers of Transoxiana, Kech, Samarcand, Bocara, Termed, and other places, as the sons of the Can of Termed, Coja Abdelevel, Coja Asameddin, Coja Asdal Kechi, Abdelhamid and Abderrahman, sons of the Cheik Eslam of Kech, and other great lords of these kingdoms, came to court, where they were admitted to an audience: they paid their compliments of condolence on the

death

death of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, and endeavor'd to comfort the emperor by good counsels taken out of the Alcoran and the sayings of Mahomet. In effect, after they had somewhat moderated his affliction, he was pleas'd to have 'em dispute before him on some questions of learning and religion; which they did every evening, after Timur had done with the affairs of state. Chapt. 3.

One of the most considerable events which happen'd during Timur's stay at Carabagh, was that the secretarys of the Divan of Kirman had taken Idecou's account, in which they had set down in his name an excessive sum. Timur being inform'd of it during the building of Baïcan, apply'd himself to find out the truth of it in the Divan: but the princess Bouyan Aga, daughter of Timur's uncle *, presented her self big with child by Idecou, with her daughter Agatche; and compounded for it, by promising he shou'd pay a hundred Tomans Copeghi, and to which Idecou consented, obliging himself to pay that sum to the imperial treasury. Then he was confirm'd in the government of Kirman, and permitted to return home, with orders at his arrival at Kirman to send back from thence to court the Sultan Bayazid, his brother's son, who had been dispatch'd thither in his place, at Idecou's departure for court.

* Hadgi Berlas.

Timur sent Anoucherouan, son of Beyan Aga, to Tauris, to receive the revenues of Azerbijana: and he gave the government of Sari to Pir Mehemed Poulad, one of the Emirs of the Mirza Charoc. At the same time Bic Mirci Aga, wife of the Mirza Pir Mehemed Gehanghir, set out from Gazmin and Candahar for court, with her three sons Caled, Buzandger and Sultan Mendi, who were then very young: she paid her respects to the emperor, and presented him with

several

Book VI. several precious stuffs of India, and other curiosities.

CHAP. XIV.

The emperor sends the Mirza Charoc to Ghilan.

AS the princes of Ghilan were not come to court, but had only sent a few small presents, Timur resolv'd to march against em; he sent thither the Caraoul, or vanguard, commanded by Deryal Coutchin, Belal, Meheted brother of Ali Sultan Tavachi, Bayazid, Boroildai, and Behloul Berlas, whom he ordered to pass the winter in the forest on the frontiers of Ghilan: and he likewise sent the Mirza Charoc to Kzelygadge at the head of his troops. This prince immediately set out, accompanied by his son the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, with a body of ten thousand men, the Emir Sedi Chah, the Cheik Ibrahim, Rouſtem Tagi Bouga, the Seid Coja son of the Cheik Ali Behader, and other generals of Tomans with their troops; and they stop'd at Kzelygadge, expecting other orders.

As soon as the princes of Ghilan had receiv'd advice of the army's march towards their country, they were disquieted, abandon'd their former resolution, and consented to pay a great sum under the name of Carage. Charoc sent an express to advertise the court of this, and made several persons set out to receive the tribute.

The Seid Razi Kya, one of the princes of Deylem, who was of Mahomet's race, and distinguish'd

tinguish'd by his knowledge of the belles-lettres, and the Emir Mehemed Kechti, also a person of that country, departed together for court with magnificent presents: and each of the commanders of Ghilan sent presents and considerable sums of mony. Being arriv'd at court, they kiss'd the foot of the throne, and humbly offer'd their presents, saying that they were and had always been obedient to his highness; that they had us'd all their endeavors to collect the sums of the Carage; and that they had resolv'd to live and die in perfect submission to the emperor's orders.

Timur gave 'em vests, and highly honor'd 'em; and as the Seid Razi Eya was of Mahomet's race, he was pleas'd to treat him in a very handsom manner, and gratify'd him with ten thousand Means of silk, that is, with fifteen thousand Means of legal weight, with seven thousand horses and three thousand oxen, to be taken out of what the people had promis'd to pay for the Carage impos'd on their country: he gave the half of it to the Emir Mehemed, with a third of what remain'd due; and he issu'd out orders for the receivers to pay 'em these sums.

Timur likewise gave the Seid Razi the government of the castle of Kerdar, on the frontiers of Nicolia, which Chams, a relation of the Emir Abbas, formerly possess'd; and he sent him thither with troops.

During the winter-quarters at Carabagh, the Cherif Seid Berekat fell sick: and tho his physicians employ'd all their skill, and administer'd the most excellent remedys, they could do him no good: so that this great person pass'd from this world into the other with an entire resignation to the will of God. Timur was sensibly afflicted, and wept bitterly at the death of his

Chap. 12.

Book XI. best friend, and afterwards he caus'd his coffin to be carried to Andekoud, to be there bury'd. Then he gave the governments of Hamadan, Nehavend, Ouroudgerd, Limoutchek, and their dependences, to the Mirza Eskender.

CHAP. XV.

Arrival of some princes from Merdin and Vastan. A famous funeral banquet made for the late Mirza Mehemed Sultan.

WINTER being past, Malek Isa, prince of Merdin, came to court with several presents, bringing with him his daughter who was betroth'd to the Mirza Aboubecre. Malek Azeddin Chir came also from Vastan with presents of abundance of horses to Timur, who gave him a handsome reception.

About this time the emperor issu'd out a general order to all the greater and lesser officers of the kingdom of Hulacou Can residing in Azerbijana and Irac-Arabi, to send each a brother or one of their relations to reside at Samarcand; and that this project might be executed without delay, he order'd several officers to repair to the respective places to bring 'em away forthwith.

In the month of Ramadan, Timur made a funeral banquet for the prince Mehemed Sultan, in which the poor were principally regal'd. The Cherifs, doctors, and Imams of all parts were at the banquet, and took their places according to their ranks and dignitys. The entire Alcoran was read over, and the feast concluded with prayers for the repose of the Mirza's soul. Afterwards

terwards the princess Canzade went to Sultania, and transported from thence to Samarcand the Mirza's coffin, which had lain in the tomb of the prophet Caidar. Chap. 4

Timur after this order'd a famous chace in the plains of Actam, beyond the Araxes, in which the utmost magnificence appear'd. The dogs had coverings of tartin imbroider'd with gold, and the hunting-leopards had chains of gold set with precious stones about their necks: there was an infinite number of Grecian grey-hounds, esteem'd for their swiftness, as also of very uncommon and excellent kind of beagles; but what were most remarkable, were huge European mastifs, as strong as the lions of Africk, as terrible as tigers rous'd up to the fight, and as swift as arrows. After three days the chace began to close, and the slaughter, which in this kind was made upon an infinite number of wild beasts, as lions, camelopes, roe-bucks, as well of the mountains as of the plains, and also hares.

After the hunting was over, Timur return'd to the camp, where he distributed among the Cherifs, doctors and Imams of Samarcand, Kesch, Bochara, and other citys of Transoxiana, an innumerable quantity of uncommon curiosities which he had taken from the kingdom of Natolia, among which were several handsom stuffs, beds of gold, beautiful horses, mules, women-slaves and boys: after which he permitted them to return home, which they did, loading his highness with their praises and thanks. April 8. 1404.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVI.

Timur's return from a campain of seven years.

TIMUR having made himself master, during his campain of seven years, of the kingdoms of Natolia and Syria with their dependences; and having oblig'd the inhabitants of Grand-Cairo, the capital of Egypt, to coin the mony, and read the Coutbe, which is the friday-prayer for the reigning prince, in his name and titles; the Egyptians having also submitted to pay an annual tribute; and Timur having likewise fulfil'd the precept of the Alcoran in making war on the Christians of Georgia, whose pride and power he assuag'd: he found that to crown the triumphs of his happy life, he had no more to conquer in all Asia than the empire of China, the inhabitants of which were infidels. Whereupon he immediately resolv'd on that conquest, and departed from Carabagh the 14th of Ramadan 806, which answers to the year of the Monky, for Samarcand. He cross'd the Araxes on a bridge, and encamp'd on the other side in a meadow near Nimet-Abad, one of the towns on the canal of Berlas, which canal he had dug himself, as we said before: and he was join'd here by the Mirza Charue, who according to order had taken the road to Kzelygadge.

April 8. 1704.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVII.

Timur invests the Mirza Omar in the empire of Hulacou Can.

ABOUT this time a great feast was made at court on occasion of the emperor's giving the Mirza Omar the government of the empire of Hulacou Can, for which he issued out his letters patent seal'd with the imperial seal, which was the impression of his red hand. This empire contain'd the countrys of Azerbijan, the kingdom of Roum of Natolia as far as Constantinople; and Syria as far as Egypt. The princes who govern'd the kingdoms of Fars and the two Irags, were commanded to obey his orders, and assist at his diets. Timur gave him the troops and officers of the Mirza Miran Chah, and permitted him to depart at the same time: he nam'd for his principal officers, who were to have pensions, the Emirs Gehan Chah, Rouſtem son of the Emir Mouſſa, Tevekkul Berlas, Junaid Bouroundah, and others; and gave him ten thousand horse, recommending to him to do nothing contrary to the sentiments of the Emir Gehan Chah. Then Timur presented to this new king of the Medes a crown, a vest, a belt set with precious stones, and a horse with a saddle of gold; and to each of his Emirs a robe and a belt.

The prince then took leave, and paid his respects to the emperor, who tenderly embrac'd him as well as the Emirs, and then dismiss'd 'em. The Emir Gehan Chah cou'd not refrain from tears at parting from the emperor and court, because of his long affection to his highness. Timur

Book VI. mur afterwards gave vests and belts to the Emir Cheik Ibrahim, Malek Issa the Sultan of Merdin, Malek Azeddin Chir, Kustendil a Georgian, Tizec, Dialek, and Bestam, whom he order'd to attend on the Mirza Omar, who took his road thro the delightful country of Alatac.

Timur departed from this place, and hunted in his march. After a day's journy he encamp'd in a meadow on the bank of the river Abagloc, otherwise nam'd Tchaybelaroud, where he staid to the end of Ramadan.

Timur celebrated the feast of the grand Bairam with great devotion and pomp. Moulana Nezameddin Chanabi, one of the most eloquent doctors of the age, who had wrote part of the history of Timur, preach'd that day, read the Coutbe, and perform'd the ceremonys of prayer. Several alms and pious gifts were distributed; and the feast was finish'd by a magnificent banquet, in which were serv'd up abundance of the most excellent dishes and wines.

CHAP. XVIII.

Continuation of the history of the Mirza Rousstem and the Emir Solyman Chah, who were sent towards Rei.

THE Mirza Rousstem and the Emir Solyman Chah, who were gone to Rei to gain intelligence of what Eskender Cheiki was doing, being arriv'd at that country, found that Eskender had revolted, and having fortify'd the citadel of Firouz Couh, and plac'd in it his son and family, had fled to the mountains in the forests of Tchelaoun and Rousstemdar. Our generals staid twenty days at Tahran in the province

vince of Rei; and having got together the infantry of Rei, Com, Cachan, Savé and Derghuzin, to the number of two thousand, they departed in pursuit of Eskender, enter'd the forest of Rousteмdar, and besieg'd the fortress of Nour, which they took and raz'd. Malek Keyoumerres came to find 'em in this place; and as he was at variance with Eskender, they seiz'd him, and sent him to Eskender: "Behold, say they, we send you your enemy, "that you may see we are willing to accommo- "date matters with you: therefore suspect no- "thing, but come without delay to meet us. "If you return to your obedience, we'll make a "treaty with you in the name of Timur: you "have spent part of your life in his service; don't "root up the tree which you have planted. Chap. 18.

Eskender dar'd not come to 'em because of his revolt, but endeavour'd to strike up an accommodation with Kyoumerres, and as well by threats as promises, engag'd him to be of his party. Then having sworn a reciprocal friendship, they join'd against us, and committed acts of hostility. Whilst the court was encamp'd on the bank of the river Agloc, a courier came from the Emir Solyman Chah, who gave advice to the emperor of what had happen'd. Whereupon Timur immediately resolv'd to march thither in person, and sent orders to the Emir Mezrab, lieutenant-general of Corassana, to march with his troops by the road of Sari and Ancol, to revenge him on Eskender.

The 7th of Chawal 806, an officer of the Mirza Calil Sultan arriv'd from Transoxiana, who assur'd the emperor from that prince that the affairs of those parts were in a very good condition, and that the people enjoy'd perfect peace and tranquillity. April 30. 1404.

CHAP. XIX.

Timur sends the Mirza Eskender and the Emir Chamelic before the rest towards Rei.

THE emperor being arriv'd at Ardebil, sent the Emir Chamelic and Pir Ali Selduz, with a thousand men, to Rei before the others, with orders to get together the soldiers of the Arabian tribes and the hords of Caladge, Turks who dwell about Savé, Com, Cachan, Tchara and Perahan, as far as Kerchroud, and to form 'em into a body to join the army: and he order'd the Misza Eskender to join the Mirza Rouſtem and the Emir Solyman Chah

Timur having paſs'd by Ardebil and Myana, went down to Sertchem, where he found Douladi governor of Avenic, who was come thither to pay his reſpects to him. Timur tenderly embrac'd him becauſe of his former ſervices, and having given him a veſt and belt, ſaid to him, "We are not certain we ſhall ever be able to "ſee each other again; but don't neglect in- "forming your ſelf of what ſhall paſs at my "court. The Sultan Ahmed Gelair is at pre- "ſent retir'd, and in a low condition, ſo there's "nothing to be fear'd from him: but be upon "your guard againſt the Turcoman prince Ca- "ra Youſef." Then Timur diſmiſs'd his old friend.

Timur departed from Sertchem, and arriv'd at
May 13. Sultania the 20th of Chawal 806, to which place came the perſons who had been ſent into Ghila to receive the mony we mention'd before; they brought thence a great quantity of mony, horſe ſtuff

stuffs, and curiositys. The emperor departed next day but one from Sultania, and after some days journy arriv'd at Casbin, to which place the Mirza Aboubecre came post in nine days from Ardebil by the road of Kelas, having for his attendance Pir Hussein Berlas and Sevindgic. He paid his respects to his highness, and besought him to permit the Mirza Miran Chah, his father, to go to Bagdad, to reside there with him: which request was granted. Miran Chah receiv'd a gratification of four hundred thousand Dinars Copeghi [1], a hundred horses, and several toys, and then return'd to Sultania. Chap. 19.

Timur being gone from Casbin to Saouc-Boulac, gave the Mirza Aboubecre two hundred horses, a hundred pair of cuirasses, and a hundred thousand Dinars Copeghi: he order'd him to meet the Emir Solyman Chah, and march with him against Eskender Cheiki. The emperor also made a present to Chahimulc, wife of Aboubecre, and daughter of the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, of the lordship of Dudgyail, dependent on Bagdad; and this princess then return'd to Sultania.

Aboubecre having caus'd the snow to be remov'd, ascended the mountain of Acabay Talagoun, and join'd the Mirza Roustem at Kudgyour, the Mirza Eskender, and the Emir Solyman Chah, who were all encamp'd there with a good trench round 'em, fortify'd with branches of trees: and they staid here twenty days, till the arrival of the army. Having receiv'd fresh orders to fall upon Eskender, they departed to that end; and as the country was entirely cover'd with wood, they cut down the trees to

[1] A Dinar Copeghi is a ducat of gold, in value seven livres.

Book VI. open a way croſs, and mended the paſſages which had been ruin'd with planks; and thus they purſu'd Eskender, killing all the enemys they met.

Timur enter'd the meadow of Rei the firſt of
May 22. 1404. Zilcade 806, and encamp'd in the plain of Sari Camich: he order'd the ſuperfluous equipages to be conducted by the road of Rei and Khouvar. Bic Mulc Aga, wife of the Mirza Pir Mehemed, had leave to return with her ſons to Gaznin and Candahar. The Emir Chamſeddin Abbas and others, who had the care of tranſporting the Caratatars and colonys, which had remov'd from Azerbijana, had orders to take the road of Khouvar and Semnan. Then the Emir Chamelic, who had ſet out before, arriv'd at Rei.

Timur being come to the caſtle of Ghulkendan, which lay in ruins, ſituate at the foot of mount Demavend, examin'd it, and gave orders for its being rebuilt of ſtone and mortar, and render'd as flouriſhing as before. From thence having paſs'd by Demavend at the head of his army rang'd in order of battel, he arriv'd at Firouzcouh.

CHAP. XX.

The taking of the citadel of Firouzcouh.

AMONG the ſtrongeſt places mention'd in hiſtory, none deſerves more notice than the citadel of Firouzcouh, ſituate on the ridge of a mountain, with walls of the utmoſt ſtrength.
May 31. 1404. On the 9th of Zilcade 806, the imperial ſtandard arriv'd there, and the troops form'd the ſiege, encamping at all the avenues round about it. Every one having taken his poſt, the machines and

and arms neceſſary were got ready: the throwers of wild-fire began the aſſault, and were ſeconded by the braveſt men of the army, who expos'd their lives with the greateſt intrepidity. And as one of the towers of the place was built at the foot of the mountain, on the bank of the river, and the walls of that tower were rais'd as high as the level of the mountain, the beſieg'd made uſe of it to draw up water out of the river; but our men turn'd the courſe of the river from the foot of the mountain, and ſpoil'd the water which was left. This oblig'd the beſieg'd to ſally out to hinder 'em, being reſolv'd rather to die than ſuffer this. Chap. 20.

During night an officer of the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, accompany'd by Mehemed Azad, Cheik Behloul, Beyantencour, Acbouga, and other brave men, got up one after another to the foot of the walls. They were perceiv'd by the beſieg'd, who ran thither in great numbers, fought with all their ſtrength, and wounded ſeveral of our men: but day being come, all the ſoldiers aſcended the mountain by different places, and gave a general aſſault. The ſon of Eskender Cheiki, governor of the caſtle, and all the others, perceiving the intrepidity with which they were attack'd, were ſeiz'd with fear, tho the gariſon conſiſted of three hundred men, or rather giants of Mazendran, or ſatyrs of the foreſt. Their inquietude oblig'd 'em to ſend ſeveral of their men to Timur, to beg quarter with ſubmiſſion. The emperor gave theſe meſſengers veſts, and treated 'em with abundance of kindneſs: whereupon they were no ſooner return'd to the place, than Eskender's ſon, and all the reſt of the officers and ſoldiers, came to caſt themſelves at the emperor's feet, and deliver up the caſtle, which the troops enter'd, and made all the inhabitants

Book VI. go out, that they might be transported to another place. Thus this strong citadel, whose top seem'd to reach the heavens, was taken after two days siege: Timur left there, as governor, Zenghi Touni with a good garison.

June 2. Next day, the 11th of Zilcade 806, Timur took horse, and went to incamp in a meadow half a league from thence. He sent back to Samarcand the empresses Serai Mulc Canum and Touman Aga, with the Mirzas Oluc-Bec, Ibrahim Sultan, Aidgel, and Sadvaccas, who departed by the road of Sultan Meidan: and afterwards the emperor march'd against Eskender Cheiki.

Then advice was brought that the Caratatars, being arriv'd near the town of Damgan, had wounded their Deroga, and were revolted; the Deroga of another band, which march'd after 'em, discover'd Tangribirmich, who lay upon the earth naked and wounded, and scarce alive, and carry'd him into the town to dress his wounds. The other bands hearing this, resolv'd to fly; upon which the Emir Chamseddin Abbas, Arilmich, Chalveli son of Sevindgic, and the other captains of companys who had the conduct of the bands, fell sword in hand upon these miserable wretches, of whom they destroy'd a great number; and either within the town of Damgan, or near it, slew about three thousand upon the spot, so that the dead bodys stop'd up the passage of the streets. Several fled into the forests of Estar-Abad, and the Emir Chamseddin brought away the rest.

Timur on advice of this immediately sent away Beyan Coutchin, Fazel, son of Seifelmuluc, son of Hadgi Seifeddin, Dané Coja, Rousstem Poulad, and Comari Behader, with fifteen hundred horse, in pursuit of the fugitives. The Mirza

Mirza Ahmed Omar Cheik and the Emir Berendac were likewiſe ſent after 'em on the ſame account, and went as far as Damgan: but they ſoon return'd to join the emperor, becauſe they found that ſome of the Caratatars had been ſlain, others fled, and others brought away by the Emir Chamſeddin and the Derogas. Beyan Coutchin, and the others who went out firſt in purſuit of the fugitives, paſs'd by Beſtam, croſs'd the mountain of Lengheroud, enter'd the foreſt of Mazendran, and join'd the Caratatars at Caratugan, on the ſhore of the Caſpian ſea; and tho the Tartars were far more numerous, yet they attack'd 'em immediately, and having happily defeated 'em, ſlew above a thouſand, and took more than ten thouſand familys priſoners. After this expedition Beyan Coutchin return'd to court. Chap. 21.

When the empreſſes, who had taken the road to Samarcand with the baggage, were arriv'd at Beſtam, the officers who conducted the Mirza Charoc's baggage, parted from the reſt, and went to Herat by the way of Nichabour; and Serai Mulc Canum and Touman Aga went by the road of Jadgerom and Efferain with the greateſt baggage.

CHAP. XXI.

Timur marches to Tchelao.

TIMUR being accuſtom'd to execute the greateſt part of his enterprizes himſelf, he march'd in perſon againſt Eskender Cheiki: and as the Mirza Charoc was fallen ſick, he return'd to Herat with the officers of his houſhold, while

Book VI. while his Emirs and troops follow'd the imperial army to Tchelao, at which place they arriv'd in a few days, altho the ways were over high mountains, and thro deep vallys. The troops being arriv'd at the mountain of Tchelao, the ungrateful Eskender was oblig'd to fly, and retire into the defile call'd hell.

June 11. The 20th of Zilcade Timur arriv'd at Tchelao; from whence, not being able to find Eskender, he departed the same day. In this road is a very deep defile full of woods, always cover'd with mists and fogs; in the middle of which is a great and extremely rapid torrent, which can neither be forded nor swum over. The great difficulty there is in passing this defile is the reason of its being nam'd the defile of hell: and as Eskender had broke the bridge over the torrent, after having pass'd it, Timur was oblig'd to build another. The soldiers shortly built one of wood, on which forty brave officers pass'd first, and were follow'd by five hundred men, whom they commanded. Yonsef Berlas afterwards cross'd it with Couthin Touchcal, as did the Seid Coja, son of the Cheik Ali Behader; and at length the Mirza Sultan Hussein, follow'd by the Emir Cheik Nonreddin, who got up to the ridge of the mountain of the defile, cutting down the trees to open a passage in search of Eskender. Timur also pass'd the bridge, and encamp'd on the top of a mountain where there were no trees, but continual rains and fogs. At this place Timur gave audience to the Seid Ismael of Kersecan, one of the lords of Termed.

Timur sent soldiers into all the forests to find Eskender, assigning 'em for guides the Cherifs of Mazendran.

Among

Among those who went in search of Eskender, the captains Deryay Coutchin, Chadimulc Berlas, the Cheik Mehemed Coutchin, Bic Temour Coutchin, Codadad Tchoura, and Vefadar, met him on the 26th of Zilcade 806, in the middle of a wood near the Caspian sea. The Cheik Dervich Allahi was seiz'd with fear, and turn'd back on pretence of bringing Youssef Berlas with more expedition to back 'em, he being behind 'em with his troops. Chap. 21. June 17.

In the mean while Eskender, at the head of two hundred foot and thirty horse of his acquaintance, sally'd out of his little camp, and prepar'd to attack our men, who were but twenty in number, and were not ignorant of Eskender's valor, having seen him several times in action; for intrepidity and courage were hereditary to him, being descended in a right line from Bigen son of Keyou, and Banou Kechaspe daughter of the great Roustem, as may be seen in the Chah Namé or Fardaousi, which makes Bigen speak these words, "My grandfather was a lion in "battel, my father was the great Keyou: this "day you shall behold my prodigious exploits." Our twenty men, notwithstanding this, fearing Timur's reproaches, resolv'd rather to die than fly, reflecting that if the time destin'd for their death was come, they might as well die here as in another place: so they collected all their courage, and confiding in the ordinary good fortune of Timur's arms, discharg'd their arrows. Eskender, follow'd by his horsemen, attack'd 'em several times with their pikes; but our men so dexterously ply'd him, that he cou'd not only gain no ground, but shamefully turn'd his back before a handful of men, with all his soldiers. Ingratitude is the source of all misfortunes. Eskender had preserv'd his honor, if he had

Book VI. had not abandon'd Timur, from whom he had receiv'd ſo many favors.

After Eskender was fled into the foreſt, our ſcouts quarter'd in his camp, not knowing what road he had taken. Then Youſef Berlas arriv'd with Seifelmulouc and Hadgi Abdalla, who alſo enter'd Eskender's camp, which they entirely pillag'd; carrying away abundance of horſes, mules, ſtuffs of gold, and other riches. They were join'd there by the Mirzas Rouſtem and Aboubecre, accompany'd by the Emirs Sevindgic and Solyman Chah, who came from the left. At break of day there appear'd in the mountain ſomething glittering, which advanc'd towards 'em. The Emir Sevindgic march'd to the left towards the mountain and foreſts in ſearch of Eskender: taking with him his nephew Leheraſp and all his men, and met the Emir Ali, Eskender's ſon, with his daughter, wives and domeſtics, who were all made ſlaves.

CHAP. XXII.

Battel between the Mirza Sultan Huſſein and Eskender Cheiki. The flight of the latter.

THE Mirza Sultan Huſſein, and the Seid Coja ſon of the Cheik Ali Behader, join'd our ſcouts with ſeventy men, and enter'd with 'em into the woods in ſearch of Eskender. They met him about noon in the midſt of this foreſt, having with him two hundred foot and fifty horſe, who prepar'd to defend themſelves. The Mirza Sultan Huſſein fell furiouſly upon Eskender, and immediately retreated as if he wou'd have fled. The enemy, who thought to im-

prove

prove this seeming advantage, sally'd out of the wood to fall upon our men; but they turn'd upon 'em suddenly in good order, and made a cruel slaughter of the foot. Vefadar perform'd whatever cou'd be expected from a great man; but was wounded with a lance in his face, which struck out his teeth: yet this did not hinder his fighting. Two horsemen of Tchelao were made prisoners by the officers of the Mirza Sultan Hussein: and Eskender perceiving himself vanquish'd, re-enter'd the woods, and went out by the side towards Ghilan. He was never heard of more; tho some say that he took the habit of a monk, while others assure us that he died thro grief in the woods. Chap. 22.

The Mirza Sultan Hussein sent one of the men who were taken to Timur by Cazan Dervich. The emperor was then encamp'd in the mountain we spoke of before, and order'd the man to inform him what he knew of Eskender.

The Mirza Sultan Hussein at his return met on the shore of the Caspian sea the Mirzas Rousteem and Aboubeere, with the Emirs Solyman Chah and Cheik Noureddin, who had been in search of Eskender; they march'd together along the sea-side near three leagues, advancing towards Ghilan. They encamp'd there, and were join'd by the Emir Mezrab Yacou, who had likewise been seeking Eskender with the troops of Coraffana by the road of Amol and Sari. Then all the Emirs departed together for the imperial camp. Timur, notwithstanding all the fatigues they had undergone, reprov'd 'em for not having continu'd to pursue Eskender, and sent 'em all back again on the same account with the Emir Chamelic. They fatigu'd themselves exceedingly in the woods, which were very miry, because of the continual rains, which hinder'd

Book VI. hinder'd their encampment. On advice of this, Timur ſent orders for 'em to return.

Then the emperor decamp'd from the mountain, and croſſing the bridge over the torrent in the defile of hell, went to encamp before the caſtle of Nour in the province of Rouſtemdar. The ſoldiers brought before him Eskender's nephew, and others of his relations, with ſeveral of his officers: he gave 'em a handſom reception, and granted 'em quarter.

During night an expreſs came from the Mirzas Aboubecre and Sultan Huſſein, and from the Emir Solyman Chah, with advice of their arrival at the torrent of the defile of hell, which they cou'd not paſs by reaſon the bridge was broken. Timur immediately ſent to 'em Mehemed Azad and Toukel Baourtchi, with thirty watermen of the Gihon, having for their chief Ourdouchah, who with their uſual dexterity built a bridge, on which the Mirzas croſs'd the torrent with their troops, and return'd to join his highneſs.

The army paſs'd the night in the ſame place, and next day march'd to the caſtle of Harſi towards Ghilan: and Timur being arriv'd at Kelare Decht, encamp'd ſome days in that meadow, where the Emir Cayaſeddin Ali, ſon of the Seid Kemaleddin, had a handſom reception from the emperor, who gave him the principality of Amol, becauſe he had always carry'd on a war with Eskender Cheiki.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIII.

Timur returns to the ſeat of his empire.

AFTER the flight of Eskender, the taking of his wives, children and domeſtics, the conqueſt of his fortreſſes, and the pillage of his effects, horſes and cattel, the emperor reſolv'd to return to Samarcand. He order'd the Mirzas who had the government of the two Iracs to go thither; and likewiſe the Seid Azzedin Hezaregheri with his brothers, and the Seid Ali Mazendrani, to return to their reſpective governments: and he gave veſts to each of 'em. The Mirza Rouſtem, attended by the Emir [a] Said Berlas, departed for Iſpahan, the Mirza Aboubecre for Bagdad, the Mirza Eskender for Hamadan, the Seid Azzeddin for Hezaregheri, and the Seid Ali for Amol.

At length Timur departed from Kelare Decht, and in few days arriv'd at the country of Lar, at the foot of the mountain Demavend, where the emperor Argoun Chah had built a pavilion in form of a dome, which is yet nam'd the Kiochk of Argoun.

The 20th of Zilhadge 807, he decamp'd, and march'd with ſo great expedition with the Emirs and his domeſtics, that on the 22d he encamp'd at the mountain of Firouzcouh. He gave the Emir Solyman Chah a veſt wrought July 10. 1404.

[a] Emir ſignifys commander: as alſo a prince of Mahomet's race, likewiſe call'd Cherif and Seid. But all Emirs are not Cherifs; for there are ſome Emirs who are not Mahometans, as among the Druſes, Maronites and others.

with

Book VI. with gold, and a cap enrich'd with precious stones, leaving him in the government of the towns and provinces of Rei, Firouzcouh, and their dependences: and he permitted Beyan Coutchin, Deroga of Rei, to return to guard the caſtle of Ghule Khindan.

From thence Timur paſs'd by Sultan Meidan, July 14. and the 24th of Zilhadge arriv'd at Beſtam, where he viſited Sultan Elaareſin, whoſe prayers he beſought, diſtributing alms among the poor. Pir Padichah, prince of Eſterabad, who had follow'd Timur in this expedition, and had been permitted to go before the reſt to his own town, return'd to this place to meet the court, and offer his preſents, among which were nine ſets of horſes, nine in each. Timur gave him a veſt, and ſent him back.

Davé Coja, who had been ſent in purſuit of the Tartars, arriv'd at the ſame place, and gave an account of what he had done. Timur or-der'd that the Tartar chiefs he had taken ſhou'd be laid in irons, and conducted to Samarcand by the Derogas of the countrys they ſhou'd paſs thro. The emperor departed from Beſtam the ſame day; and being arriv'd at the town of Ja-gaz, the lord Hafan Souſi Tercan came to him from the Mirza Charoc, to be inform'd where his highneſs wou'd appoint that prince to meet him. Hafan Souſi was ſent back poſt, to let Charoc know he might meet the emperor on the bank of the river Joucoudgecan.

Then Timur march'd with expedition, and July 20. the firſt of Muharrem 807, departed from Nicha-1404. bour, and went down to Achesbad. The 3d he encamp'd at the tomb of Dgyam, where he paid his devotions, imploring the prayers of that Santon. Afterwards he ſet out from thence, and went to encamp on the bank of the river Joucoud-

Joucoudgeran, where the Mirza Charoc had the honor to kiss his hands, and offer his presents, which were generously distributed among the lords who attended the court. Hendouchah brought to this place Achouga, and Carabougai Joun Garbani, whom he had made prisoners, because they had revolted during the emperor's absence, who order'd 'em to be hang'd in an hospital near that place. Chap. 23.

About the same time Timur sent the Coja Ahmed Tonsi, to be treasurer-general of the revenues of Corassana, and comptroller of the registers of the commissarys; this lord collected in forty days the sum of two hundred Tomans Copeghi from the monied-men and the commissarys.

Then Timur took leave of the Mirza Charoc, and departed. When he was arriv'd at Corlan, he encamp'd at the brink of a fountain near the hospital, to which place Temour Coja Achouga came from Samarcand to meet the emperor, to whom he presented nine race-horses. From thence Timur went to encamp at the bank of the river Morgab, where he receiv'd the complaints of the inhabitants of Chicheou, against the oppressions of Apaselpa, their Deroga, who was condemn'd on that account to have his feet bor'd thro, and himself hang'd with his head downwards; which was accordingly executed.

The emperor then departed, and on his road was met by the Derogas of the towns and the Kelanters of the tribes, who presented to him fresh horses, which the officers mounted, to make the more haste. Then he pass'd by Lengher Gheik, Zade Bayazid, Andecoud, Ducca, the defile of Ghez, and Ali Abad, and encamp'd near the town of Adina Mesdgid, where

he receiv'd the principal inhabitants of Balc who came to meet him. From thence Timur went to Syahghird, and croſſing the Gihon in a bark, quarter'd at Termed in the palace of the lord Acalmulc, where this Can's ſon made a magnificent banquet, and conſiderable preſents. Afterwards he paſs'd by the iron-gate of Colnga, and by Chekedalic, and went to encamp at Doulburdgi. From this place he march'd to Keech, and lodg'd in Aſſerai: there he viſited the tombs of the Santon Chamſeddin Kelal, whoſe prayers he implor'd, and of the prince his father, the Mirza Gehanghir his ſon, and all his children and relations. At length he took horſe, croſs'd the mountain of Keech, and lay in the garden of Tact Caratche; from whence he went down to the garden of Caratopd, and quarter'd in the palace of Gehanmama, where he was complimented by the Mirza Ouidd, ſon of the Mirza Pir Mehemed Gehanghir, being conducted by Coja Youſef, and Abgun Chah governor of Samarcand, who kiſs'd the ground, offer'd their preſents, and ſprinkled precious ſtones upon the emperor. The empreſs Youkel Canum, with all the ladys and Emirs, alſo paid their reſpects, and offer'd their preſents. As the emperor had made ſuch haſte, that no one cou'd know of his arrival, the Chemſis, Cadis, and principal perſons of Samarcand, had not an opportunity of meeting and paying their reſpects to him at any other place than this

CHAP. XXIV.

Timur's entry into his imperial city of Samarcand.

TIMUR departed from Gehannuma in the month of Muharrem 807, and went down to the garden of planes in Samarcand, from whence having made his entry into the city, he visited the college of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, which he had not seen since it was built; and afterwards he return'd to the garden of planes, where preparations were made for the banquets. The empresses and Mirzas, who had set out first with the baggage from Eroun-coub by the way of Baverd, Macan and Merou, not being yet arriv'd, Timur dispatch'd couriers to hasten their coming. The empress Touman Aga having cross'd the Gihon at Amouye, met the courier in the meadow of Betara, who had there three days to wait the great empress Serai Mulc Canum. Then leaving the baggage there, they went with expedition to Nakchuan, thence to Rebat-mulc, and the meadow of Tolun-tumar; thence to Tachent, and afterwards to Kutche Malek, where a feast was ready prepar'd for 'em, while a second courier arriv'd to advertize 'em to hasten. Hereupon they instantly took horse, and in a short time came to Samarcand. Serai Mulc Canum went down to Baghi Tchenar, and Touman Aga to Baghi Behicht, whither Timur immediately repair'd. But God was not pleas'd to suffer him to attain to this utmost pitch of glory and power, without some mixture of bitterness; for

July 1404.

Book VI. this good ſucceſs in the conqueſts of Syria, Egypt and Natolia, was follow'd by a diſtemper which ſeiz'd him in Baghi Behicht, but did not laſt long. After his diſtemper was gone off, he went to Baghi Chemal to reſide there for ſome days, where he gave a handſom banquet to all the Mirzas and lords of the court, on the birth of a ſon to Beghiſi Sultan.

Timur afterwards enter'd Samarcand, and lodg'd in the palace of the late Mirza Mehemed Sultan, for whom he caus'd a magnificent ſepulchre to be built in form of a dome, cloſe to the college built by that prince: the cincture of the dome was of marble ſet off with gold and azure; within it was dug a vault, to lay the prince's body in; and a charming garden was made round it on the ruins of ſome houſes. Then the emperor apply'd himſelf to render juſtice to the oppreſs'd, and remedy the evils which had crept in among the inhabitants of Samarcand. When he paſs'd by the great moſque, which himſelf had built, he thought the gallery, which had been erected during his abſence, was too little; ſo he order'd another to be made, and reprimanded in the hall of audience the architect Coja Mahmoud Daoud for his not having done it as it ought to have been. Timur lodg'd in the college of Serai Mulc Canum ſituate over againſt the moſque; and to render his juſtice the more conſpicuous, he order'd the commiſſarys and comptrollers to be arreſted and bound, who being interrogated, thoſe who were found culpable receiv'd the puniſhment they merited, according to the wrong they had done the people: and Maſaoud Daoud and Mehemed Dgild who had been the principal ſecretarys, and during Timur's abſence perform'd the function

Viſiers, were both hang'd at Canigheul, during the banquet which we shall relate hereafter. Chap. 24.

Afterwards Timur went to the garden of planes, where by the procurement of the Emirs he gave audience to an ambaſſador of Idecou emperor of Capchac, who preſented to him a Choncar* and other things, and made his harangues, which contain'd his maſter's ſubmiſſion and teſtimonials of obedience.

* A bird of prey.

From hence the emperor went to the garden of Dilenche, where he ſtaid ſeveral days, and receiv'd an ambaſſador from one of the greateſt ſovereigns of Europe,[1] who made him ſeveral curious and magnificent preſents, among which were pieces of tapiſtry, which the Europeans had work'd with ſo much neateneſs, that if they were to be compar'd with the great performances of the painter Mani, on the cloth of Artenk, Mani would be cover'd with ſhame, and his works appear deform'd.

Then Timur order'd the architects, who had been brought from Damaſcus, to build a magnificent palace in the garden ſouth of Bagh Chemal, which was ſquare, each of its ſides being a thouſand five hundred cubits. This palace was the largeſt and moſt magnificent of any Timur had built. The chief ornaments of the buildings in Syria are of marble, and running ſtreams are common in their houſes: the Syrian architects are alſo very ingenious in moſaic work and ſculpture, and in contriving curious fountains and perpetual jets-d'eau; and what is moſt remarkable is, that with ſtones of divers colors they do the ſame

[1] From the king of Caſtile, of which we have an account written in Spaniſh, mention'd more particularly in the French editor's preface to this book.

Book VI. sort of work, which the artificers in inlaid work do with ebony and ivory, and that with equal niceness and delicacy. They likewise made several fountains in the palace, the beauty of which was augmented by an infinity of jets d'eau of divers forms, with a surprizing and inimitable art. Afterwards the workmen of Persia and Irac enrich'd the out-parts of the walls with porcelane of Cathan, which gave the finishing stroke to the beauty of this palace. Then Timur order'd a noble banquet to be prepar'd, with all the delights which mortals can desire, or by which the senses can be gratify'd. He was there congratulated by the princes his children, the empresses and princesses, who sprinkled upon him gold and precious stones. The European * ambassadors were also invited to this great banquet, and partook of the diversions; for the Canes * have also their place in the sea;

* Spanish.

CHAP. XXV.

Timur holds a general diet. Agrees upon for the marriage of the princes at Cambalu.

TIMUR having long since form'd a design of conquering all Asia, could not refrain from finishing what he had intended. Neglectful therefore of the delights of repose, he

* A little animal, about the size of a barly-corn, which are seen upon the surface of the sea.

* By this expression we perceive the great contempt the Tagataian court had of the Spanish ambassadors.

took

took up a resolution to subdue the empire of China, which was inhabited by infidels. But before he won'd begin this great enterprize, he was willing to execute the command of the Alcoran by the marriage of his grandchildren. Hereupon he order'd a feast to be made, and sent out his circular letters to all the governors of provinces, generals of his armys, and Cherifs and nobles of his empire, to meet at a general diet, where they were to celebrate the nuptials. The princes Taizi Aglen and Bachtemour Aglen, who were descended from Genghiz Can, intreated Timur to summon the Mirza Pir Mehemed who was at Gaznin, and the Mirza Charoc who was in Corassan, to this famous Courdultai: they obtain'd their request for Pir Mehemed; but as to Charoc, Timur answer'd, that it was not proper he shou'd come, he being the main support of the kingdoms of Irac and Azerbijana. Chap. 25.

Canighul was the place appointed for the marriage-feast; and the first of Rabiulevel 807, which answers to the year of the Monky, Timur went to lodg there. This palace and the neighboring places were adorn'd with the greatest magnificence; so that this autumn-season render'd, in a manner, even the spring jealous. The tents were tied with silken cords, in which were abundance of carpets wrought with gold: the curtains were of velvet of Chuchter; and the cielings of ebony and ivory exquisitely engrav'd. The emperor's apartment consisted of four great inclosures, which are call'd Seraperd, built on very regular plans: his Kherghiah or imperial pavilion made two hundred tents, gilt and adorn'd with precious stones. Each tent had twelve columns of silver inlaid with gold; the out-side was scarlet and Octob. 17. 1404.

seven other colors, and the inside of all colors. The upholsterers, of whom there was a great number, had employ'd a whole year in erecting and furnishing this magnificent apartment. The Mirzas and Emirs had also each a Seraperd, a Barghiah, tents, and a great pavilion nam'd Kherghiah[a]. The columns of the tents were of massy silver, and the floor was cover'd with the richest carpets.

The governors of the provinces, the generals of the army, the lords, and principal commanders of the empire, assembled in this place, and pitch'd their tents in good order. The people also came there from all nations, as Cham, Muscovy, India, Greece, Zabul, Mazenderan, Gorassana, Fars, Bagdad, Syria, and in short from all the kingdoms of Iran and Turan, that is to say, from all Asia.

During these entertainments, Mengheli Bougai Hadgeb, one of the principal lords of the court of Malek Ezzaher Barcoc, king of Egypt, arriv'd in quality of ambassador from Malek Nasser Farrudge, who had succeeded Barcoc his father. This Mengheli was endow'd with many rare qualitys, could repeat the whole Alcoran by heart, was master of a great deal of eloquence, and acquainted with several sciences, which render'd him the most agreeable person in conversation. He brought abundance of uncommon presents, ready money, precious stones, rich stuffs, and nice toys. Among the raritys was a Ciraffa[b], one of the strangest animals

[a] Seraperd is an inclosure; Barghiah a great tent of audience; and Kherghiah a great pavilion. The two last are inclos'd in the Serapend.

[b] A long-neck'd creature about the bignes of a calf, bred in Africa, and, according to some, got by a camel upon a panther. It is call'd in latin *Camelopardalis*.

upon

upon the earth, and nine of the largest of riches of Asia. Chap. 27.

The Mirza Gehil Sultan came from Turkestan to this assembly, where he saluted the emperor, the great Emirs of state, as Bindi Bei, Yadghiar Berlas, and others, who all made a very splendid appearance. The Mirza Pir Mahomed came from Gaznin, according to the orders he had receiv'd; he paid his respects to Timur, who embrac'd him, and by his tears testify'd his sorrow at the death of his brother the Mirza Mahomed Sultan. The Mirza made his present, one of a horse; and next morning Timur gave him a vest wove with gold, a crown and belt; and vests to the officers of his houshold, who left off their mourning-habits.

Then Coja Ahmed Tonsi, receiver of the revenues of Corassana, arriv'd, and presented the sums belonging to the treasury of Corassana, with abundance of curious toys, most of a sort. The emperor was not the only person who partook of the joys and divertions; for both high and low had their share. The most skilful artists prepar'd some master-pieces of their art, as trophys and cabinets of flowers to represent triumphs, which were adorn'd with garlands made up with pearls and jewels. There were in the jewelers shops necklaces of pearls and precious stones, especially of grenadin and balass rubys, with an infinite number of pipes of rock-chrystal, coral and agate, and several rings, bracelets and ear-rings; all which render'd Ganighul a mine of gold and precious stones, instead of a mine of flowers, which its name implys.

An amphitheatre with four corners was built, call'd Tchartac, which was cover'd with pieces of brocade and Persian carpets. There were seats for both the vocal and instrumental musicians; and

Book VI. and also places for the buffoons and jesters, who with their facetious sayings excited mirth and laughter. There was likewise another Chartac for all sorts of tradesmen; and a hundred of a different manner, fill'd with those who sold fruit, each of whom had made a kind of garden of pistachios, pomegranates, almonds, pears and apples, in great order, which perfum'd the air, and made an agreeable sight. The butchers were particularly taken notice of for the neatness of their representations; they dress'd up a sheep in a man's shape, and other skins in divers other ridiculous figures. There were speaking goats which had horns of gold, and matter one another; they appear'd outwardly like goats, but were handsom young women disguis'd in this manner; some were dress'd like fairys and angels, with wings, while others took the figure of elephants and sheep.

The skinners also appear'd in masquerades, some like leopards, others like lions, and others like other animals, with whose skins they were cover'd; there were those likewise who resembled foxes, and tigers. The design of the masquerade was to represent genii, who had transform'd themselves into these several forms. The upholsterers likewise produc'd a master piece of their trade; for they made a camel of wood, reeds, cords, and painted linen, which walk'd about as if alive; and the man within in drawing a curtain, discover'd the workman in his own piece. The manufacturers of cotton also made birds with cotton, which look'd as if they were alive; they also made a Minaret of the same material with the rest of reeds, which every one imagin'd to be built with brick and mortar, and which was higher than the Minarets of the mosques; it was co-

Chap. 17.

ver'd with brocades and imbroidery work, carry'd it self about, and on its top was plac'd a stork. The taddlers were not behind the rest; for they gave proofs of their skill by two litters for women, which open'd at the top, and after the usual manner were laid upon a camel, in which sat two of the most beautiful women of the city, each holding a skin in her hand; and they made pleasant postures as well with their feet as hands, to divert the assembly. The matmakers likewise shew'd their dexterity, having very neatly work'd with reeds two lines of writing of Coufi*, and other large letters.

On the other side were the rope-dancers, who by their agility attracted every one's admiration; their rope at the same time seeming to touch the heavens. Thus the whole company was employ'd either as actors or spectators, all endeavoring to contribute to the celebrating the marriage of the princes the emperor's children, that is, of the Mirzas Oloug Bec and Ibrahim Sultan, sons of Charoc, Aidgel son of Miran Chan, Ahmed, Seid Ahmed, and Biera, all three sons of the Mirza Omar Cheik.

The emperor order'd the astrologers to chuse a happy moment for an affair of such importance; which being done, the first officer of the household drew the curtain of the gate. The Cadis, Cherifs, Imams and doctors of the empire, met the emperor; and having agreed on the articles of marriage, the great doctor Cheik Chamseddin Mehemed Jazari was chosen to read 'em to the assembly. The grand Cadi of Samarcand, Moulana Selaheddin, receiv'd the mutual consent of the partys, which he regiſter'd; and then,

* The antient character of the Arabians.

ac-

according to the maxims of the Hanafyan law, he join'd the princes and princesses together in marriage; on whom every one sprinkled gold and precious stones.

The emperor being seated on his throne, order'd a banquet of the utmost magnificence to be serv'd up to the brides and the other ladys of the court, by the most beautiful young women of his seraglio, who wore crowns compos'd of flowers. The princes of the blood, Emirs, Nevians, Cherifs, and foreign ambassadors, took their place according to their rank and dignity, as well as the Emirs of Touman and Hezares. These lords were seated under a canopy of twelve columns, distant from the nuptial hall about a horse's course.

The Yesaouls, or exempts, whom the Turks call Chaoux, were there backwards and forwards to perform the function of their post, mounted in a magnificent manner upon horses of great price, with saddles of gold, adorn'd with precious stones, and habited in vests of gold brocade, with an air of authority and command.

On another side there were elephants of a prodigious size, on whose backs were plac'd a kind of thrones, with abundance of ornaments. Under the canopy with twelve columns were plac'd earthern urns, with strings of precious stones tied about 'em, fill'd with gold and silver pots; and on the tops were cups of gold, agat, and rock-chrystal, adorn'd with pearls and several sorts of jewels; all which were presented on salvers of gold and silver. The drink was

---

The Yesaouls carry in their hands, as a sign of their office, a silver wand.

Tam-

Cammez[1], Oxymel, Hippocras, brandy, wines, Sirma, and other liquors. It is reported that the wood of several large forests was cut down to dress the victuals at this banquet. The head-steward with his under-officers constantly attended to give all necessary orders as to the serving up of the dishes, before which an officer always walk'd. There were tables furnish'd in different places throughout the whole plain, and flaggons of wine set near the tables, with an infinite number of baskets full of fruit. Besides the flaggons for the emperor's use, and for the lords of the court, there were several jars rang'd in all the plain for the people's drinking: and that the joy might be universal, the emperor order'd a proclamation shou'd be publish'd, that all the people might enjoy what pleasures they pleas'd, and no one take cognizance of 'em. The crier read the proclamation as follows: "This is the time of feasting, pleasure and rejoicing. Let no one complain of or reprimand another. Let not the rich encroach upon the poor, or the powerful upon the weak. Let none ask another, "Why have you done thus?" After this declaration every one gave himself up to those pleasures he was most fond of, during the feast: and whatever was done pass'd unobserv'd.

At length the feast was finish'd; after which, according to custom, a vast quantity of curious movable goods was laid upon mules and camels for the new-marry'd princes, among which were all sorts of rich habits, crowns, and belts

Chap. 16.

[1] Cammez is a drink us'd among the Tartars. The way of making it is mention'd in the history of Genghiz Can, book 5. chap. 10.

set

Book VI. set with precious stones. The mules had coverings of satin embroider'd with gold, their little bells were gold as well as those belonging to the camels; and both were handsomly adorn'd. This pompous equipage pass'd before the people, who were struck with admiration. The bridegrooms with their brides were cloth'd nine times in different habits, with crowns and belts set with precious stones; and each time they chang'd their clothes, they paid their respects as usual, while gold and precious stones, pearls, rubys, and balass rubys, were sprinkled upon 'em in great numbers, with which the ground was cover'd, and which became the domestics profit.

The following night there were every where illuminations with lanthorns, torches and lamps; and the new-marry'd princes enter'd the nuptial chamber. The next day Timur did 'em the honor to pay 'em a visit at their own apartments, being accompany'd by the empresses and great Emirs and Cherifs of his court. The rejoicings were so great thro-out the whole empire, that from Canighul as far as Tous in Corassana, there was not one place, where the sound of drums and trumpets was not heard.

The ambassadors of Egypt, Spain, India, and Decht Capchac, Gete, and others, were witnesses of this magnificence, and particularly of the pleasures of the feasts, which lasted two entire months. Timur distinguish'd 'em by particular favors, and gave vests to them, as well as to the Cherifs and other great lords, who were assembled from all parts of the empire; he did the same to the generals, the governors of the provinces, and all the officers.

After the marriage-feasts were over, Timur again betook himself to the administration of public

public affairs, ordering every one to return to his proper employment. The licence which had been granted during the feast was recal'd; and for the future no one was allow'd to drink wine, or commit any thing unlawful. Afterwards Timur retir'd to his closet, to address himself to God by the following prayer. Chap. 25.

"O Almighty-being, who art above whatever man can conceive, and whose essence is unknown to any but thy-self, being all in all; how can I recite thy praises, and how return thanks in proportion to the favors I have receiv'd, since they are infinite? Out of nothing hast thou created me; from poverty hast thou made me rich; and from a petty prince hast thou rendor'd me the most mighty emperor of the universe. To thy great bounty I owe the gaining of so many battels, and the conquest of so many kingdoms: for what am I, a poor and vile creature? I shou'd be incapable of every thing, were I not assisted by thy grace. In peace thou favor'st me with quiet and joy; and in war thou giv'st me victory, and maintainest me in sovereign authority, fear'd by my enemys, and lov'd by my subjects. Continue then, O thou great Creator, thy goodness towards me: since thou hast chosen me in thy clemency, don't chase me away in thy wrath. I know that I am but dust, and that if thou dost not favor me with thy protection, all my glory and grandeur will be turn'd into vileness and dishonor. O Lord, put me not to shame because of my vices, who have been so long accustom'd to partake of thy favors: and then I shall rest contented."

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVI.

The causes which incited Timur to undertake the conquest of the kingdom of China.

IN the beginning of Timur's rise Asia was in the possession of usurpers, who had rais'd themselves to sovereignty, either by the extinction of the race of former kings and emperors, or by intrigues and revolts: but as the world cou'd not be peaceably govern'd by so many sovereigns, there were continual wars amongst 'em, and the poor people were drove into great extremitys. Virtue and tranquillity were banish'd the places which robbers only possess'd; security was no longer to be met with on the high-ways, which were full of thieves; and in fine, every thing was in confusion and disorder. The world might then be well compar'd to a human body, which being infected with some corrupt matter, necessarily falls sick, and can receive no benefit but from a strong medicine, which purges out the cause of the disease; and yet this purgation can't be undergone without some inconveniences which may arise from a deprav'd appetite. In the same manner, God, who was pleas'd to purge the world, made use of a medicine, which was both sweet and bitter, to wit, the clemency and the wrath of the incomparable Timur; and to that effect, inspir'd in him an ambition to conquer all Asia, and to expel the several tyrants thereof. He establish'd peace and security in this part of the world; so that a single man might carry a silver-bason fill'd with gold from the east of

Asia

Asia to the west. But yet he cou'd not accom- Chap. 16.
pliſh this great affair, without bringing in ſome measure upon the places he conquer'd, deſtruction, captivity, and plunder, which are the concomitants of victory.

After this hero was happily return'd from the conqueſts of Syria, Natolia, and Georgia, and of conſequence found himſelf abſolute maſter of all the empires of Iran and Touran, he generouſly took up a reſolution to make preparations for the conqueſt of China, which was inhabited by infidels, that by this good work he might rectify what had been amiſs in other wars wherein the blood of ſo many of the faithful had been ſpilt. Thus, after the marriage of the princes his grandchildren was conſummated, he ſummon'd the Mirzas his children, and the great Emirs of his council to court, to whom he made the following ſpeech.

"God hath favour'd us with ſuch extraordi-
"nary good fortune, that we have conquer'd
"Aſia, and overthrown the greateſt kings of
"the earth; few ſovereigns in paſt ages having
"acquir'd ſo great dominions, or attain'd to
"great authority, or had ſuch numerous armies,
"or ſo abſolute a command. And as theſe
"vaſt conqueſts have not been obtain'd with-
"out ſome violence, which has caus'd the de-
"ſtruction of a great number of God's crea-
"tures, I have reſolv'd to perform ſome good
"action, which may atone for the crimes of
"my paſt life, and to accompliſh that work of
"the world beſides is not capable of, that is,
"to make war on the infidels, and exterminate
"the idolaters of China, which can't be done
"without very great ſtrength and power. It
"is therefore fitting, my dear companions, that
"thoſe very troops which have been the inſtru-

ments whereby those faults were committed, "
should also be the instruments of repentance; "
and that they march into China, to acquire "
the merit of that holy war, in demolishing "
the temples of the idols of the fire, and erect- "
ing in their places mosques and chappels. "
By this means we shall obtain the pardon of "
our sins, as the Alcoran assures us, saying "
that *good works efface the sins of this world.*"

Timur having finish'd this speech, the princes of the blood and Emirs besought God to bless his good intentions, unanimously applauding his sentiments, and loading him with praises: "Let the emperor, say they, display his standard; and we his slaves will follow him, and sacrifice our lives in his service."

Then orders were given to the Tavachis to take an exact number of all the soldiers by thousands, and to augment and enroll the regiments. Timur commanded all the Emirs of Oulous[1], and the governors of provinces, to assemble their soldiers: they took copys of the Toutcal[2] from the great Tavachis, that they might know in what order and with what arms they should come; and they departed, to get together their troops in all the provinces.

Timur then went from Cangitai, and entered the city of Samarcand, where he lodged in the college of Serai Mulc Canum. He gave the Mirza Pir Mehemed a crown, belt and horse, and permitted him to return to Zabul; he also gave to each of his domestics a horse and a suit

[1] The Emirs of Oulous are the natural lords of the Tartar hords, who are inferior to the governors of provinces.
[2] The order for the war.

of clothes: he order'd the Mirza Sidi Ahmed[a], son of Omar Cheik, to accompany him. And they took the road to Candahar. Chap. 16.

The emperor did particular honors, and gave vests and belts to the ambassador of Egypt, who obtain'd leave to return home: he order'd Moulana Abdalla Kechi to accompany him, whom he sent with a convoy in embassy to the Sultan of Egypt, for whom he gave him a letter seventy cubits long, and three in breadth, wrote in letters of gold by Moulana Cheik Mehemed, son of the doctor Hadgi Bendegiar Tebrizi, who would not yield to his father as to the beauty of his style and the art of writing finely. The substance of this letter was an answer to what the Sultan of Egypt had writ with regard to the Sultan Ahmed and Cara Yusef. He sent with this letter several curious presents worthy of the greatest princes.

Timur likewise granted particular honors and favors to the ambassadors of Europe[b], Decht Capchac, Gete and other parts, and permitted 'em to return home. He likewise dismiss'd the princess Melket Aga, who had assisted at the feast, and afterwards return'd to the Mirza Charoc at Herat. He sent to Hamadan the princess Beghi Sultan his daughter, to the Mirza Esken-der her husband: and he pass'd by Bocara and Macan.

[a] I believe this Sidi Ahmed was the father of Zaber Mirza, whose descendents reign in India at this present, under the title of the great Moguls.

[b] The Spanish ambassadors, whom we have mention'd in the preface, were dismiss'd at the same time as those of Egypt were, without obtaining an audience of leave of Timur, who was reported to have been very sick; on which account, in the Spanish relation it is said thro mistake that he was dead.

Timur gave the Mirza Olouc Bec the government of the towns of Tachkunt, Seiram, Yenghi, Achira, and all the kingdom of Gete as far as China; and to the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan that of Andecan, Acſiket, Taraz and Cachgar, as far as Cotan; which he confirm'd by letters-patent ſeal'd with his red hand. Among the Emirs of the Mirza Pir Mehemed, Tagi Bouga and three others ſet out to aſſemble the troops of thoſe provinces, and bring 'em to Tachkunt, which was the general rendezvous of the army. Temour Coja Acbouga was baniſh'd to Aſſigheul in Mogoliſtan, for a fault he had committed.

Timur went from the college of Serai Mulc Canum to Arec *, and lodg'd at Gheuc Serai, a palace he had built.

CHAP. XXVII.

Timur ſets out for the war againſt the infidels of China.

THE Alcoran remarks, that if any one in his pilgrimage to Mecca ſhou'd be ſurpriz'd by death, the merit of this good work is written in heaven in his name, as ſurely as if he had had the good fortune to execute it: it is the ſame in relation to the Gazie, where with trouble and fatigues mix'd with dangers an eternal re-

* Arec is the incloſure of the antient royal palace of Samarcand.

rit is acquir'd; and he who dies during the expedition is deem'd to have executed his design. It was fitting that so great a hero as Timur shou'd die in the bed of honor, and that this inevitable accident shou'd happen during a journy he undertook for God's glory, and to acquire the rewards the Alcoran promises to the Gazie, that is, the war against the infidels. And as the death of this great man was nearly approaching, when he took up a resolution to march into China, God permitted that neither the season, nor the countrys he must pass thro, which were always cover'd with snow and frost, shou'd be able to divert him from his resolution, or oblige him to retard his departure till the spring. Chap. 21.

He gave orders to the Emir Berendac to review the troops, and bring him an account how many men there were in the army he design'd to carry into China. This Emir reported, that the troops of Transoxiana, Turkestan, Balc, Bedakchan, Corassana, Sistan, Mazendran, the Caratatars brought from Natolia, the colonys from Persia, Azerbijana and Irac, amounted to two hundred thousand men compleat, capable of undertaking the greatest enterprizes. Timur, very much pleas'd at the good state of his troops, distributed his treasure among 'em, and commanded 'em to begin their march.

The Mirzas Calil Sultan and Ahmed Omar Cheik, accompany'd by the Emirs Codadad Hussein, Chamseddin Abbas, and other generals of Tomans and Hezares of the right wing, were order'd to pass the winter with their troops at Tachkunt, Chahroukhia, and Seiram; and the Mirza Sultan Hussein was to take up his winter-quarters with some troops of the left wing at Yassi and Sabran. Chahroukhia, which was formerly nam'd Fenakunt, was so ruin'd by Gen-

Book VI. ghiz Can's army, that there remain'd no foot-steps of any edifices till the year of the Monky, An. Dom. 1392. which anſwers to the year of the Hegira 794, when Timur order'd his lieutenants to rebuild and repeople it: and as Timur then gave it to the Mirza Charoc, it was call'd from his name Chahroukhia.

The emperor having entruſted the government of Samarcand to Argoun Chah, and the care of his treaſures to the Cheik Tchoura, order'd the great ſtandard to be diſplay'd; and he departed Jan. 8. 1405. from Samarcand the 23d of Jumaziulevel 807, the ſun being in the middle of Aquarius, in a ſextile aſpect with Jupiter; and the moon being in Libra, in a ſextile aſpect with the ſun, and in a trine aſpect with Jupiter. He laid hold on the happy moment which the aſtrologers had fix'd for his departure, and took the road to Acſoulat. He went directly to Caraboulac in Sogdiana.

Then the ſtandard departed from Caraboulac, and took the road to Ilanoti; and after ſeveral days arriv'd at Tambic, where great rains and ſnows fell, the wind blew exceſſively, and the cold was extremely violent: yet this did not hinder Timur's departure and arrival at Acſoulat. And as this place was full of ſands, and there was abundance of ſmall wood for burning, orders had been given before to build cottages of reeds, and ſome houſes fit to lodge in. The emperor being repos'd in his apartment, the Mirzas and ſoldiers encamp'd each in their reſpective poſts. The ſun was then enter'd into Piſces, the cold daily encreas'd, and the winter was more violent than uſual.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVIII.

An account of certain adventures, the knowledg of which is necessary to the understanding the latter part of this history. A relation of what pass'd at Acsoulat.

LOVE is often the cause of many disorders. The Mirza Calil Sultan, after having got with child the princess Dgehan Sultan, daughter of the Mirza Ali, Timur's sister's son, became desperately in love with one of the concubines of the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, nam'd Chadi Mulc. This passion got so great an ascendent in his soul, that he cou'd not rest till he had marry'd her, which was during Timur's absence; of which the princess his wife being inform'd, so great a jealousy kindled in her heart, that she discover'd the case to the emperor at Samarcand. Orders were immediately given out for Chadi Mulc to make her appearence: but the Mirza conceal'd her, which so provok'd Timur, that he order'd diligent search to be made after her; and being found, she was condemn'd to die, and wou'd have suffer'd immediately, if the Mirza Pir Mohemed Gehanghir had not beg'd for a reprieve. Nevertheless advice was given the emperor at Acsoulat, that the Mirza Calil Sultan had again conceal'd her in his apartment: whereupon the Emir Berat had orders to go and seize her, and bring her away; which being done, Timur in a great passion commanded her to be put to death. The empress Serai Mulc Canum cou'd not bear to see

Book VI. the deep anxiety and despair the poor Mirza fell into: but considering moreover the great love Timur bore to the princes his children, she endeavour'd to accommodate this difference, by the help of the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic; and perſuaded 'em to inform the emperor, that this lady was with child by the Mirza. On this account the order was revers'd, and the princeſs entruſted to the care of the empreſs Bouyan Aga, that after her lying-in ſhe might bring up the child, and commit the lady to ſome of her black ſlaves.*

The emperor being at Acſoulat, order'd the Mirzas his ſons, the commanders of kingdoms, the governors of provinces, the Derogas of citys, and other grand officers and lords of his empire, to write to their lieutenants, to adviſe 'em to take great care during the expedition into China, that the laws be duly executed, and juſtice diſpens'd every where, ſo that the people might enjoy quiet and ſecurity; that they ſhou'd not give heed to the diſturbers of the public tranquillity, as knowing it was their duty to treat the people well, ſince they were entruſted to 'em by the Creator; that they behave themſelves in ſuch a manner, that when an account ſhall be demanded of their conduct, they may have no cauſe to repent, nor be the reaſon of Timur's bluſhing for ſhame before the throne of God, at the day of judgment. This order was carefully executed, and ſent into all the provinces by men of probity.

* The black ſlaves are eunuchs, and the ordinary guardians of the Mahometan ladys. The reaſon of Timur's putting this lady into their hands, was to hinder the Mirza Cauſi Sultan's having any future commerce with her.

Then

Then the Mirza Calil Sultan went to Tachkunt, according to the orders he had receiv'd; and the Mirza Sultan Huſſein to Yaſſi and Sabran. There was nothing to be ſeen any where but carriages and waggons, which were brought from all the provinces, and fill'd with all ſorts of ammunition; and an infinite number of horſes brought from all parts to be ſold, which the emperor bought, and diſtributed among the Mirzas, Emirs and ſoldiers. Then the Seid Coja, ſon of the Cheik Ali Behader, came from Coraſſana from the Mirza Charoc, with advice of the good health of that prince. Chap. 18.

The emperor ſent the Emir Berendac to Tachkunt, to bring away the proviſions: and he publiſh'd an order for all the generals and great officers to keep an exact account of the ſtate of their Tomans, Hezares and Sedes; that in this long expedition no one might be oblig'd to ſtay behind for want of either proviſion or arms. This order had ſo good an effect, that in this numerous army each horſeman had enough to ſuffice ten men, as well in victuals as in arms. Beſides this, ſeveral thouſand loads of corn were carry'd in the waggons which follow'd the army, to ſow the fields on their road, that at their return they might not have a ſcarcity. Several thouſands of ſhe-camels were alſo carry'd, that on a preſſing occaſion their milk might ſerve for nouriſhment to the ſoldiers. Theſe precautions were neceſſary to an army, ſo numerous as not to be match'd in antiquity. Thoſe who had ſeen the immenſe riches at the feaſt of Canighul, were ſtruck with admiration: and men of the beſt ſenſe reflected upon the Arabian ſaying, *That when a man has attain'd the higheſt degree of proſperity, he is upon the point of abaſement.* Moſt perſons ſaid, even in public, after

Book VI. after having ſeen the prodigious grandeur and magnificence which appear'd in the pleaſures of Canighul, and the fine appearance which this innumerable army made, with the vaſt quantity of arms and baggage which were in the imperial camp, that they no longer doubted the proſperity of Timur being arriv'd at its utmoſt perfection, and conſequently fear'd with reaſon the diminution of his good fortune. People began to miſtruſt ſome diſgrace wou'd befall em; and their hearts fluctuating between hope and fear, they daily beſought God to preſerve the emperor from the misfortunes which attend the greateſt proſperity, and to turn the evil and deſtructive eyes * from off this reign, which they hop'd wou'd endure a great while longer.

* See book IV. chap. 32.

CHAP. XXIX.

Timur departs from Acſoulat.

THE ſun was yet in Capricorn, and the violence of the cold ſo great, that ſeveral men and horſes periſh'd in the road, ſome loſing their hands and feet, others their ears and noſes: the ſnows and rains were continually falling, the whole face of the heavens ſeeming to be cover'd but by one cloud, and the whole earth by one piece of ſnow. Aſtronomers remark, that at this time there was a conjunction of the three ſuperior planets in Aquarius; which was a preſage of ſome great misfortune. Yet the deſire of acquiring the merit of the Gazie prevail'd in the mind of our conqueror above the greateſt difficultys: he wou'd not wait till the cold abated, but inform'd himſelf of the nature and cir-

circumſtances of the roads, of the water, paſturage, deſarts and mountains, which he order'd to be taken down in writing, that all neceſſary precautions might be us'd. Chap. 28.

Then Timur ſet out from Aeſoulat; and ſent freſh orders to the Mirzas Calil Sultan and Ahmed, accompany'd by the Emirs Codadad Huſſeini, Yadghiar, Chah Erlat, Chamſeddin Abbas, Berendac, and eight others, who were in winter quarters with their troops about Tachkunt, Chahroukhia, and Seiram, as alſo to the Mirza Sultan Huſſein, who was with his about Yaſſi and Sabran in Capchac, not to fail of leaving their winter-quarters at the beginning of ſpring, in order to join the court.

Timur having march'd two days and one night, went to Ouzoun-Ata to encamp, then to Yoſcadgiai Cheik, from thence to Sourkent, and afterwards to Comarcha Ata, to Sultan Cheik, and at length to the town of Zernouc, from whence he departed, and croſſing the Sihon upon the ice, encamp'd on the other bank. This river was freze ſo hard this year, that they were oblig'd to dig two or three cubits to get water; and from the ſun's entring Sagittarius to his coming out of Piſces, waggons, men and beaſts, cou'd paſs either the Gihon or Sihon in any part of 'em.

Timur having decamp'd from the banks of the Sihon, arriv'd at Otrar on wedneſday the 12th of Regeb 807, and lodg'd in the palace of Birdi Bei, where all the princes and lords had likewiſe each their reſpective apartments. The day of the emperor's arrival, one corner of the roof of the palace, where he was lodg'd, ſet fire, by the tunnel of a chimney running by it; but the fire was ſoon extinguiſh'd. This accident diſquieted the lords of the court, inaſmuch Feb. 27. 1405.

as

as moſt of 'em had had frightful dreams which prognoſticated ſome misfortune; and it ſeem'd as if nature had given the people an inſight into what ſhou'd happen to their prince. But fate is inevitable.

Timur ſent Mouſſa Recmal to diſcover whether there was any paſſage over the bridge, who carefully examin'd the whole, and brought anſwer that it was impoſſible to croſs it. Another, who had been ſent towards Seiram and the mountain of Coulan, on his return declar'd that the ſnow of this mountain was two pikes high.

Then Cara Coja, an antient domeſtic of Tocatmich Can, heretofore emperor of Capchac, arriv'd at court in quality of ambaſſador from that prince, who had a long time wander'd about as a vagabond in the deſart of Capchac. Timur being pleas'd to grant him a magnificent audience, enter'd in ſtate into the Divan Cané, and aſcended his throne; the princes Taizi Aglen, of the race of Octai Caan *, Bachtemour Aglen, and Gicra Aglen, of the race of Touchi Can, ſitting on his right hand, and the Mirzas Olouc-Bec, Ibrahim Sultan, and Aidgel on the left. The ambaſſador was conducted to the audience by the Emirs Birdi Bei and Noureddin two brothers, Chamelic and Coja Youſef; and having proſtrated himſelf, had the honor to kiſs the imperial carpet: he made an harangue from his maſter in theſe words. "I have, "ſays he, ſuffer'd the puniſhment my ingrati-"tude merited: the ſlight acknowledgment I "have made for ſo many favors receiv'd of your "highneſs, hath drawn upon me the miſerys "I find my ſelf reduc'd to. I have no other

* Caan ſignifys Can of Cans.

"refuge

" refuge than the hopes of pardon from your Chap. 30.
" bounty: and if I can be assur'd you'll forget
" your servant's faults, I will discover a grateful
" sense of the favor by a constant submission to
" your imperial orders."

Timur, according to his wonted goodness, treated this ambassador with civility, and even assur'd him that at his return from the war of China, he wou'd again conquer the kingdom of Touchi Can, which he had a design to put into the hands of Tocatmich Can his master. After these civil treatments he dismiss'd the ambassador Cara Coja, sending by him a present to Tocatmich. And Timur's intention being to depart forthwith from Otrar to continue his expedition into China, he design'd to send back the empresses and the young princes his children, who out of ceremony were come thither to wait upon him. But fate had otherwise order'd it.

CHAP. XXX.

Timur's death at Otrar.

THE Alcoran remarks, that God created the world for the sake of man, but man for his own service. By this we see that the dignity of the human soul is too great to remain for ever in this material body; and that so pure and excellent a being can't find satisfaction but in the enjoyment of him who created it, and gave it immortality.

Timur, after the campain of seven years, in which he had conquer'd almost all Asia, turn'd the whole of his ambition towards the establishing of justice in the world, informing himself of the

Book VI. the state of his subjects, and redressing all evils: if they were oppress'd by tyrants, he did 'em justice; and if in poverty, he enrich'd 'em by his favors; and by this means render'd the world flourishing, and rejoic'd the people's hearts. As soon as he was return'd to the seat of his empire, without reposing himself from his fatigues any longer than five months, he form'd a design to make war on the idolaters of China, hoping by that to obtain pardon of God for his former crimes: and having set out for that expedition, he came to Otrar, seventy six leagues or parasangas distant from Samarcand.

March 25. 1405. On wednesday the 10th of Chaban 807, Timur was attack'd with a burning fever, and believ'd he heard the Houris say to him, Repent, for you must appear before God. On this, he became sincerely penitent for his crimes, and resolv'd to make satisfaction for 'em by good works. His sickness increasing, he found himself very much weaken'd, having no rest: affliction seiz'd the heart of all the court, which appear'd the greater as the distemper augmented. Then neither empire, nor armys, nor riches, nor crowns stood him in any stead.

And tho Moulana Fadialla Tebrizi, one of the most skilful physicians of the age, employ'd all his care in prescribing the most excellent remedys, yet the sickness became more violent. Physic is useless when fate has ordain'd the death of any one. All hopes of the emperor's health were lost; his physicians having given him over. But tho his body was weaken'd, yet his mind continu'd sound, and notwithstand-

[1] The Houris are continual virgins, who the Mahometans believe are appointed for their pleasures in their prophet's paradise.

ing

ing his violent griefs, he was always informing himself of the condition of his army. When he found his sickness so strong, that all remedys prov'd ineffectual, he resolv'd courageously to face death; and calling the empress and principal Emirs into his presence, he made the following testament.

Chap. 10.

Timur's last will.

"I am satisfy'd that my soul is about to leave "my body, and that my asylum is at the "throne of God, who gives and takes away "life at his pleasure. I beseech you to utter "neither crys nor groans at my death; and "instead of rending your garments, and run-"ning to and fro like madmen, pray to God to "have mercy on me, say Allah Eber [a], and the "Fatiha [b], that my soul may find comfort. "Since God has so highly favor'd me as to en-"able me to give laws to the earth, whereby "at present through the kingdoms of Iran and "Touran no one dare encroach upon his neigh-"bor, nor the great oppress the poor, I have "hopes that he will pardon my sins, tho they "are without number. I have this consolation, "that during my reign I have not permitted the "strong to injure the weak. Tho I am not ig-"norant of the instability of the world, yet I "do not advise you to leave off caring for the "affairs thereof; since that will cause disorders "among men, banish safety from the high-"ways, and be an obstacle to the people's quiet: "and it is certain that at the day of judgment "an account will be demanded of those, to "whom the care of these things have been "intrusted.

"I

[a] God is the most great.

[b] The first chapter of the Alcoran, which the Mahometans recite, as Christians do the Lord's prayer.

Book VI.

Pir Mehemed Gehanghir declar'd Timur's succeſſor.

"I declare my ſon Pir Mehemed Gehanghir "my univerſal heir, and lawful ſucceſſor to "the empire. He muſt poſſeſs the throne of "Samarcand with an abſolute and independent "ſovereignty, that he may carefully manage "both the religious and civil affairs, and take "care of the neceſſitys of the army, and of "the citys and countrys ſubject to my juriſdic-"tion. I command you all to obey him, and "unanimouſly to ſacrifice your lives in maintain-"ing his authority; that the world may not "fall into diſorder, and that my labor for ſo "many years may not be loſt. If you agree "together, no one will dare to oppoſe you, or "offer the leaſt obſtacle againſt the execution of "my laſt will."

Timur then order'd all the Emirs and great lords of the court, and the generals of the army, to come before him, whom he ſtrictly enjoin'd to ſee to the execution of his teſtament; and made 'em promiſe in his preſence with ſolemn oaths not to conſent that any one ſhou'd oppoſe it: and he ſent orders to all the Emirs and generals who were abſent to take the ſame oaths.

The lords having heard this diſcourſe, were in the utmoſt conſternation, melted into tears, and fell with their faces to the ground. The Emirs Cheik Nouredin and Chamelic, whoſe hearts were ſeiz'd with grief and deſpair, ſaid to Timur, "We cou'd ſacrifice our lives with a "great deal of pleaſure to purchaſe one ſingle "day more for our gracious maſter. If our "death wou'd be of ſervice to you, our lives "ſhou'd coſt us nothing: but it is impoſſible to "alter the decrees of providence. We are your "ſlaves; and tho being depriv'd of your pre-"ſence we have no longer any joy or content-"ment,

" ment, yet we can assure your highness, that " as long as we live, we will not fail of continu- " ing obedient to your orders, tho at the hazard " of our lives. May heaven never grant us suc- " cess, if we have the least thought of doing " any thing contrary to the will of our benefactor. " We will always walk in the same paths of obe- " dience after your death as during your life."

While they were thus speaking, tears gush'd out of their eyes, their minds no longer enjoy'd any quiet, and their bodys lost all their natural strength. They told the emperor that if he pleas'd, they wou'd write to the Mirza Calil Sultan, and the Emirs who were at Tachkunt, to come to court, that having the honor to see their master's face once more, they might learn from his own mouth his last will: " For, say " they, tho we shou'd declare to em the form " of your last will with all possible exactness, " yet it will not have the same force on em, as " if they had heard it themselves." But the emperor answer'd that his hour was approaching; that those who were absent cou'd not come time enough to see him, and that it was impossible for em to meet again till the day of judgement. " This, says he, is the last audience " you will have of me. I have no other desire " than to see the Mirza Calil once more: but " that is impossible: God will not have it so." The ladys and princes, who were in the antichamber to observe the course of his distemper, on hearing this, lost all patience, and fell into the utmost consternation. Then Timur turning towards the princes his children, spoke to em as follows.

" Remember to do every thing I have recom- " mended to you in relation to the public tran- " quillity; and be constantly informing your-

"selves of the affairs of your subjects. Be valiant, and courageously keep possession of your "words, that like me you may enjoy a long "reign and a vast empire. I have purg'd the "countrys of Iran and Touran from the enemys "and disturbers of the people's quiet; and have "render'd 'em flourishing by my justice. If you "do what my testament directs, and make equity and justice the rule of your actions, the "kingdom will remain a long time in your "hands; but if discord creeps in among you, "ill fortune will attend your undertakings; "your enemys will breed wars and sedition, "which it will be difficult to put a stop to; "and irreparable mischiefs will arise both in "religion and government."

After this discourse the distemper increas'd: and tho there were several Imams and readers without the door of the chamber, who read the Alcoran from one end to the other, yet Timur was pleas'd to have the doctor Moulana Hebetulla, son of Moulana Obaid, to read the word of God at his bed's-head, and often repeat the belief of the unity of God. At night between the evening-prayer and bed-time, (that is about eight a-clock) Timur several times made profession of his belief of Lailahillallah, remembring the promise of Mahomet, that he whose last words are, There is no other god than God, shall assuredly enter into paradise. Then he gave up his soul to the angel Israel, who call'd him in these words: "O soul, that "hopest in God, return to thy Lord with re"signation. We belong to God, and must re"turn to him."

* Israel.

* There is no other god than God.

This

This fatal event happen'd on wednesday-night the 17th of Chaban 807, which answers to the 14th of Esfendarmez 3126 of the Gelalian epocha, the sun being in the eighth degree of Pisces. Several learned men have compos'd verses on his death, in which the date of the year is contain'd; and among others Moulana Behadedin Dgyamis, they say he was seventy-one years of age, and that he had reign'd thirty-six, a number equal to that of his children and grandchildren, as we shall see in the last chapter. Chap. 31. April 1. 1405.

CHAP. XXXI.

Relation of what happen'd after Timur's death.

TIMUR having pass'd from this mansion of pride to the paradise of eternal delights, fear and horror seiz'd both upon his friends and enemys; every one was jealous of disorders and wars, and did not in the least doubt but the security and tranquility of the state would entirely perish. The affliction would have been insupportable, had not his horoscope predicted the continuation of the crown in his august family, and that the kingdoms he had conquer'd by the strength of his arm, and which he had render'd flourishing by his justice, would remain in peace under the protection of his children who should succeed him in the empire. Notwithstanding this, the princes of the blood cast their crowns upon the earth; the empresses and ladys tore their faces and their hair; the Emirs and principal persons rent their robes, and flinging themselves upon the ground, pass'd that dismal night in grief; and it seem'd as if the heavens had shar'd in this affliction, since rains and

thunder, ſtorms and tempeſt did not ceaſe all the night.

Next morning the grandees of the court ended their lamentations, to perform the emperor's funeral obſequys. The doctors Hendouchah Caznegi and Moulana Cotobeddin Sedr had the care of the ceremony. They order'd the prayers and verſes of the Alcoran, appointed on theſe occaſions, to be read. Then the body was waſh'd, and embalm'd with camphire, muſk and roſe-water; and being wrap'd up in linen, was laid in a coffin of ebony, after having recommended his ſoul to God.

When they had finiſh'd this ceremony, the great Emirs who attended his perſon, as Birdi Bei, ſon of Sarbouga, and his brother the Emir Cheik Noureddin, Chamelic, Coja Youſef, and ſeveral others, ſolemnly ſwore they wou'd always aſſociate together, and uſe their utmoſt endeavors, even to the hazard of their lives, to ſee Timur's teſtament executed. And as the deſign of the war in China was not yet abandon'd, they kept Timur's death conceal'd, and forbad the ladys changing their habits, or ſhewing any exterior ſigns of grief, that the enemy might not have preſent advice of it.

Afterwards they went to meet the empreſſes, and held a council with 'em in relation to what muſt be done at this preſent conjuncture. They ſent advice of the misfortune to the Mirza Calil Sultan, and the Emirs who were at Taehkunt. They diſpatch'd expreſſes to Yaſi and Sabran, to the Mirza Sultan Huſſein, to advertiſe him that the emperor's ſickneſs increas'd, and that he mou'd come to court with but few of his men. They ſent Kezer Coutchin to Gaznin, with letters to the Mirza Pir Mehemed Gehanghir, to inform him of Timur's death, and of his will,

in

in which he had declar'd him his univerſal heir and ſucceſſor to the empire; and they beſought him to repair immediately to Samarcand. They alſo wrote letters to all the Mirzas and governors of provinces, inviting 'em to obſerve all the vigilance neceſſary on the like occaſions, to guard the countrys entruſted to 'em, and ſecure themſelves from all reproach; praying 'em to inform themſelves exactly of whatever ſhou'd paſs on their frontiers, and give advice of it to court; in fine, to neglect nothing which might hinder any ſurprize, becauſe the enemys and diſturbers of the public tranquillity had kept themſelves conceal'd for ſeveral years as it were in exile, and waited only ſuch a favorable opportunity as this: that in the mean while they ſhou'd execute juſtice, and continue their favors to the people, that no one might have any thoughts of revolting. The Cheik Temour went expreſs to the Mirza Charoc at Herat, Ali Dervich to the Mirza Omar at Tauris, Aratmour to the Mirzas Miran Chah and Aboubecre at Bagdad, and another into Fars and Irac. Chap. 32.

CHAP. XXXII.

Timur's coffin tranſported from Otrar.

THE Mirzas, empreſſes and Emirs, who were at Otrar, on thurſday-night the 18th of Chaban 807, at the time of evening-prayers, cover'd the coffin with velvet and black damask; and with it took the road to Samarcand: they paſs'd the river Jaxartes in the night upon the ice, and went into a wood on the bank of the river: from Otrar to the Jax- April 2, 1405.

Book VI. artes are but two leagues or parasangas. Next morning the grief became so violent, that nothing was heard but the most piteous groans and lamentations, no one being able to abstain from sorrow. The Emirs, Hafekis and Coutchins cast their turbants upon the ground, and cover'd their heads with dust; while the ladys rent their hair, and tore their cheeks with their nails.

After these demonstrations of affliction, the wise Emirs gave the following advice. "Since "fate, say they, begins to make us feel mis-"fortunes, we must give way to its force, no-"thing being able to hold out against its efforts. "The most refin'd politics can't retard its "course: death makes no difference between "kings and slaves. On this account, the best "method is to fortify our selves with patience, "since there is no other remedy, and endeavor "by alms, works of piety, prayers, and read-"ing of the Alcoran, to rejoice, if possible, the "soul of our deceas'd master. Death lies in "ambuscade to surprize us; it gives the finish-"ing stroke to all affairs, as well to the con-"quest of the world, as to the least trifle: no "one is exempted from it; and he who never "dies can't be born again." These counsels not being powerful enough to appease the great despair in which every one was plung'd, the Emirs had recourse to Mahomet's death, at the same time beseeching him to intercede for the consolation of the afflicted. They shew'd that tho this great prophet was the most excellent of God's creatures, and the seal of the prophets, yet the moment destin'd for his death being come, his pure soul broke the cords by which it was tied to his body, and with an entire resignation took its flight towards paradise; that since

since this illustrious man cou'd not be immortal, Chap. 33.
others must not expect to be so; and however
afflicting this misfortune might appear, there
was no other remedy to be us'd than to resign
our selves to fate, and implore the assistance of
God, whose orders we must obey.

CHAP. XXXIII.

The empresses and Emirs hold a council concerning the war of China.

THE reading of the history and death of Mahomet having a little moderated the universal grief, the Emirs took this opportunity to give the following counsel to the empresses and princes.

"There is no doubt, say they, that if so powerful and numerous an army, which was never exceeded by any in past ages, nor probably ever will be in times to come, shou'd march into the enemy's country, we shall easily exterminate the infidels in a short time: and tho the news of our master's death shou'd be carry'd to the Calmacs and Chinese, yet all news being thought either true or false, if we lead our army as far as their frontiers, they will be jealous they have receiv'd false advice, and say that if Timur was dead, no one wou'd be powerful enough to head an army of that strength; and thus imagining he is yet alive, and that we spread the rumor of his death thro artifice and design, they will be seiz'd with fear, while we shall gain an easy victory. It is requisite that we put all Timur's intentions in execution, and confiding in God,

Book VI. "carry our arms into China, where we may "employ all our strength in prosecuting this re- "ligious war with vigor, which the empe- "ror had resolv'd to wage with the idolaters "of China, in order to procure glory to the "Mussulmans. And after we shall have satisfy'd "our consciences in this point, we will display "the victorious standard, and return to Samar- "cand, where we will employ all our joint en- "deavors in the well-governing of the empire. "Thro the grace of God, there are more than "thirty kings or sons of kings whom our master "has left for his successors to the crown, one "of whom must necessarily inherit it. For "would it not be most unhappy that so mighty "an army, equip'd with so much difficulty "and care by Timur, after having began its "march, and gone so many days journy with "design to make war on the infidels, should re- "turn without having executed any thing of "consequence?"

The princes, empresses, and great Emirs revolving these things in their minds, unanimously resolv'd, That the Emirs with their regiments shou'd march under the command of the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, whom Timur had chosen to attend him in the expedition into China; and that they shou'd join the Mirza Calil Sultan at Tashkunt, to whom the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan shou'd resign the command of the army, as being the eldest of the Mirzas then present; and that Calil Sultan shou'd bear the name of emperor thro out the whole campain; but that the great Emirs of the council shou'd administer the affairs of state under him as usual: and lastly, that they shou'd march into China in this order, from whence, after having vanquish'd the idolaters, rain'd the towns, burnt the temples,

and

and seiz'd on the spoils, they shou'd return to Samarcand, where the empresses, Mirzas and Emirs shou'd hold a general diet, to execute Timur's last will and testament. Chap. 34.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Timur's coffin is transported to Samarcand.

THE foregoing resolution being taken, the Emirs Coja Yousef and Ali Coutchin, with several lords, took the road to Samarcand with Timur's coffin, where they arriv'd on monday-night the 22d of Chaban 807, and bury'd Timur with the usual solemnitys. April 6. 1405.

After they were gone, the other great Emirs gave the following counsel to the empresses. "The our deceas'd master of happy "memory has by his testament ordain'd the "Mirza Pir Mehemed his successor in the empire; yet as this prince is at Candahar, and "has perhaps pass'd into India, so that he is at "a great distance from us; and if we wait his "arrival to continue the Chinese expedition, "we shall not get there in a proper season for "making war, we will therefore immediately "depart for that campam: and when that "Mirza shall arrive at Samarcand, which will "be in a little time, because he must soon receive the news of the emperor's death, it is "requisite that he enter the city with pomp "and ceremony, and ascend the throne of the "empire according to the will of his deceas'd "grandfather; for to him the crown lawfully "belongs. Timur has always cherish'd this "Mirza's children more than those of any

"other,

Book VI. "other, because he was the son of Gehanghir "his eldest son, to whom and to his children the "succession belongs according to the Mahometan law. We may also truly say, that good-"fortune has always attended him, and that "the majesty of kings may be seen even in his "countenance; that he is of a pure faith, go-"verns himself by good maxims, has a gene-"rous and brave heart, a noble mind, and a "princely behavior. His justice, equity and "clemency towards the people are more consi-"cuous than the sun: and we ought to expect "that this great prince's reign will add new "splendor to the throne, great advantages to "the subjects, peace and tranquillity in the king-"doms dependent on this great empire, and a "universal satisfaction among the people; so "that the approaching installation of this "prince may take away from ill designing per-"sons all means of sowing division, or procur-"ring revolt."

This discourse being ended, the empresses Serai Mulc Canum, Tekul Canum, Tuman Aga, and the other ladys departed with the Mirzas Oluc-Bec and others for Samarcand, after the emperor's coffin. The Emirs recommended to 'em to use all imaginable precautions, especially where they encamp'd, and to send out constantly to gain intelligence for fear of being surpriz'd. This separation was not without a mutual affliction.

At ten in the morning of the same day, the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, and the great Emirs took horse at the head of the army, with design to march into China, to execute the emperor's intentions in a Gazie against the infidels.

Timur's imperial standard, his drum and kettledrums, with the ensigns of his victorys, were

were carry'd by a troop of horse of the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan's court. At the view of this great train an ingenious person made these reflections: "Behold the standards which are "the signs of command: to beat the drum, be-"longs only to kings: since the same has been "done by this young Mirza, he ought to hope "for the scepter. These are good omens: and "since he is the first who has taken the place "of empire, in all likelihood it will return to "him again in time." All this happen'd as predicted. Chap. 14.

When they had pass'd the Sihon, and march'd one league, they went to encamp on the bank of the river Ardge, near the bridge of Caldurma, east of Otrar. An imperial tent and large pavilion were erected there for the Mirza; and the horse-tail of the deceas'd emperor was fix'd over-against the camp with the usual ceremony. From thence expresses were sent to the Mirza Calil Sultan and the great Emirs of the right wing, who were at Tachkunt and Charoukia, to inform 'em that they had sent Timur's coffin to Samarcand, and that the empresses were gone after 'em; that for their parts they had resolv'd to continue the war in China, and were set out with that intent. They also sent couriers with the same news to the Mirza Sultan Hussein, who commanded the left wing, desiring him to march immediately with his troops to join them at Jouclec, where they might see Timur's last will and testament, and prepare to march with 'em into China. Jouclec, which was the place of rendezvous, is a town five leagues east from Otrar.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXV.

The Mirza Sultan Hussein, Timur's grandson, opposes the sentiments of the Emirs.

NOTHING is more certain, than that every enterprize which is not favor'd by providence will prove unsuccessful. Fate had not resolv'd on the design of making war in China; on which account all the efforts for that purpose were render'd useless, and fortune overturn'd this hopeful project: for the Mirza Sultan Hussein had no sooner heard of Timur's death, than the desire of revolting, which had lain conceal'd in his breast so long, and the effects of which he had discover'd in the war at Damascus, where thro an unheard-of cowardice he abandon'd our party, when the Syrian army sally'd out of the city to attack us; the desire of revolting, I say, re-kindled in his breast on this occasion: and excited by a deprav'd imagination, he dispanded part of the troops of the left wing, and taking from em their horses, pass'd the Sihon at Cogende with a thousand men, each having two horses, with whom he took the road to Samarcand by the way of Cazac, designing to surprize the inhabitants of that place by a stratagem, that they might suffer him to enter the city. At noon of the same day the courier, who had carry'd him the express, return'd with this news. Every one was surpriz'd, and thought of taking the necessary measures for preventing his ambitious designs.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXVI.

The Emirs write circular letters and give advice to all the provinces of the Mirza Sultan Hussein's undertaking.

WHEN the Emirs Cheik Nourreddin and Chamelic were informed of the unjust proceedings of the Sultan Hussein, they immediately wrote the following letter to the Emir Argoun Chah governor of Samarcand. "The "Sultan Hussein has begun to act his follys "afresh: he has disbanded the troops he com- "manded, and with a thousand horsemen, each "having two horses, has taken the road to "Samarcand: therefore be upon your guard "for the defence of the city, and omit no "precautions. If this rash young prince ap- "proach the city, and you meet with an oppor- "tunity of taking him, fail not of securing "him; that no misfortunes happen thro his "means; for he ought not to be trusted." They wrote another letter with the same advice to the empress, beseeching them to stop wherever they then were, till they had join'd 'em. They also sent a courier to Cojah Caleb to inform him of what had happen'd, advising him to use all necessary precautions in relation to the litter, and endeavor to convey it into the city as soon as possible, lest the Sultan Hussein, excited by his ambition, under pretence of seeing Timur's coffin enter Samarcand, should get in himself, and stir up a revolt. They dispatch'd an express to the Mirza Cassil Sultan and his great Emirs who were at Tachkunc, which is distant from Otrar

six

Book VI. six days journy in the caravan, to let 'em know of the evil design of the Sultan Huſſein, who had broke their meaſures in relation to the war with China; that it was proper for the Emirs at Tachkunt to return with their troops to Acar, which is a famous meadow full of good paſturage; to which place themſelves wou'd alſo repair, and make known to 'em Timur's teſtament, which he had order'd at the point of death, and which they had to put in execute; that afterwards they wou'd endeavor in concert to take care of the public concerns, as they ſhou'd agree together in the diets which were to be held.

When the couriers were ſet out, the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, with the Emirs Cheik Nour-reddin and Chamelic, departed from Otrar, and took the road to Samarcand. The Emir Birdi Bei ſtaid in his government of Otrar: and as the revolt of the Sultan Huſſein had cauſed ſome conſternation, the whole army march'd in order of battel towards Samarcand. In the evening they paſs'd the Sihon, where the ice broke, and three camels laden with gold were drown'd. They march'd all night, and next morning the Emirs join'd the empreſs.

On the other hand, there happen'd a very croſs affair, which was, that the Emirs of Cali Sultan's court, and even the ſoldiers of his body of the army, Turks and Tadgics, Iraciens and Natolians, had had advice before the arrival of the expreſs who ſet out from Otrar, that the Sultan Huſſein had diſperſ'd his troops, and taken the road to Samarcand with a thouſand horſe; that at the reception of this news the fear caus'd by Timur's death was much increas'd; and that imagining they ſhou'd in ſome meaſure remedy it, the Mirza Ahmed Omar

Cheik,

Cheik, and the great Emirs Codadad Husseim, Yadghiar Chah Erlat, Chamseddin Abbas, Berendac, and other principal officers, had assembled at Tachkunt, and without heeding for the advice of the other Mirzas, the empresses, or great Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelit, had advanc'd the Mirza Calil Sultan to the throne of the empire at Tachkunt, and sworn to obey him, not considering the ill success which must attend an undertaking of that importance.

CHAP. XXXVII.

A letter to the great Emirs who were at Tachkunt.

THE empresses, Mirzas, great Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic, having perceiv'd advice of the oath taken by the great Emirs to the Mirza Calil Sultan, whom they had plac'd on the throne, wrote the following letter to 'em by way of reproach.

"The great Timur our master, of blessed "memory, has ordain'd by his last will the "Mirza Pir Mahomed Gehangir his heir and "lawful successor on the throne, & have "sworn to obey his last will of our lives. "At present you have acted contrary to the "express will of our great master and bene-"factor. By this disobeying his last will, you "have forgot the obligations you lie under to "him. We did not doubt that if any one had "but advis'd to do as you have done, you "wou'd have oppos'd 'em with all your power. "We can't comprehend how lords of so great "experience have dar'd to commit an action of

"such

Book VI. "such ill consequence, which in the end must
"produce repentance and misery on your side.
"Your manner of acting will doubtless be
"charg'd as an excess of ambition: how comes
"it then that you have wounded your reputa-
"tion by ingratitude towards your benefactor?
"You have violated your oath of fidelity to
"Timur, which you ought never to have done,
"especially at a time when so many misfor-
"tunes have been caus'd by the death of our
"gracious master. Don't you consider the ill
"name you'll acquire by this action in history,
"which will remain to the end of time? How
"can you consent to this dishonorable deed,
"who have so often sacrific'd your lives in the
"pursuit of honor? How can you become
"traitors to an emperor, for whose sake you
"have so often and so generously expos'd your
"selves to the greatest dangers? What is still
"surprizing is, that your conscience must re-
"prove you at the same time that we do, since
"you are not ignorant of the crime you have
"committed. How can persons of your high
"quality, of so great understanding, and long
"experience, dare to commit so enormous a
"fault?"

This letter was seal'd and sent by a messen-
ger nam'd Abou Dgyeous, who having deli-
ver'd it to the Emirs, they read it, and after a
serious reflection, acknowledg'd their fault, and
were sorry for it; but repentance was too late,
they having resign'd their liberty to another.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

The Emir Berendac arrives at the empresses court, with an answer to the letter sent the Emirs, who were at Tachkant with the Mirza Calil Sultan.

THE Mirzas, empresses and Emirs being encamp'd at Aksoulat, the Emir Berendac, son of Gehan Chah, arriv'd from Tachkant, and being admitted into their presence, paid his compliments of condolence; and afterwards took his place in the council-hall with the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic, where he presented the following letter written by the Emirs Cedadad Hussein and Chamseddin Abbas.

"We have taken an oath to obey the Mirza "Calil Sultan, for the good of both church and "state, and to maintain the succession of the "kingdom in our master's family for ever. The "misfortune which has happen'd appear'd so "terrible to us, that we fear'd some unexpected "revolt, which it would have been impossible "to have remedy'd. All we have done was "with a sincere intention. A general was "wanting to our troops, that no one might "have any pretence for revolting, which would "have brought the state into confusion and dis-"orders: we therefore imagin'd you would have "had the same sentiments with us. But since "our proceedings do not agree with the last "will of our master, we receive his orders "with respect and sincerity; and God forbid

Book VI. "we shou'd in any wise contradict 'em. We "shall be always ready to join in whatever you "judg proper to do as to the execution of the "emperor's testament."

The Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic having read this letter, which was conformable to what the Emir Berendac had declar'd to 'em, told him they cou'd by no means consent to any thing done in contradiction to Timur's will, and that they wou'd never acknowledg the Mirza Calil Sultan. "If we disobey our emperor's "orders, say they, and acknowledg any other "for his successor than whom he has declared, "we shall deserve to be loaded with misfor- "tunes and shame, and to be for ever accurs'd. "We'll take great care as to what we do in this "affair, of which every sensible and impartial "man may judg."

Then the Emirs wrote a second letter to those at Tachkunt, whom they invited to submit entirely to the will, and annul the oath they had taken thro inadvertency; as likewise to remember the obligations they were under to the emperor, and not have cause to blush before him at the day of judgment. "This action, added "they, will look ill both in the sight of God "and man, and be an eternal blot upon you, "which you will never be able to wipe off."

This second letter was put into the hands of the Emir Berendac, to whom they spake as follows: "You have committed a great fault, "which you ought to repair by vacating the "oath you have so wrongfully taken, and by "following our master's orders, which we are "all oblig'd to obey. Submit yourselves to the "Mirza Pir Mehemed, and persuade the Mirza "Calil Sultan to do the same. You must sign "an agreement to that purpose, and send it to

"us

" us at Samarcand, that we may deliver it to Chap. 38.
" the Mirza who is the true and lawful heir to
" the empire." Then the Emir Berendac set out for Tachkunt.

Next day the Mirzas, empresses and Emirs departed to continue their road towards Samarcand. The Mirza Oloue-Bec, with the Emir Chamelic, at the head of one body of the army, march'd towards the right: and the Mirza Ibrahim, Sultan with the Emir Cheik Noureddin, commanding another body, towards the left. These two Mirzas were then but eleven years old: and Oloue-Bec being eldest by four months and twenty days, the Emir Chamelic, when they were arriv'd at Caradgeu, set out before, in pursuance of the resolution taken in the assembly: and being arriv'd at Samarcand, the governor Argoun Chah shut the gates against him, and even plac'd a guard upon the walls. The Mirza Calil Sultan had written a letter to him full of fine promises, by which he engag'd him to be of his side, telling him that if he was willing to gain his favor, he shou'd refuse entrance to the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic.

Argoun Chah, puff'd up by this Mirza's fair promises, which flatter'd the ambition and ingratitude inherent in his Turcoman blood, abandon'd himself to folly, and was won over to the Mirza Calil Sultan. The Emir Chamelic went from the gate of Cheik Zade, which is upon that road, to the gate of Tchehar Raha, where the Emirs Argoun Chah, Coja Youssef, and other chiefs of the city commonly keep their stations. Argoun Chah wou'd not suffer him to enter, pretending to stand by the orders he had receiv'd of Timur. He moreover told him that he was ready to believe the emperor had by his testa-

Book VI. ment ordain'd the Mirza Pir Mehemed his successor; but that he wou'd wait till all the Mirzas and Emirs being assembled together agreed on it; that he wou'd then open the gates to 'em, and they might proclaim the Mirza, and place him upon the throne; after which he wou'd deliver up the government of the city.

The Emir Chamelic believing that what Argoun Chah had told him was all grimace, and that he was resolv'd not to open the gate, return'd very much afflicted: he cross'd the river Couhee, and being arriv'd at Ali Abad, a town of Sogdiana Kelana, he met the Mirzas and empresses, who had pass'd the mountain of Caradgee. He told 'em how affairs stood, and his thoughts of Argoun Chah's real designs. This renew'd their afflictions, and oblig'd 'em to encamp. Serai Mule Canum and Touman Aga held a council with the Emirs on what was most fitting to be done, and agreed that it wou'd be best to go to Bocara, while they shou'd send the Emir Cheik Noureddin to Samarcand, to persuade the Emirs there to give 'em entrance.

April 14. 1405. This Emir departed the the first of Ramadan 807, and being arriv'd at the gate of Tchehar Raha, counsell'd the Emirs within, who gave him the same answer as they had the Emir Chamelic. Nevertheless Noureddin quitted his horse, pass'd the bridge on foot, and spoke to 'em before the gate. "Emirs, said he, what we are "now talking of is no trifling matter. Per"mit me then to enter alone into the city, that "we may examine together the good and bad "consequences of what you are doing, lest you "have cause to repent at last." Whatever Noureddin cou'd say, signify'd nothing; for they were buoy'd up with the Mirza Calil Sultan's pro-

promises. The Emir seeing his words had no effect, return'd to Ali Abad, where he gave an account to the Mirzas and empresses of all that had pass'd. Chap. 38.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Relation of what happen'd on the Emir Berendac's return to Tachkunt.

WE said before that the Emir Berendac had made a treaty at Acsoulat with the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic, which he had confirm'd with an oath, wherein he had promis'd to risk his life in the defence of Timur's last will; and that he went back to Tachkunt with letters to the Emirs there. These Emirs having read those letters, became very sorry for having proclaim'd and sworn to the Mirza Calil Sultan, and unanimously approv'd of what the Emir Berendac had told 'em from the other Emirs, saying that the throne belong'd to him whom Timur had declar'd his heir by will, and that they won'd never consent to alter it. After which they drew up a manifesto, which every one sign'd and seal'd, and the Mirza Calil Sultan was likewise oblig'd to subscribe. The Mirza order'd Atilmich to carry this paper, with presents, to the Emirs Noureddin and Chamelic, from whence he was to convey it to the Mirza the lawful heir; and before his departure, he said to him, "When you have assur'd the Mirza "Pir Mahemed of my respects, tell him I am "his sincere friend, and according to the will "of the emperor our father and master, I ac-"knowledg him his successor in the empire."

In this the Mirza acted the part of a hypocrite, his sole desire being to command: and there were some Emirs who egg'd him on to the execution of his designs, tho they had had access to his person but for a short time. "The "strongest, say they, ought to govern; and he "who has any advantage shou'd make use of it. "You must, my lord, embrace this opportunity "to depart immediately for Samarcand, and "ascend the throne, after which you shou'd open "the treasurys, and by your liberalitys make "both high and low your servants; for man is "a slave to favors. Arm your self with policy "and courage for your advancement, and lose "no time; for such an affair as this won't admit of delay or cowardice. Such an opportunity may not be met with for several ages; "do not therefore neglect it. The poet says, "protract not the happy minute; for next moment an insuperable difficulty may be started."

These advices were so often repeated, that the Mirza's ambition surmounted his reason: he got together all the horses, mules and camels belonging to Timur, and to the Mirzas and Emirs of his attendance, which he had left to graze at Tachkunt and Seiram, and distributed 'em among the Emirs and other officers of Irac who were of his party; he gave 'em a great deal of mony, stuffs, belts, cuirasses, arms and utensils, which belong'd to the soldiers of the army who were in those quarters: and then he departed at their head for Samarcand. When he was come near the Sihon, he encamp'd; and afterwards resolv'd that the Emir Berendac, with the troops of the right wing, shou'd cross the Sihon forthwith on a bridg of boats above Charoukhia; and that himself wou'd pass over after

after him; and then the Emirs Codadad, Chamseddin Abbas, and the other Emirs. Chap. 28.

The Emir Berendac had already made a secret proposal to these Emirs, that he shou'd join the Emirs Cherk Noureddin and Chamelic; to which they consented, saying, they wou'd do nothing repugnant to Timur's will, and that their intention also was to abandon the Mirza Calil Sultan, and march towards Atchic Perkint. Berendac advis'd 'em to stay some days near Tachkunt, that he might inform 'em of what shou'd happen; and that afterwards they shou'd unanimously prosecute what was just and reasonable, that so their designs might have the desir'd success.

CHAP. XL.

The great Emirs oppose the Mirza Calil Sultan.

THE Emirs Berendac, Roustem Tagi Bouga, and Abdelkerim Son of Hadgi Seifeddin, being arriv'd at the Sihon, pass'd it on a bridg, after which Berendac broke it down, and then went to join the Mirzas and empresses who were on their road to Samarcand. The Emirs Codadad and Chamseddin likewise abandon'd the Mirza Calil Sultan, and march'd to Atchic Perkint; on advice of which, that Mirza went to the Sihon, and having rebuilt the bridg, pass'd the river next day with his troops. The Emir Berendac being arriv'd in the neighborhood of Douabe, met Gelal Baourdgi, who on the Emir Chamelic's return to Samarcand had abandon'd the Mirzas and empresses, and was going

Book VI. going over to the Mirza Calil Sultan: he gave Berendac an account of the Emir Chamelic's journy to Samarcand, and of Argoun Chah's refusing him entrance into the city.

The Emir Berendac surpriz'd at this news, and mov'd as well by his ambition as his cowardice, prefer'd policy to justice and reason; and regardless of his oath, or the observance of the rules of equity, immediately return'd to find the Mirza Calil Sultan. On the contrary, Rousstem Tagi Bouga went to Ali Abad, where he inform'd the Mirzas of the Emir Berendac's return. This latter, asham'd and confounded, beg'd pardon of the Mirza Calil, and solemnly swore to him a second time. The Mirza with those of his party declar'd the paper void, wherein they had promis'd obedience to the Mirza Pir Mehemed, tho he had set his seal to it, and sent it by Azilmich; and at the same time he continu'd his road towards Samarcand, with design to usurp the empire. This news being come to the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic, they thus address'd the empresses. "The "evil counsel of seditious persons have at present "obtain'd: the Emirs have again taken an "oath to the Mirza Calil Sultan; they have "violated the treaty which they subscrib'd "and seal'd, and are all on their march to Sa"marcand. He who breaks his word and oath, "ought to be abhor'd by every one, as an "enemy to mankind. Every body's heart "shou'd now be rent into a thousand pieces; "for the most powerful emperor, who was in "a manner the soul of the world, is dead: but "scarce is he expir'd, when some mean youths, "whom from the lowest state of life he has "raisd to the greatest honors, become trai"tors to him, and forgetting the obligations

"they

" they owe him, contravene his orders, and violate their oaths. How can we dissemble our grief at so terrible a misfortune? An emperor, whose equal is no where to be met with, who has oblig'd the kings of the earth to serve at his gate, and has justly acquir'd the name of conqueror, is no sooner pass'd out of this world, than his last will is trampled upon. Religion is bartered for this world. What unheard-of ingratitude is it, that abject slaves, after so many benefits receiv'd, shou'd become the executors of their great benefactor? If rocks had but a heart, they wou'd mourn at the sight of so abominable an action. Why are not stones rain'd down from heaven to punish these ungrateful wretches? As for us, may God grant us his grace, that we may not forget our master's favors; but that after we have besought his interposition, we may employ all our care in the execution of his last will, and in being obedient to the young princes his children, and sacrifice even our lives as faithful servants, rather than disobey him in the least point."

Chap. 41.

CHAP. XLI.

The Emirs hold a council with the empresses, in relation to their marching to Bocara.

AFTER the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic had finish'd this speech, they represented to the empresses, that since affairs had took such a turn, it seem'd requisite that while their majesties shou'd go to Samarcand, the

Book VI. the Emirs shou'd attend upon the Mirzas to Bocara, from whence they might go to meet the Mirza Pir Mehemed to shew him Timur's testament. The empresses approving their proposal, the Emirs took leave of 'em; and having assembled a great number of Emirs who were faithful to the deceas'd emperor, and resolv'd to execute his orders, they held a council with 'em, and spake as follows.

"Every one knows that no body had freer "access to the late emperor than we: if there- "fore we forget the favors we receiv'd of him, "we shall deserve to be made miserable for ever. "And tho since his death every one has turn'd "his back upon us, yet for our parts we'll ne'er "quit our resolution to obey his last orders. If "others have no thoughts of blushing before "him at the day of judgment, we have. Our "intention is to seek the Mirza Pir Mehemed, "who is declar'd by Timur's testament the "lawful heir to the empire, and to offer our "service to him: and if to fulfil our benefac- "tor's will, we must risk our lives, and for- "sake our worldly goods, we'll do it a thousand "times rather than fail in our promise, or vio- "late our oath; for if we shou'd be guilty "of so infamous an action, we cou'd never "hope to enjoy one day in paradise. You, E- "mirs, who were the nearest officers of that "happy emperor, let us know your sentiment "with regard to this resolution."

The Emirs of this assembly, whose hearts were sensibly touch'd, unanimously answer'd, "Our sole intention is to obey our master's "orders: since you are resolv'd to execute his "last will, we'll follow you with the greatest "alacrity, and in what relates to us, we'll em- "ploy our utmost care, and sacrifice our very "lives."

" lives." The chief of these faithful servants of the emperor, were Atilmich, Tevekul Carcara, Hasan Jagadaoul, Aslan Coja Tercan, Ustoui, Chamseddin Almaleghi, Mousa Recmal, Berteri, Vefadar, and others. Chap. 42.

CHAP. XLII.

The Mirzas and Emirs march to Bocara.

AFTER the resolution was taken of going to Bocara, the 3d of Ramadan 807, the Mirzas Olouc-Bec and Ibrahim Sultan took leave of the empresses, who, after excessive grief on both sides, embrac'd the Mirzas with the greatest tenderness, and recommended 'em to the divine protection. These princes took horse, and departed from Asi Abad, trusting only in the assistance of heaven. The Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic follow'd 'em, having with 'em Timur's treasury, which consisted of ready mony, jewels, habits, arms and other riches, which this emperor always kept by him: and they sent Roustem Tagi Bouga to Bocara before the rest, to give all necessary orders. April 16. 1405.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLIII.

The empresses march to Samarcand. Their mourning, after the two Mirzas departure.

THE empresses, accompany'd by the young princes the Mirzas children, as Baiera, Aidgel, Sadvaccas, Siorgatmich and others, with several faithful domestics, departed from Ali Abad; and having the deceas'd emperor's horse-tail and drums carry'd before em, and his baggage following behind, they took the road to Samarcand, and arriv'd at the gate of Tchehar Raha, with their hair dishevel'd, and their eyes gushing out with tears. The Emirs of the city had the insolence to refuse opening the gate to 'em that day: on which the empresses went down into the garden of the Mirza Charoc near that gate, where they pass'd the night. Next day they enter'd the city with the Mirzas and officers of their household, and lodg'd in the Canzah of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, where Timur's coffin lay. At their arrival there they uncover'd their heads, and tore their hair; they mangled their faces, and cast themselves on the ground, to testify their sorrow for the emperor. The princesses Canzade and Roukia Canica, the Mirza Mehemed Gehanghir, with several grandees of the empire, as the Coja Abdulevel and others, with the wives of the Cherifs and principal persons, having felts about their necks, and their faces torn, assembled together in different mourning-habits. The inhabitants shut up the shops and markets; and every one made lamentations over

the

the emperor's corps. The affliction was not only among the inhabitants of Samarcand, but also spread thro out all Asia. Chap. 44.

CHAP. XLIV.

Account of what pass'd among the Mirzas and Emirs who were gone to Bocara.

THE Mirzas Oloue-Bec and Ibrahim Sultan, who had taken the road to Bocara from Adi Abad, arriv'd the fourth of Ramadan 807 at the walls of Debbans, a very high fortress, at the foot of which runs the river of Samarcand. They were met there by Beyan Temour Gurea, brother of Menghali Cofa, from Samarcand, who brought a letter from Cara Youlef and Argoun Chah, the tenor of which was as follows. " After the usual salutations, " we let you know that tho we have refus'd to " open the gates of the city to you, it was not " then any motive of treason, or with intent to " revolt: our design is only to observe Timur's " last will, to the observance of which we will ne- " ver confine. If the Mirza Calil Sultan shou'd " come hither, we wou'd use him in the same " manner. We are resolv'd to preserve this " city, it being the seat of the empire, and not " deliver it up to any one till the coming of " the Mirza Pir Mehemed, the lawful successor " to the crown, into whose hands we will re- " sign it according to the emperor's testament. " We thus let you know the state of affairs, that " you may not be incens'd against us." At the end of the letter they swore to perform what they promis'd. April 15.

The

The Mirzas, notwithstanding the oath, suspected the promises of these flatterers: but not to irritate 'em in this bad conjuncture, they dissembled their suspicion, and order'd the messenger to salute the Emirs, and tell 'em that if their intention was to do what they had promis'd, it wou'd be better for 'em, since it was the way which every honest and sensible man wou'd take. Besides this they wrote a letter, in which they mildly advis'd 'em to continue firm in the resolution they had taken, and to govern the city according to their duty, without hearkning to any instigations to the contrary; for if they kept their word, and acknowledg'd the obligations they had receiv'd from the emperor, in maintaining the city for the Mirza Pir Mehemed, they wou'd fulfil their master's will; it being an indispensable obligation on every one to do that which is well-pleasing both to God and man, that so their integrity might be mention'd with honor by posterity. They likewise order'd him to tell 'em they need not doubt but that, when the Mirza shou'd be fix'd upon the throne, he wou'd distinguish them above all others, as they had preserv'd it for him; but if they shou'd transgress the orders of their benefactor, they wou'd commit a very heinous and treasonable action, and besides the dishonor and infamy of it, wou'd incur a severe punishment, and must in the end repent in vain. They seal'd up this letter, which they deliver'd to Beyan Temour Cazen, who immediately return'd with it to Samarcand.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLV.

The Mirzas and Emirs at Bocara receive advice of the Mirza Calil Sultan's arrival at Samarcand, and of the obedience paid him by the Emirs of that city.

BEYAN Temour Cazen being return'd to Samarcand, the Emirs continu'd their journy towards Bocara, and two or three days after receiv'd advice that the Mirza Calil Sultan, who had taken the road of Samarcand from Tachkunt, with the Emirs of his party and his troops, being excited by a desire of usurpation and dominion, had made great haste; that being arriv'd near the city, the Emir Coja Yousef went out to meet him with presents, and had receiv'd him as emperor, having cast gold and precious stones before him, and kiss'd his hand at Chiraz, a village four miles from Samarcand; that the Cherifs and principal persons of the city had done the same; that when the Mirza was arriv'd at the bank of the river of Couhec, Argoun Chah went out to make his submission to him, and had deliver'd the keys of the city and castle, with those of the treasury of that capital, into his hands; and that all the traitors of the city and of the Mirza's court had unanimously resolv'd to acknowledg him for their sovereign, regardless their oaths, or the obedience due to Timur's last testament.

The Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic having heard this news, loaded the ingrateful perjurors with curses; and wrote a letter to

Book VI. 'em full of reproaches, which they sent by an express. Then continuing their road, they met Rousteem Berlas, brother of Hamza, governor of Bocara, whom they had sent thither before, and was return'd to meet the Mirzas, who being arriv'd before the city went to visit the sepulcher of the prophet Job, whose assistance they implor'd. They made a new treaty in this holy place, which they confirm'd by solemn oaths.

Afterwards they took horse, and enter'd Bocara; they lodg'd in the castle, which they rebuilt, and augmented the fortifications. As to the guard of the city, they agreed that the gate which opens upon it, with one half of the castle, shou'd be under the care of the Mirza Olouc-Bec, assisted by the Emir Chamelic; and that the gate which looks upon the out-parts, with the other half of the castle and walls, shou'd be commanded by the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, attended by the Emir Cheik Noureddin; that the city shou'd be guarded by the Emirs Rousteem Berlas, his brother Hamza, Atilmich, Teveekul Carcara, and others, each of whom shou'd have the care of a gate, as well as of the bastions and walls. Having all come to this resolution, they began immediately to put it in execution, and to rebuild the walls of the city.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLVI.

Coronation of the Mirza Calil Sultan at Samarcand.

THE astrologer Moulana Bedreddin having made choice of wednesday the 16th of Ramadan 807, which answers to the year of the Hen, the sun being in the sixth degree of Aries, for the coronation of the Mirza Calil Sultan; that prince made his entry the same day into Samarcand, and took possession of the great imperial palace, where the treasures of all Asia were amass'd. Being seated on the throne in his imperial habits, he receiv'd the submission of the Mirzas, Emirs, and principal men of the state, who on their knees congratulated his accession to the throne. April 27. 1405.

As soon as he was instal'd, to shew he had an outward regard to Timur's testament, he gave the title of Can to the Mirza Mehemed Gehanghir, son of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, and nephew of the Mirza Pir Mehemed, tho this young prince was but nine years of age: and his name was plac'd at the top of all the patents and imperial orders according to custom, tho the Mirza Calil Sultan had the sole disposal of every thing, as if he had been the lawful sovereign of all Transoxiana.

Two days after, this new emperor went to the Canicah of the deceas'd Mirza Mehemed Sultan, where Timur's tomb was, to pay his devotions, and perform the public ceremonys of mourning. The empresses, Mirzas, Emirs, and all the people came there in black habits, and wept and

Book VI. made bitter lamentations. By the Mirza Calil Sultan's order the whole Alcoran was read thro, alms were distributed among the poor and sick, and a great funeral-banquet prepar'd.

Then the emperor's drum was beat in a very mournful manner, after which it was broke to pieces according to custom. The learned men and poets compos'd panegyrics and epitaphs upon the emperor; and among others the son of the Coja Masaoud Bocari, and the Coja Asset Ulla.

As the pious Timur, by reason of the love he always bore to the Cherifs, had several times desir'd that his tomb shou'd be plac'd under that of the great Cherif Seid Bereke, that Cherif's coffin was transported from Andcoud, and inter'd under the mausoleum Timur had erected near the alcove of the Canicah; and Timur's body was plac'd underneath that of the Cherif, according to the orders he had given; the corps of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan was also transported to the same mausoleum, and bury'd at the emperor his grandfather's side. May God enlighten their souls with the lamps of his mercy.

When the Mirza Calil Sultan was fix'd on the throne, he open'd his treasures, and distributed them very liberally among the Emirs, principal lords, and soldiers: but why shou'd it be call'd liberality? it was rather imprudence and prodigality, for he distributed his gold like measures of wheat, and it was carry'd away by loads, as corn out of barns, to the great amazement of the people.

Chap. XLVII.

CHAP. XLVII.

Abridgment of the history of the reign of the Mirza Calil Sultan: and the cause of his ruin.

LEARNED men have accounted kings the shadow of God, and acknowledg'd that the power of sovereigns is as a ray of the Divinity. But nothing is likewise more certain, than that he who believes himself capable of worthily acquitting that great charge without the divine assistance, gives credit to what is both absurd and impossible; for God always favors with his mercy the good man, and prefers above all other potentates those who regularly pay their devotions to him, and distribute alms to the poor. We may also be assur'd that a state is not well govern'd by its vast treasures and magazines, nor by the multitude of its troops or the great number of its captains; but by the protection of the Almighty. In fine, there is somewhat besides valor requisite for the governing of a great empire.

The truth of this plainly appears in the case of the Mirza Calil Sultan, who thro injustice and favorable conjunctures became master of so vast an extent of ground, as scarcely ever any one emperor possess'd so much. His birth, as grandson of the great Timur-Bec, drew on him the attention of the whole universe: and at his grandfather's death, most part of the Nevians and great Emirs were with him at Tachkunt. When they receiv'd the news of that misfortune, their hearts were fill'd with fear: and as

of Timur's children, there were none at that place older than the Mirza Calil Sultan, every one took an oath to him, thinking by this means to preserve the crown for ever in Timur's family.

The Mirza at the same took the road to Samarcand, and at his arrival there perceiv'd a general consternation among the people, the chief of whom, judging it best so to do, went to meet him, and congratulate him on his coming to the crown. The Emirs who had the keys of the city and treasurys, likewise resign'd 'em to him; and so he easily became master of the throne of Samarcand. This city was then in a very flourishing condition, being inhabited by princes and great lords, learned doctors, and the most skilful artists in the world; for most of the tradesmen of the towns conquer'd by Timur, had left their own country to dwell in this great city, it being the seat of the empire of Asia. We will not mention the immense treasures of ready mony, precious stones, stuffs, belts, curious vessels and toys, which were innumerable; nor the arms, bucklers, tents, pavilions, canopys, thrones, and other marks of grandeur, riches and magnificence, which had been amassing for several ages by the princes of all the kingdoms of Asia, and had been pillag'd by Timur from the emperors and princes of the countrys of Iran and Touran, from the country of the Calmacs to the frontiers of Greece and Natolia; and from the farther part of India to the frontiers of Syria, and from Carezem and the great Capchac to the limits of Russia, Circassia, Bulgaria and Europe: besides which was the tribute of thirty-six years receiv'd from all Asia.

This

This city, tho so vastly rich, and fill'd with great quantitys of goods, and abundance of soldiers, fell into the hands of the Mirza Calil Sultan without his striking a blow for it: but this prodigal prince squander'd away all those treasures, brought all this grandeur to nothing, and entirely ruin'd this vast power in less than four years; which was one means made use of by fate to ruin his good fortune. Chap. 47.

The second cause was the Mirza's violent passion for Chadi Mulc, one of the concubines of the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, whom he had privately marry'd in the emperor's absence, and cou'd never visit except in secret: but when he found himself an absolute sovereign, he resign'd every thing up to the will of this beauty, and took no pleasure but in her company, her charms being the subject of all his thoughts; while she shew'd no regard either to princes or nobles, but accounted every thing below her; and even the emperor, laying aside his sovereignty, became her slave, and breath'd only by her permissions. This brought disorder upon the state, and upon the Mirza's affairs, so that nothing succeeded in which the sovereign authority had any concern. He squander'd away all his riches, and chiefly among those who were afterwards the instruments of his ruin: and tho he was so rich that all the wealth of Hatem and the tribe of Tai did not amount to a tenth part of one of his treasurys, yet he soon spent all. He had neglected the counsel not to be over-liberal, for fear of being at last left naked; and he seem'd ignorant, that one shou'd give only to those who deserve it, and that in moderation.

On this account, the first thing to be mention'd as done by this prince was his excessive

Book VI. prodigality. He ſprinkled handfuls of precious ſtones on the heads of thoſe, upon whom it wou'd have been a crime, in a manner, to fling a little earth; while perſons of extraordinary merit cou'd obtain nothing, or at leaſt but a trifle. It was then a perfect game of hazard; for he who put in a penny, carry'd away a million; and thoſe who deſerv'd vaſt treaſures, died without having a tenth part. Moreover, the Mirza advanc'd ſeveral ſtrangers of mean extraction, made 'em Emirs, and gave 'em the firſt places in the ſtate; which diſcover'd a great want of policy and conduct, for it alienated the hearts of the great Emirs of his court, and the generals of his army from him: and even thoſe upſtarts whom he had enrich'd, fell into an exceſs of ſelf-love and pride, which was the root of many diſorders. "Beſtow "not honors, ſays the poet, upon him thou "lov'ſt, unleſs by degrees; for if you advance "him on a ſudden, he will become inſenſible "of the favors you have heap'd on him, and "of the obligations he owes to you."

Beſides all this, as the Sultan Calil's miſtreſs was inferior in rank to the deceas'd emperor's wives, and theſe empreſſes became jealous of her growing greatneſs, ſhe conceiv'd a great indignation againſt 'em, and perſuaded Calil to give each of 'em, as well as Timur's concubines, to ſome brave Emir in marriage, who might by that means, as ſhe pretended, become more attach'd to his intereſt, and ſo bring the ſtate into better order. Accordingly he behav'd himſelf towards thoſe venerable empreſſes, whom he ought to have reverenc'd as his own mother, in a manner condemn'd by all men of ſenſe, forcing them to marry thoſe who were unworthy to be their porters: he caſt angels into the

mouths

mouths of satyrs, gave eagles to crows, strung pearls with pieces of glass, and rubys with flints; which he did without the least remorse. But he did not consider, that a king who had cast off all thoughts of honor and justice, will shortly lose his kingdom. In effect, his actions drew on him the aversion of his soldiers, and even of all his subjects: and as he no longer acted with sincerity, the public affairs fell into the utmost disorder and confusion. "He run, "says a certain poet, the ship of empire a-"ground; both himself and his lady were cast "away; for the kingdom slip'd out of his "hands, and he fell from the utmost height."

Chap. 17.

The source of all these disorders was the great familiarity the Mirza had with strangers, and persons of no figure or merit. The good ought to avoid the wicked; for the wicked are the cause of their ruin. These events shew the great soul and admirable conduct of Timur-Bec in his governing the empire: they let us see that his ordering the death of this woman was not without the providence of God, tho at that time every one was ignorant of the ill consequence of her being suffer'd to live.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Conclusion of the history of Timur-Bec, wherein the qualitys by which that conqueror surpass'd all the kings who preceded him, are set down.
The names of his children who surviv'd him.

THE glorious perfections by which the incomparable Timur-Bec adorn'd the regal dignity, were his sincere piety, the great veneration he bore to religion, his strict justice, and unbounded liberality, the effects of which were daily seen and felt by his people.

As his great qualitys have been mention'd in the series of this history, our design at present is to take notice of certain which were peculiar to him. And among others, with regard to his birth, it is proper to be inform'd, that tho his ninth grandfather was Toumene Can, of the race of Buzendger Can, chief of a branch of the tribe of Cayat, who was descended from Turk, the son of Japhet, the son of Noah, on whom may salvation rest; (from whence we discover that his ancestors were Cans and emperors) yet the Emir Tragai his father, as well as his grandfather the Emir Berkulk, having abdicated the kingdom, and left the government of the principality of Kech, which they had preserv'd with the Toman of ten thousand men annex'd thereto, to the children of their uncles of the family of Berlas; we may say that Timur-Bec brought the crown into this august family, he being the first emperor in it.

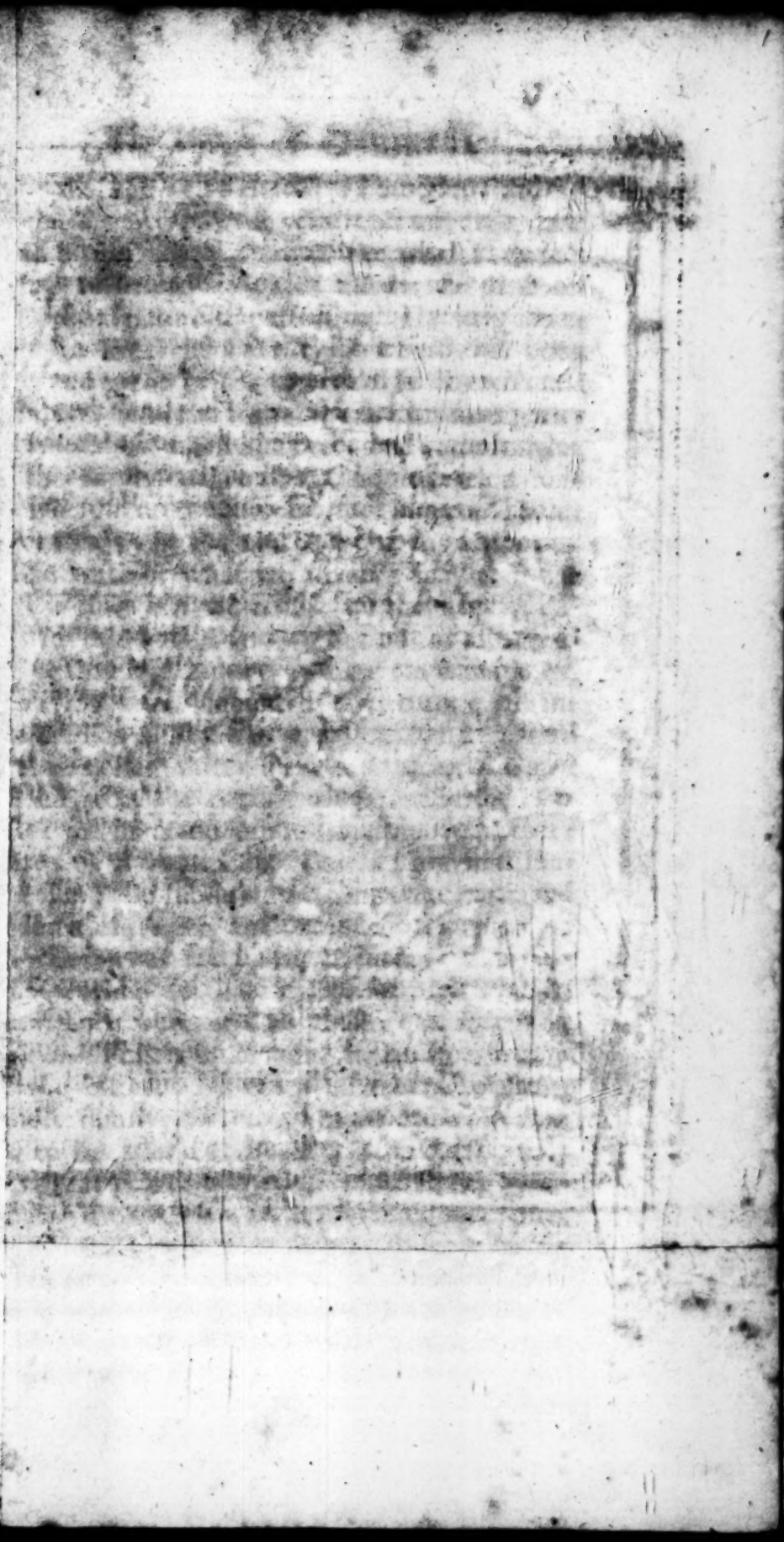
At

At the age of twenty-five he attain'd to the Chap. II.
higheſt dignitys, with admirable courage, and an ambition admir'd by all the world, endeavoring to bring the great talents he had receiv'd from nature to perfection. He paſs'd nine years in different countrys, where his good ſenſe and great genius appear'd in councils and aſſemblys, while at the ſame time his intrepidity and valor drew upon him every one's admiration, whether in perſonal combats, or in pitch'd battels, wherein no conqueror before him cou'd boaſt performing even the tenth part of his actions.

The truth of what we advance may eaſily be conceiv'd, when we reflect on the actions related in this book: and we are not at all apprehenſive that our hiſtory will be tax'd with exaggeration. He mounted the throne of the empire when thirty-four years old, and reign'd ſucceſsfully for thirty-ſix years, during which time he gain'd a conſiderable number of conqueſts; for he made himſelf maſter of the three empires of Zagatai Can, Touchi Can, and Hulacou Can; he ſubdu'd the greateſt citys, and kingdoms of Aſia; and extended the limits of his dominions as far as the borders of that part of the world; ſo that his power, riches and magnificence were greater than we can poſſibly imagine. This is ſo certain, that we need only read the hiſtorys of other kings and princes, in whoſe familys the crown has contin'd a long time, to be aſſur'd of it. But the chief proof of his great power was, that to whatever place he march'd to wage war, he ſoon conquer'd it, and gave the government thereof to ſome of his children or officers; not acting like antient conquerors, who were contented with thoſe tokens of ſubmiſſion which vanquiſh'd princes might make by a tribute.

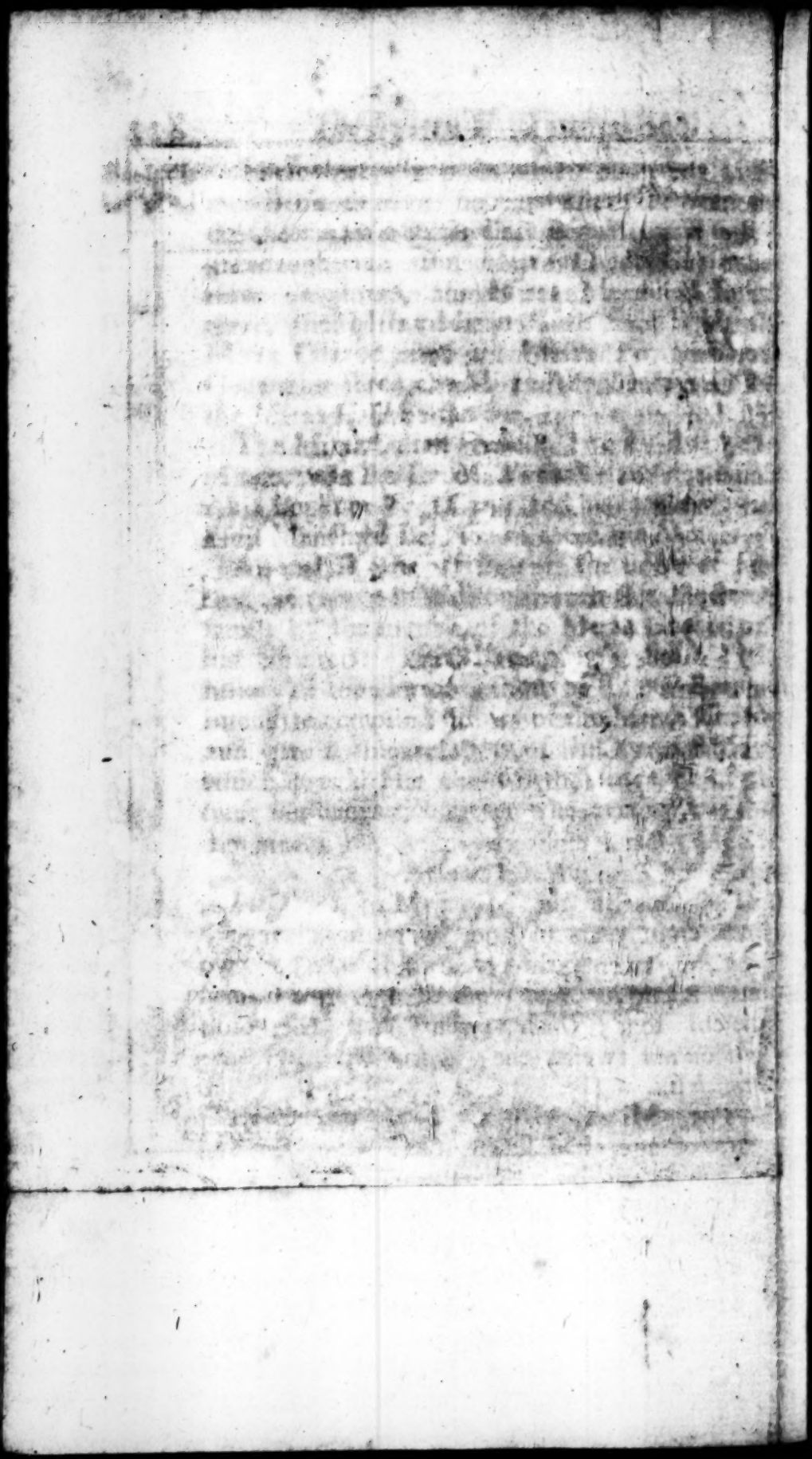
One thing further remarkable in this monarch was, that tho he always observ'd the wholsom maxim of holding diets, yet he never solely confided in 'em; but constantly did what his own good genius inspir'd in him, and had such good success in all his undertakings, that it seem'd as if he had been always the care of divine providence. He cou'd not be shaken in his resolutions: he had the policy to be present at the execution of his most important enterprizes, either as to the state or religion. Both in peace and war he wou'd put forward every thing himself.

Besides his great and continual employments in war and the government, there remain many monuments of his ambition and grandeur, in citys, towns, castles, and walls which he built; in rivers and canals which he dug; and in works of piety, as mosques, chappels, hospitals, bridges, palaces, monasterys, gardens, vineyards, and pleasure-houses, which he erected in divers parts of Asia, in so great a number, that it wou'd take up a large volume only to enumerate 'em, without describing each in particular. And it wou'd be no exaggeration to say, that a king wou'd be accounted very powerful and magnificent, who shou'd have employ'd thirty-six years only in building the great edifices which Timur did; and that he wou'd be thought to surpass all the kings of the earth on that account, without carrying on those long wars, and obtaining the surprizing conquests which he did. Are not all the caravanseras in the great roads of Asia for the accommodation of travellers, the magnificent monasterys and hospitals, from which the poor, the sick and travellers reap so great advantages by the alms distributed there, are not these




EUROPE
PART OF
MUSCOVIA
ASTRAKAN
TOURAN
CONSTANTINOPLE
B. SEA
CASPIAN SEA
MEDITERRANEAN
Jerusalem
Bassora
Ispahan
Herat
Candahar
MOULTAN
TIBET
MOGULS
Medina
Mecca
ARABIA
AFRICA
Aden
Goa
INDI
C. Comorin
MALDIVES
Equinoctial Line
Benares
Surat
Dabul
ASIA
Divided into its principal parts after Tamerlane's expedition according to ye Memoirs of M. de la Croix & rectified by ye Observations of the Academy by I.B. Nolin


120 140 160 180
Arctic Polar Circle
NORTHERN
TURQUESTAN
Leagues 20 to a Degree
100 200 300
Caracorum
Olughkurt
Land of Iedso
Camul
Caracojam
Tramuth
PEKIN
CATAI
I. Nipon
Nan Kim
MANGI
Tropick of Cancer
Canton
Formosa
I. Luzon
I. MARIANNES
Manil
PHILIPPIC Is.
Mindano
I. of Burnes
MOLUCCA I.
Streights of
N. HOLLAND
110 120 130 140 150 160



I ſay, the good works of this pious emperor, who now reaps the fruits of 'em in eternity?

We may alſo conſider the bleſſings this emperor receiv'd from heaven in the great number of children he left behind him; which were thirty-ſix ſons, and ſeventeen daughters living, according to the following detail.

Timur's children.

The deceas'd Mirza Gehanghir his eldeſt left eleven princes; for the deceas'd *Mehemed Sultan* had had three ſons, Mehemed Gehanghir, then nine years of age, Sadvacas ſix, and Yahia five. The Mirza *Pir Mehemed Gehanghir* twenty-nine years old, had ſeven ſons, Caidou nine years of age, Caled ſeven, Bouzndger, Sadvacas, Tendger, Caiſer, and Dgehanghir.

The deceas'd Mirza Omar Cheik left nine ſons; *Pir Mehemed*, twenty-ſix years old, who had one ſon, of ſeven years of age, nam'd Omar Cheik; *Rouſtem*, ag'd twenty-four, who had two ſons, Oſman ſix years old, and Sultan Ali one year; *Eskender* twenty-one years of age; *Ahmed* eighteen years; *Sidi Ahmed* fifteen; and *Bayera Haſan* twelve.

The ſons of the Mirza Miran Chah, thirty-eight years of age, were in all ſeven: *Aboubecre*, twenty-three years old, who had two ſons, Alengher nine years of age, and Oſman Chelebi four; *Omar* twenty-two years old; *Calil Sultan* twenty-one; *Aidgel* ten; and *Siorgatmich* ſix.

The Mirza Charoc, twenty-eight years of age, had ſeven ſons: *Olouc-Bec* and *Ibrahim Sultan*, both eleven years old; *Baiſancar* eight years; *Siorgatmich* ſix; *Mehemed Jouki* three years; *Janaglen* two years; and *Taroui* one year.

Theſe

Book VI.

These thirty-six princes were all living at Timur-Bec's death; besides whom he had one daughter nam'd Sultan Bacht Begum, and fifteen grandaughters: the Mirza Omar Cheik had three daughters, the Mirza Mehemed Sultan three, the Mirza Miran Chah four, and the Mirza Charoc one; the Mirza Pir Mehemed Gehanghir three, the Mirza Aboubeere one, and the Mirza Calil Sultan one.

Timur's children.

The Mirza Sultan Hussein, twenty-five years of age, was the son of Timur's daughter nam'd Akia Beghi or Tagi Can; and his father was the Emir Mehemed Bei, son of the Emir Mousa.

And as it was written in the book of fate, that the crown shou'd continue in this illustrious family by the branch of the Mirza Charoc and his children: after having now finish'd the history of the glorious actions of Timur-Bec, we intend to compile a history of the Mirza Charoc, and give a true relation of his great actions, which prov'd him the worthy successor of the most illustrious conqueror who ever appear'd in the world.

The end of the second volume.

I HAVE read by order of my lord chancellor *the history of Timur-Bec, grand Can of Tartary*; and believe the public will receive as much pleasure as advantage from a work, in which the reader will discover the geography of the vast regions of Tartary, so little known in this part of the world.

Paris Decemb. 24. 1720.

L. De VERTOT.

THE

THE

CONTENTS

OF THE

First VOLUME.

BOOK I.

CHAP. I. *Of Sultan Cazan, grand Can of Zagatai; his defeat and death. Mir Cazagan, a Turkiſh prince, takes upon him the government of the empire, and eſtabliſhes a grand Can. The war of Mir Cazagan againſt Malek Huſſein, prince of Herat.* Page 1

Chap. 2. *Of the government of the Mirza Abdalla, the ſon of Cazagan; and of the difference which happen'd between the princes of Zagatai.* 14

Chap. 3. *Togluc Timur Can, king of the Getes, marches into Tranſoxiana. The flight of Hadgi Berlas.* 18

Chap. 4. *The riſe of Mir Huſſein, grandſon of Mir Cazagan: he is aſſiſted by Timur-Bec.* 19

Chap. 5. *Several intrigues between Timur and Hadgi Berlas; as alſo between the other princes.* 22

Chap. 6. *The king of the Getes returns to Tranſoxiana with a great army. The death of Hadgi Berlas. The Can confirms Timur in the poſſeſſion of his country of Kech, and of a Toman of ten thouſand men.* 28

Chap.

The CONTENTS.

Chap. 7. *Timur-Bec marches in ſearch of Emir Huſſein.* 31
Chap. 8. *Several warlike exploits of Timur and Huſſein.* 37
Chap. 9. *The rencounter of the army of Gete, and its defeat, caus'd by the policy of Timur-Bec; with the reduction of the city of Keeh.* 44
Chap. 10. *The death of Togluc Timur Can, king of the Getes; and the defeat of his army by the princes Timur-Bec and Huſſein.* 49
Chap. 11. *The aſſembly of the princes convened by Timur and the Emir Huſſein, in which they elevated Cabulchah Aglen to the dignity of grand Can.* 52
Chap. 12. *The battel of Lais, or of the ſloughs.* 55
Chap. 13. *The Retreat of Timur-Bec and Huſſein. Samarcand beſieg'd by the Getes.* 61
Chap. 14. *Departure of the princes for Samarcand, and the diſſenſion which happen'd between 'em.* 66
Chap. 15. *Timur-Bec brings an army into the field againſt Emir Huſſein.* 72
Chap. 16. *Several exploits of Timur, and intrigues of the princes. The march of Timur to Carſchi.* 77
Chap. 17. *Mir Huſſein brings an army into the field to oppoſe Timur.* 86
Chap. 18. *The ſiege and taking of Bocara by the army of Huſſein. Timur defeats the army of the Coronas.* 89
Chap. 19. *Timur ſends an ambaſſador to Malek Huſſein at Herat.* 92
Chap. 20. *Timur defeats the army of the Emir Huſſein in Tranſoxiana.* 94
Chap. 21. *The Emir Huſſein ſends an army againſt Timur, which is defeated.* 101
Chap. 22. *The Emir Huſſein again ſeeks to make peace with Timur.* 105
Chap. 23. *The Emir Huſſein brings an army into the field from Bedakchan.* 108

Chap. 24. *Timur marches at the head of an army to repulse the Getes.* 111
Chap. 25. *Timur returns from Bedakchan.* 115
Chap. 26. *A second rupture between Timur and Hussein.* 117

BOOK II.

CHAP. 1. *The establishment of Timur on the throne of the empire of Zagatai.* 130
Chap. 2. *Timur returns from the city of Balc to Samarcand: the building of the castle and fortress of that metropolis.* 132
Chap. 3. *The Couroultai, that is, the diet or assembly of the states, conven'd by Timur's orders.* 136
Chap. 4. *Timur marches to Cheburgan at the head of an army.* 138
Chap. 5. *Timur sends an army to Balc and Termed.* 140
Chap. 6. *Timur sends the Emir Yakou to besiege Cheburgan.* 141
Chap. 7. *Timur marches an army into the country of the Getes.* 142
Chap. 8. *A second expedition of Timur against the Getes.* 144
Chap. 9. *The embassy from Timur to Hussein Sofi, king of Carezem.* 147
Chap. 10. *Timur departs from Samarcand, to make war on the king of Carezem.* 149
Chap. 11. *Timur makes peace with Ysouph Sofi, who succeeded Hussein; and demands in marriage the princess Canzade for the prince Gehanghir his eldest son.* 155
Chap. 12. *Timur marches a second time into the kingdom of Carezem.* 157
Chap. 13. *The famous embassy from Timur to the king of Carezem, to demand the princess Canzade.* 158

Chap.

Chap. 14. *Timur marches a third time into the country of the Getes.* 163

Chap. 15. *Timur's marriage with the princess Dilchadaga, daughter of Camareddin king of the Getes. Timur is in danger of losing his life by a conspiracy which he narrowly escap'd.* 166

Chap. 16. *Timur marches a third time to Carezem, and returns on the revolt of Sar Bouga and Adelchah.* 168

Chap. 17. *Timur's fourth expedition to the kingdom of the Getes.* 171

Chap. 18. *The death of Mirza Gehanghir, Timur's eldest son.* 174

Chap. 19. *Timur's fifth expedition against the Getes.* 176

Chap. 20. *Timur's fifth expedition to the country of the Getes against Camareddin. Tocatmich Aglen, descended from Touschi, son of Genghiz Can, arrives at court, and puts himself under the protection of Timur.* 178

Chap. 21. *Timur gives Tocatmich Aglen the principalitys of Otrar and Sabran; and assists him in making himself master of the empire of Capchac which he claim'd as his right; tho Ourous Can, descended from Genghiz Can, was in possession of it.* 180

Chap. 22. *Preparations for war. Timur brings an army into the field against Ourous Can, emperor of Capchac and grand Russia.* 183

Chap. 23. *Timur's irruption into the country of Ourous Can: Tocatmich Aglen plac'd on the throne of Capchac, otherwise call'd the empire of Touchi Can.* 185

Chap. 24. *The birth of prince Charoc, son and heir to the emperor Timur.* 187

Chap. 25. *Timur sends Tocatmich Can to attack Timur Melic Can, emperor of Cpachac.* 189

The CONTENTS.

Chap. 26. *Embaſſy from the emperor Timur to Joſeph Sofi king of Carezem.* 191
Chap. 27. *Timur's fourth war in Carezem; death of Joſeph Sofi; conqueſt of that kingdom.* 194
Chap. 28. *Foundation of the walls of Kech, the country of Timur: the building of the palace of Aſerai.* 199
Chap. 29. *The Emir Hadgi Seifeddin ſent ambaſſador to Herat, to Malek Cayaſeddin Pir Ali, king of Coraſſana.* 200
Chap. 30. *Mirza Miran Chah, ſon of Timur, marches into Coraſſana, to make war on Malek Cayaſeddin Pir Ali, prince of Herat.* 202
Chap. 31. *Timur's army marches to make war in Perſia, and the reſt of the empire of Iran.* 204
Chap. 32. *Reduction of Fouchendge, a town of Coraſſana.* 207
Chap. 33. *Reduction of Herat, capital of Coraſſana.* 209
Chap. 34. *The army marches to Tous and Kelat.* 213
Chap. 35. *Timur returns to Samarcand.* 215
Chap. 36. *Death of Akia Beghi, daughter of Timur, and wife of the Emir Bel, ſon of the Emir Mouſſa.* 216
Chap. 37. *Timur's ſecond expedition into the kingdom of Iran or Perſia.* 219
Chap. 38. *Reduction of the town of Tauchiz, in Coraſſana.* 225
Chap. 39. *The arrival of an ambaſſador from Fars, or the true Perſia, at the court of Timur.* 227
Chap. 40. *Timur marches into the province of Mazendran.* 229
Chap. 41. *Timur marches to Samarcand. Death of the empreſs Dilchadaga, and of the princeſs Cotluc Turcan Aga, Timur's ſiſter.* 231

Chap. 42. *Timur sends a sixth army into the country of the Getes.* 235
Chap. 43. *Timur marches to Mazendran, and thence to Sistan.* 236
Chap. 44. *Town of Sistan besieg'd and taken.* 239
Chap. 45. *Timur marches to Bost.* 245
Chap. 46. *War against the Ouganians, inhabitants of the mountains, south of Candahar.* 247
Chap. 47. *Timur returns to Samarcand.* 250
Chap. 48. *Timur marches into the province of Mazendran.* 251
Chap. 49. *Timur marches into the province of Irac Agemi.* 256
Chap. 50. *The emperor Timur marches to Sultania.* 257
Chap. 51. *Timur returns to Samarcand, the capital of his empire.* 259
Chap. 52. *Timur enters the kingdom of Iran, where he stays three years successively.* 261
Chap. 53. *Timur marches to Azerbijana, or the country of the antient Medes.* 263
Chap. 54. *Timur enters Georgia at the head of his army. The description of the Persian way of hunting; as also of the Gerke and Nerke.* 267
Chap. 55. *Timur returns to Carabagh.* 269
Chap. 56. *The march of Timur to Berda. The motion of the army of Capchac. Defeat of the troops of Tocatmish Can.* 273
Chap. 57. *The arrival of the empress Serai Mulc Canum, and the princes her sons.* 277
Chap. 58. *Timur's army marches against Cara Mebemed, prince of the Turcomans.* 278
Chap. 59. *Timur marches to Van and Vastan. The letter which Cha Chuja king of Persia wrote to Timur at his death.* 282
Chap. 60. *Timur marches again into the countrys of Fars and Irac Agemi.* 289

Chap. 61. *Timur marches to Chiraz, the capital of Fars or the true Perſia.* 294
Chap. 62. *Reaſons which induc'd Timur to return to the capital of his empire.* 297
Chap. 63. *Timur returns to Samarcand; and gives the government of Fars and Irac to the family of Muzaffer.* 301
Chap. 64. *The emperor orders a proceſs againſt ſome Emirs, whom he had left in Tranſoxiana.* 303

BOOK III.

CHAP. 1. *Timur-Bec departs for his fifth expedition into the kingdom of Carezem.* 305
Chap. 2. *Some accidents during Timur's expedition into Carezem.* 308
Chap. 3. *Timur departs to make war in Capchac, and is victorious over Toctarmich Can.* 317
Chap. 4. *Timur ſends the Mirza Miran Chah into Coraſſana.* 323
Chap. 5. *Timur's expedition into Mogoliſtan againſt Kezer Coja Aglen, and the prince Andigoura; which made the fifth campain in that country.* 325
Chap. 6. *Timur holds a diet, and ſends his armys into all the quarters of the Mogul, to fight the Getes.* 331
Chap. 7. *Timur returns to the ſeat of his empire.* 338
Chap. 8. *The Couroultai, or diet, held by Timur's order.* 342
Chap. 9. *Timur ſends his troops into the country of the Getes.* 344
Chap. 10. *Timur marches into the deſart of Capchac.* 347
Chap. 11. *Timur reviews his troops.* 356
Chap. 12. *Timur ſends the Mirza Mahemet Sultan at the head of the ſcouts.* 359

The CONTENTS.

Chap. 13. *Battel between the ſcouts of the two armys. Death of the Emir Aicoutmur, and other famous men.* 367
Chap. 14. *The army rang'd in order of battel in an extraordinary manner. A terrible fight which enſu'd thereupon.* 371
Chap. 15. *Timur returns from the deſart of Capchac to the ſeat of his empire.* 382
Chap. 16. *The government of Zabuleſtan given to Mirza Pir Mehemed, ſon of Gehanghir.* 384
Chap. 17. *Timur departs for a war of five years continuance.* 386
Chap. 18. *Timur departs from Jouidez after his recovery.* 388
Chap. 19. *The taking of Amol, Sari, and Mahanaſar.* 390
Chap. 20. *Timur ſends a letter to Samarcand.* 396
Chap. 21. *Timur makes war a ſecond time on the kingdoms of Fars and Irac.* 399
Chap. 22. *Timur marches to the kingdoms of Loreſtan and Courdiſtan.* 402
Chap. 23. *An account of the motions of the princes of Fars, or of Perſia and Irac, on which the preſent affairs depend.* 406
Chap. 24. *Timur marches to Chiraz againſt Chah Manſour.* 411
Chap. 25. *Battel between Timur and Chah Manſour. The death of the latter.* 416
Chap. 26. *Timur ſeizes the princes of the houſe of Muzaffer, and diſpoſes of their effects among his lieutenants.* 421
Chap. 27. *Timur marches to the kingdom of Irac Agemi, or Hircania.* 424
Chap. 28. *Timur inveſts the Mirza Miran Chah in the kingdom of Hulacon Can.* 426
Chap. 29. *Timur vanquiſhes the Turcoman Hachan Saree.* 427
Chap. 30. *Timur marches to Bagdad.* 431

Chap. 31. *Return of Mirza Mehemet Sultan after the defeat of the Courdes robbers.* 438
Chap. 32. *Timur ſends an ambaſſador to the Sultan Barooc in Egypt.* 439
Chap. 33. *The taking of the town of Tecrit.* 441
Chap. 34. *Timur continues his journy, and ſends his princes and Emirs to make inroads in ſeveral kingdoms.* 448
Chap. 35. *Timur marches to Diarbekir.* 450
Chap. 36. *Timur marches to Edeſſa.* 452
Chap. 37. *Death of Mirza Omar Cheik, Timur's ſon.* 455
Chap. 38. *Timur marches to Gezire.* 460
Chap. 39. *Timur's ſecond enterprize upon Merdin.* 461
Chap. 40. *Birth of the Mirza Oluc Bei.* 463
Chap. 41. *Timur marches to Amed or Hamed, capital of the country of Diarbekir.* 464
Chap. 42. *Timur returns to Alatac.* 467
Chap. 43. *Timur ſends bodys of ſoldiers into ſeveral countrys to enlarge his conqueſts.* 468
Chap. 44. *The taking of the town and fortreſs of Avenic.* 471
Chap. 45. *Timur's return after the taking of Avenic.* 477
Chap. 46. *Timur ſends an army into Georgia.* 479
Chap. 47. *The birth of Ibrahim Sultan, ſon of Charoc.* 480
Chap. 48. *Solemn rejoicings for the birth of Ibrahim Sultan, ſon of Charoc.* 482
Chap. 49. *Timur conſtitutes the Mirza Charoc governor of Samarcand.* 484
Chap. 50. *Timur goes in perſon to the Georgian war.* 485
Chap. 51. *Timur marches a ſecond time into Capchac againſt Tocatmich Can.* 487
Chap. 52. *Timur reviews his army.* 490
Chap. 53. *Battel between Timur and Tocatmich Can.* 493

The CONTENTS.

Chap. 54. *Timur goes in purſuit of Tocatmich Can, and inſtals a new Can of Capchac.* 498

Chap. 55. *Timur marches into Europe; and pillages the weſtern Capchac, as alſo Muſcovy and Ruſſia.* 501

Chap. 56. *Timur makes war in Circaſſia.* 505

Chap. 57. *Timur marches to Alburz Couh, or mount Caucaſus.* 506

Chap. 58. *Timur attacks the fortreſſes of Couh, Taous, and others.* 507

Chap. 59. *Timur marches to Senſem.* 511

Chap. 60. *Timur marches into Capchac, and pillages the town of Hadgi Tercan, or Aſtracan.* 513

Chap. 61. *Timur returns to Capchac.* 515

Chap. 62. *Timur gives the government of Azerbijana to the Mirza Miranchа, who beſieges Alengic.* 519

Chap. 63. *Taking of the town of Seirjan; and the retreat of Behloul to Nehavend.* 520

Chap. 64. *Timur ſends the Mirza Mehemet Sultan to conquer the kingdom of Ormus. The reduction of Yezd.* 524

Chap. 65. *Timur returns to the ſeat of his empire.* 525

Chap. 66. *The building of the palace of Baghi Chemal.* 530

Chap. 67. *Timur gives the principality of Coraſſana to the Mirza Charoc.* 531

Chap. 68. *Timur ſtays ſome time at Kech. Return of the Mirza Mehemet Sultan from the campain of Fars.* 534

Chap. 69. *Timur demands in marriage for himſelf the daughter of Keſer Ceja Aglen. He celebrates the nuptials of the Mirza Eskender with the princeſs Beghiſi Sultan.* 537

Chap. 70. *Timur gives orders for making the garden of Dilenchа, and building a ſtately palace in it.* 538

THE CONTENTS OF THE Second VOLUME.

BOOK IV.

CHAP. 1. *The cause of Timur's war in India.* Page 4

Chap. 2. *Timur brings his army into the field, to make war against the Guebres in India.* 7

Chap. 3. *Timur marches against the inhabitants of Ketuer. He defeats the Siapouches, who were cloth'd in black.* 8

Chap. 4. *Timur sends Mehemed Acaï to gain intelligence of Mirza Rouſtem and Burhan Aglen. His return to Ketuer.* 13

Chap. 5. *Timur sends Mirza Charoc to Herat.* 17

Chap. 6. *The arrival of ambaſſadors from ſeveral places. Taizi Aglen returns from the country of the Calmacs, and Cheik Noureddin from that of Fars.* 18

Chap. 7. *The repairing the fortreſs of Irjab, and the deſtroying of the Ouganis robbers.* 23

Chap.

Chap. 8. *Timur marches to Chenouz-an and Nagaz; and destroys the robbers of the nation of the Perviani.* 25
Chap. 9. *Timur passes the river Indus.* 28
Chap. 10. *Chehabeddin Mobarec Chah Temini commits hostilitys against the emperor after his submission.* 29
Chap. 11. *Timur's arrival at Toulouba.* 32
Chap. 12. *Timur marches in search of Nusret Coukeri.* 34
Chap. 13. *Arrival of prince Pir Mehemed Gehanghir from Moultan.* 35
Chap. 14. *The taking the town of Bend, and the fortress of Batnir; the inhabitants of which places are put to the sword.* 39
Chap. 15. *Timur departs from Batnir, for Seresti, Fatabad and Ahrouni.* 45
Chap. 16. *Timur marches against a nation of rebellious Getes.* 46
Chap. 17. *A review of the whole army marching in order of battel.* 48
Chap. 18. *Timur marches to the east side of the town of Loumi. Massacre of a hundred thousand Indian slaves who were in his camp.* 52
Chap. 19. *Timur gives battel to Sultan Mahmoud, emperor of India.* 55
Chap. 20. *Flight of Sultan Mahmoud, and his general Mellon Can, prince of Moultan. Reduction of Deli capital of India.* 61
Chap. 21. *Timur departs from Deli; and pursues his conquests in the remoter parts of India, near the Ganges.* 68
Chap. 22. *Conquest of Myrthe. The Guebres are flea'd alive.* 69
Chap. 23. *Several battels upon the great river Ganges, against the militia of the Guebres.* 72
Chap. 24. *Timur's three Gazies, or expeditions against the Guebres.* 74

Chap.

Chap. 25. *Timur exterminates the Guebres assembled in the famous defile of Coupele. Description of a marble statue of a cow ador'd by the Indians.* 78
Chap. 26. *Timur's resolution to return to the seat of his empire.* 81
Chap. 27. *Timur's irruption on the mountain Samalec.* 82
Chap. 28. *Several combats in the woods near Samalec.* 83
Chap. 29. *Timur's Gazies and expeditions in the province of Tchanou.* 87
Chap. 30. *Relation of what pass'd at Labor, with regard to Chicni Couker, prince of that city.* 91
Chap. 31. *Description of the little kingdom of Cachmir, or Kichmir.* 95
Chap. 32. *Timur returns to the seat of his empire.* 97
Chap. 33. *Timur crosses the Oxus, and is met by the princes and princesses of the blood.* 102
Chap. 34. *Building of the great mosque of Samarcand.* 105

BOOK V.

CHAP. 1. *The causes which oblig'd Timur to make war in the country of Iran, that is, in the western parts of Asia, from the river Gihon to the Mediterranean sea.* 108
Chap. 2. *Timur's departure for a campoin of seven years.* 113
Chap. 3. *The transactions of the Emir Solyman Chah.* 117
Chap. 4. *The arrival of good news from several parts.* 120
Chap. 5. *Timur marches into Georgia, and to the defile of Concha.* 126

The CONTENTS.

Chap. 6. *Timur's return from the defile of Comcha.* 81 128

Chap. 7. *Continuation of the history of the Mirza Rouſtem, who runs from Ispahan to Chiraz. A great crime committed by his eldeſt brother, the Mirza Pir Mahemed.* 130

Chap. 8. *A diet in relation to the affair of Georgia.* 136

Chap. 9. *Timur marches againſt prince Jani Bec, a Georgian.* 139

Chap. 10. *The taking of the fort of Zurit, and the town of Suanit.* 141

Chap. 11. *Timur marches againſt the Georgian prince Mirani.* 143

Chap. 12. *Timur returns from Georgia.* 144

Chap. 13. *Reaſons which oblig'd Timur to march againſt the city of Sebaſte, capital of Anatolia.* 145

Chap. 14. *Timur's letter to the Caiſer Roum, that is, the Ottoman emperor.* 147

Chap. 15. *Timur marches to Sebaſte, and takes that city.* 151

Chap. 16. *Timur marches to Abuleſtan.* 153

Chap. 17. *The reaſons of Timur's carrying his arms into Syria and Meſopotamia.* 157

Chap. 18. *Timur marches into the kingdoms of Syria and Egypt.* 160

Chap. 19. *The taking of the caſtles of Behesna and Antapa.* 162

Chap. 20. *The ſiege and taking the city of Aleppo.* 165

Chap. 21. *The caſtle of Aleppo attack'd and taken.* 173

Chap. 22. *The taking of the towns and caſtles of Emeſſa and Hama.* 177

Chap. 23. *Conqueſt of the town of Balbec.* 180

Chap. 24. *Timur marches to Damaſcus, capital of Syria.* 181

Chap.

Chap. 25. *Timur gives battel to the Sultan of Egypt, and gains the victory.* 187
Chap. 26. *Taking of the city of Damascus.* 289
Chap. 27. *Taking of the castle of Damascus.* 294
Chap. 28. *Timur returns out of Syria.* 302
Chap. 29. *Timur crosses the Euphrates, and lies in Mesopotamia.* 309
Chap. 30. *Timur marches to the town of Merdin.* 206
Chap. 31. *Timur sends troops into Georgia, and to Bagdad.* 288
Chap. 32. *Timur besieges and takes Bagdad.* 291
Chap. 33. *Timur's return from Bagdad, and march towards Tauris.* 297
Chap. 34. *Timur sends the Mirza Charoc to Ariendgian.* 319
Chap. 35. *Arrival of the second empress Tomman Aga, and the young princes, from Samarcand.* 321
Chap. 36. *Timur marches into Georgia, and to Carabagh Arran.* 322
Chap. 37. *Timur passes the winter at Carabagh. Arrival of the Mirza Mehemet Sultan from Samarcand.* 324
Chap. 38. *Timur sends troops to make inroads in divers places.* 326
Chap. 39. *The causes which oblig'd Timur to return to make war on Bajazet the Ottoman emperor.* 330
Chap. 40. *Timur digs the river of Berlas.* 334
Chap. 41. *Timur departs from Carabagh for the plains of Chemkour.* 335
Chap. 42. *Taking of the castle of Tartoum.* 338
Chap. 43. *Taking of the castle of Kemac. Arrival of ambassadors from Bajazet.* 340
Chap. 44. *Timur reviews his army.* 343
Chap. 45. *Taking of the castle of Havoic.* 345
Chap. 46. *Timur marches to Cæsarea in Cappadocia, and to Ancora.* 346
Chap. 47. *Timur ranges his army in order of battel, to fight Bajazet.* 350

Chap.

Chap. 48. *Timur gives Bajazet battel, and gains the victory.* 252
Chap. 49. *The taking of the Ottoman emperor, who is brought in chains before the throne of the conqueror.* 255
Chap. 50. *Timur orders troops to make inroads in divers parts of the Ottoman empire. He sends relations of his victory to the citys of Iran and Touran, with orders to make public rejoicings.* 258
Chap. 51. *The continuation of the history of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who had been sent to Prusa in Bithynia.* 263
Chap. 52. *Account of the Mirza Sultan Hussein, and the Emir Soliman Chah, who were gone out to make inroads.* 265
Chap. 53. *Timur departs from Kioutahia* 266
Chap. 54. *Timur dispatches couriers into divers countrys. The arrival of several ambassadors.* 268
Chap. 55. *Timur regulates the winter-quarters.* 271
Chap. 56. *Timur besieges Smyrna, and takes it.* 275
Chap. 57. *Second arrival of ambassadors from Bajazet's sons.* 278
Chap. 58. *Timur departs from Smyrna.* 280
Chap. 59. *Taking of the towns of Egridur and Nasbre.* 283
Chap. 60. *The death of the Ottoman emperor Bajazet, and of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, Timur's grandson.* 285
Chap. 61. *Mourning for the death of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, and the translation of his coffin.* 288
Chap. 62. *Arrival of ambassadors from Egypt.* 289
Chap. 63. *Timur marches against the Caratatars, or black Tartars.* 291
Chap. 64. *Timur returns from Natolia.* 294
Chap. 65. *The manner in which the death of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, son of Gehanghir, was made known to Canzade his mother.* 296

The CONTENTS.

BOOK VI.

CHAP. 1. *Timur marches into Georgia.* 299

Chap. 2. *The government of Chiraz a second time given to the Mirza Pir Mehemed, son of Omar Cheik; and that of Ispahan to his brother the Mirza Rustem.* 301

Chap. 3. *Timur sends the Mirza Abumbecre to rebuild the city of Bagdad, and gives him the government of Irac-Arabi and Diarbekir.* 302

Chap. 4. *Timur's arrival at the frontiers of Georgia.* 305

Chap. 5. *The taking of the famous castle of Corsene in Georgia.* 308

Chap. 6. *Relation of what pass'd without during this siege.* 313

Chap. 7. *Timur marches to Abkhaze.* 314

Chap. 8. *Timur returns from Abkhaze. The cause of his return.* 316

Chap. 9. *Timur orders the town of Bailacan to be rebuilt.* 319

Chap. 10. *Timur sends intendants and doctors into all the provinces of his empire, to examine the affairs of particular persons, and to distribute his justice and favors among the people.* 321

Chap. 11. *Continuation of the history of the princes who were gone into Irac-Arabi.* 325

Chap. 12. *Arrival of the Mirza Omar from Samarcand. Continuation of what happen'd during the building of Bailacan.* 327

Chap. 13. *Timur passes the winter at Carabagh-Arran. Relation of what happen'd there.* 329

Chap. 14. *The emperor sends the Mirza Chamc to Ghilan.* 333

Chap. 15. *Arrival of some princes from Merdin and Vastan. A famous funeral banquet made for the late Mirza Mehemed Sultan.* 334

The CONTENTS.

Chap. 16. *Timur's return from a campain of seven years.* 336
Chap. 17. *Timur invests the Mirza Omar in the empire of Hulacou Can.* 337
Chap. 18. *Continuation of the history of the Mirza Rouſtem and the Emir Solyman Chah, who were ſent towards Rei.* 338
Chap. 19. *Timur ſends the Mirza Eskender and the Emir Chamelic before the reſt towards Rei.* 340
Chap. 20. *The taking of the citadel of Firouzcouh.* 342
Chap. 21. *Timur marches to Tchelao.* 345
Chap. 22. *Battel between the Mirza Sultan Huſſein and Eskender Cheiki. The flight of the latter.* 348
Chap. 23. *Timur returns to the ſeat of his empire.* 351
Chap. 24. *Timur's entry into his imperial city of Samarcand.* 355
Chap. 25. *Timur holds a general diet. A great feaſt for the marriage of the princes at Canighul.* 358
Chap. 26. *The cauſes which incited Timur to undertake the conqueſt of the kingdom of China.* 368
Chap. 27. *Timur ſets out for the war againſt the infidels of China.* 372
Chap. 28. *An account of certain adventures, the knowledg of which is neceſſary to the underſtanding the latter part of this hiſtory. A relation of what paſs'd at Acſoulat.* 375
Chap. 29. *Timur departs from Acſoulat.* 378
Chap. 30. *Timur's death at Otrar.* 381
Chap. 31. *Relation of what happen'd after Timur's death.* 387
Chap. 32. *Timur's coffin tranſported from Otrar.* 389
Chap. 33. *The empreſſes and Emirs hold a council concerning the war of China.* 391
Chap. 34. *Timur's coffin is tranſported to Samarcand.* 393

Chap.

The CONTENTS.

Chap. 35. *The Mirza Sultan Huſſein, Timur's grandſon, oppoſes the ſentiment of the Emirs.* 396
Chap. 36. *The Emirs write circular letters to give advice to all the provinces of the Mirza Sultan Huſſein's undertaking.* 397
Chap. 37. *A letter to the great Emirs who were at Tachkunt.* 399
Chap. 38. *The Emir Berendac arrives at the empreſſes court, with an anſwer to the letter ſent the Emirs, who were at Tachkunt with the Mirza Calil Sultan.* 401
Chap. 39. *Relation of what happen'd on the Emir Berendac's return to Tachkunt.* 405
Chap. 40. *The great Emirs oppoſe the Mirza Calil Sultan.* 407
Chap. 41. *The Emirs hold a council with the empreſſes, in relation to their marching to Bocara.* 409
Chap. 42. *The Mirzas and Emirs march to Bocara.* 411
Chap. 43. *The empreſſes march to Samarcand. Their mourning, after the two Mirzas departure.* 412
Chap. 44. *Account of what paſs'd among the Mirzas and Emirs who were gone to Bocara.* 413
Chap. 45. *The Mirzas and Emirs at Bocara receive advice of the Mirza Calil Sultan's arrival at Samarcand, and of the obedience paid him by the Emirs of that city.* 415
Chap. 46. *Coronation of the Mirza Calil Sultan at Samarcand.* 417
Chap. 47. *Abridgment of the hiſtory of the reign of the Mirza Calil Sultan: and the cauſe of his ruin.* 419
Chap. 48. *Concluſion of the hiſtory of Timur-Bec, wherein the qualitys by which that conqueror [illegible] paſs'd all the kings who preceded him, are ſet [illegible] The names of his children who ſurviv'd him [illegible]*

BRITISH

The end of the contents.